



THE WORLD'S  
GREATEST  
BOOKS

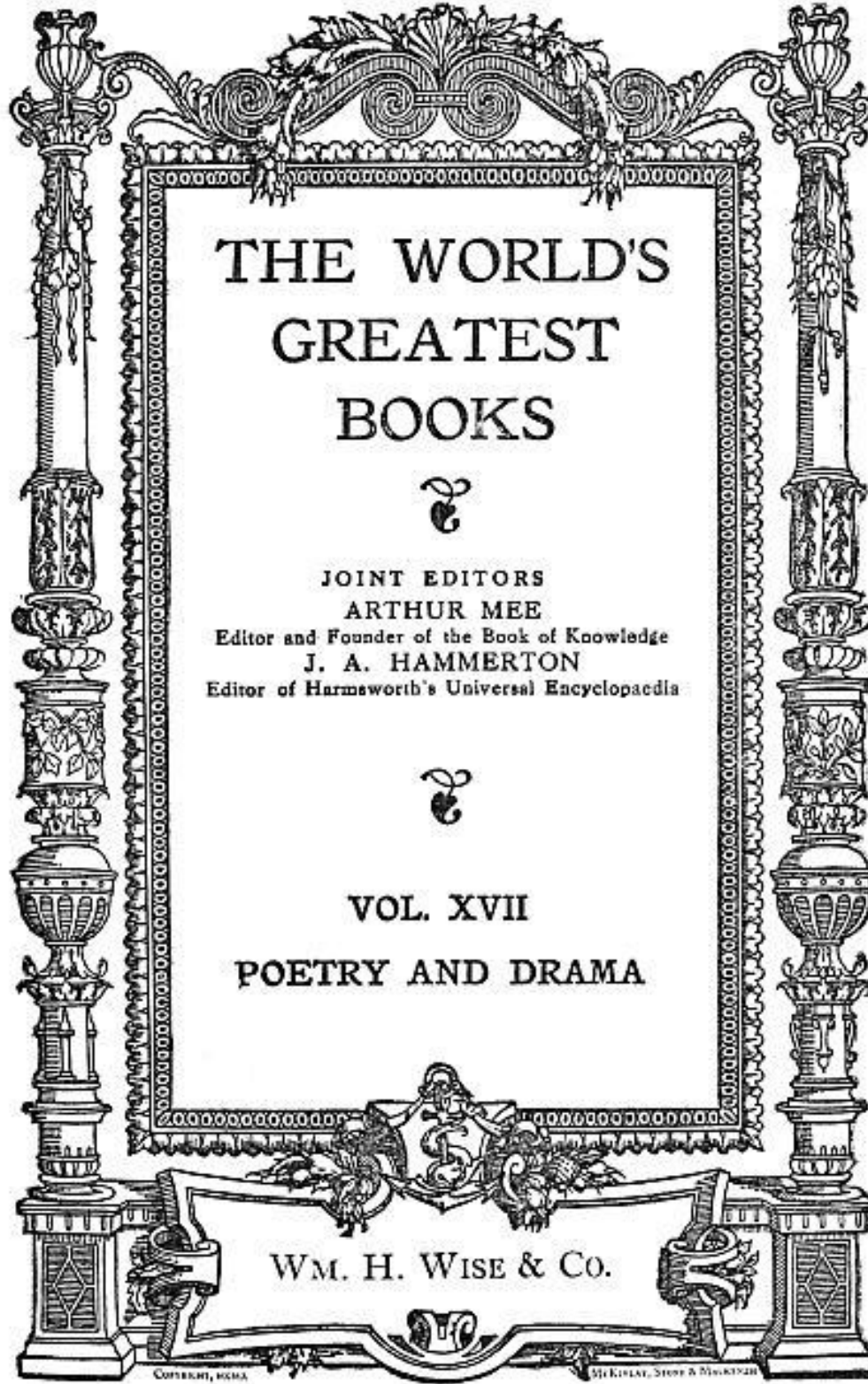
JOINT EDITORS  
ARTHUR MEE

Editor and Founder of the Book of Knowledge  
J. A. HAMMERTON  
Editor of Harnsworth's Universal Encyclopaedia

VOL. XVII

POETRY AND DRAMA

WM. H. WISE & Co.



THE WORLD'S  
GREATEST  
BOOKS



JOINT EDITORS  
ARTHUR MEE  
Editor and Founder of the Book of Knowledge  
J. A. HAMMERTON  
Editor of Harnsworth's Universal Encyclopaedia



VOL. XVII  
POETRY AND DRAMA

WM. H. WISE & Co.

**The Project Gutenberg eBook of The World's Greatest Books  
— Volume 17 — Poetry and Drama**

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: The World's Greatest Books — Volume 17 — Poetry and Drama

Editor: Arthur Mee  
J. A. Hammerton

Release date: January 10, 2014 [eBook #44640]  
Most recently updated: October 23, 2024

Language: English

Other information and formats: [www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/44640](http://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/44640)

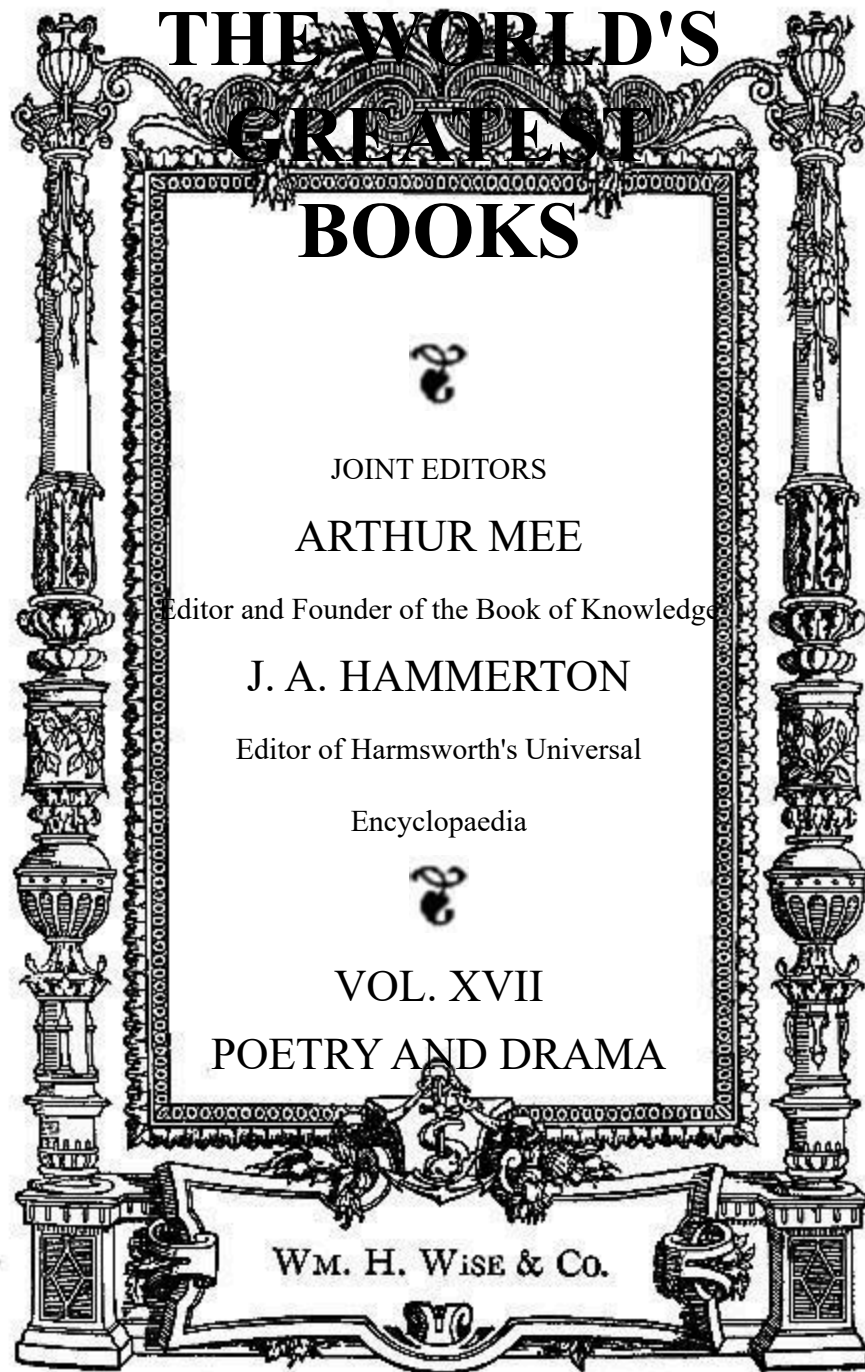
Credits: Produced by Kevin Handy, Matthias Grammel and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net>

\*\*\* START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE WORLD'S  
GREATEST BOOKS — VOLUME 17 — POETRY AND DRAMA \*\*\*



*J.B.P. Molière.*

---



**THE WORLD'S  
GREATEST  
BOOKS**



JOINT EDITORS

**ARTHUR MEE**

Editor and Founder of the Book of Knowledge

**J. A. HAMMERTON**

Editor of Harmsworth's Universal

Encyclopaedia



**VOL. XVII**

**POETRY AND DRAMA**

**WM. H. WISE & CO.**

# *Table of Contents*

PORTRAIT OF MOLIÈRE	<i>Frontispiece</i>
GOETHE ( <i>Continued</i> )	PAGE
GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN	<a href="#">1</a>
IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS	<a href="#">18</a>
GOGOL, NICOLAI	
INSPECTOR-GENERAL	<a href="#">30</a>
GOLDSMITH, OLIVER	
SHE STOOPS TO CONQUER	<a href="#">39</a>
HEINE, HEINRICH	
ATTA TROLL	<a href="#">50</a>
HOMER	
ILIAD	<a href="#">66</a>
ODYSSEY	<a href="#">78</a>
HORACE	
POEMS	<a href="#">91</a>
HUGO, VICTOR	
HERNANI	<a href="#">110</a>
MARION DE LORME	<a href="#">123</a>
RUY BLAS	<a href="#">134</a>
THE KING AMUSES HIMSELF	<a href="#">146</a>
THE LEGEND OF THE ALPS	<a href="#">159</a>
IBSEN, HENRIK	
MASTER BUILDER	<a href="#">171</a>
PILLARS OF SOCIETY	<a href="#">186</a>
JONSON, BEN	
EVERY MAN IN HIS HUMOUR	<a href="#">195</a>
JUVENAL	
SATIRES	<a href="#">207</a>
KLOPSTOCK, FRIEDRICH GOTTLIEB	
MESSIAH	<a href="#">217</a>
LESSING, GOTTHOLD EPHRAIM	

---

NATHAN THE WISE	<a href="#">226</a>
LONGFELLOW	
EVANGELINE	<a href="#">241</a>
HIAWATHA	<a href="#">250</a>
LUCRETIOUS	
ON THE NATURE OF THINGS	<a href="#">261</a>
MACPHERSON, JAMES	
OSSIAN	<a href="#">272</a>
MARLOWE, CHRISTOPHER	
DR. FAUSTUS	<a href="#">282</a>
MARTIAL	
EPIGRAMS, EPITAPHS, AND POEMS	<a href="#">295</a>
MASSINGER, PHILIP	
NEW WAY TO PAY OLD DEBTS	<a href="#">305</a>
MILTON	
PARADISE LOST	<a href="#">319</a>
PARADISE REGAINED	<a href="#">342</a>
SAMSON AGONISTES	<a href="#">349</a>
MOLIÈRE	
THE DOCTOR IN SPITE OF HIMSELF	<a href="#">362</a>
(MOLIÈRE: <i>Continued in Vol. XVIII</i> )	

---

A Complete Index of THE WORLD'S GREATEST BOOKS will be found at  
the end of Volume XX.

---

# *Poetry and Drama*

---

# GOETHE

*(Continued)*

---

# Goetz von Berlichingen<sup>[A]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

THE EMPEROR MAXIMILIAN    THE BISHOP OF BAMBERG  
GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN    FRANZ LERSE  
ADELBERT VON WEISLINGEN    ELIZABETH, *wife to Goetz*  
FRANZ VON SICKINGEN        MARIE, *his sister*  
HANS VON SELBITZ            ADELHEID VON WALLDORF  
FRANZ, *page to Weislingen*    IMPERIAL COUNCILLOR  
GEORGE, *page to Goetz*        USHER  
FAUD  
MAX STUMPF, SIEVERS, METZLER, LINK, KOHL,  
*Leaders of the rebel peasants*

## ACT I

SCENE I.—*Forest; a poor hut in the background.* GOETZ and  
GEORGE.

GOETZ: Where can my men be? Up and down I have to walk, lest sleep should overcome me. Five days and nights already in ambush. But when I get thee, Weislingen, I shall make up for it! You priests may send round your obliging Weislingen to decry me—I am awake. You escaped me, bishop! So your dear Weislingen may pay the piper. George! George! (*Enter GEORGE.*) Tell Hans to get ready. My scouts may be back any moment. And give me some more wine!

GEORGE: Hark! I hear some horses galloping—two  
—it must be your men!

GOETZ: My horse, quick! Tell Hans to arm!

*[Enter FAUD, who reports to GOETZ that  
WEISLINGEN is  
approaching. Exit GOETZ and his men.]*

GEORGE: Oh, St. George! Make me strong and brave!  
And give me spear, armour, and horse!

*[Exit.]*

SCENE II.—*Hall at Jaxthausen. ELIZABETH and MARIE.*

MARIE: If I had a husband who always exposed  
himself to danger, I should die the first year.

ELIZABETH: Thank God, I am made of harder stuff!  
God grant that my boy may take after his father, and not  
become a treacherous hypocrite, like Weislingen.

MARIE: You are very bitter against him. Yet report  
speaks well of him. Your own husband loved him, when  
they were pages together to the margrave.

*[The gay tune of a wind-instrument is heard.]*

ELIZABETH: There he returns with his spoil! I must  
get the meal ready. Here, take the cellar keys and let  
them have of the best wine! They have deserved it.

*[Exeunt. Enter GOETZ, WEISLINGEN, and  
men-at-arms.]*

GOETZ (*taking off his helmet and sword*): Unstrap my  
cuirass and give me my doublet! Weislingen, you've  
given us hard work! Be of good cheer. Where are your  
clothes? I could lend you some of mine—a neat, clean  
suit, which I wore at the wedding of my gracious lord the  
Count Palatine, when your bishop got so vexed with me,  
because I made him shake hands with me, unknown,

after having taken two of his ships a fortnight before on the Main.

WEISLINGEN: I beg you to leave me alone.

GOETZ: Why? Pray, be cheerful. You are in my power, and I shall not abuse it. You know my knight's duty is sacred to me. And now I must go to see my wife.

*[Exit.]*

WEISLINGEN: Oh, that it were all a dream! In Berlichingen's power—and he, the old true-hearted Goetz! Back again in the hall, where we played as boys, where I loved him with all my heart! How strangely past and present seem to intermingle here.

*[Enter GOETZ, and a man with jug and goblet.]*

GOETZ: Let us drink, until the meal is ready. Come, you are at home. It is a long time since we last shared a bottle. *(Raising his goblet)* A gay heart!

WEISLINGEN: Those times are past.

GOETZ: Heaven forbid! Though merrier days we may not find. If you had only followed me to Brabant, instead of taking to that miserable life at court! Are you not as free and nobly born as anyone in Germany? Independent, subject only to the emperor? And you submit to vassals, who poison the emperor's ear against me! They want to get rid of me. And you, Weislingen, are their tool!

WEISLINGEN: Berlichingen!

GOETZ: No more of it! I hate explanations. They only lead to deceiving one or the other, or both.

*[They stand apart, their backs turned to each other. Enter MARIE.]*

MARIE (*to WEISLINGEN*): I come to greet and to invite you in my sister's name. What is it? Why are you silent both? You are host and guest. Be guided by a woman's voice.

GOETZ: You remind me of my duty.

WEISLINGEN: Who could resist so heavenly a hint?

MARIE: Draw near each other, be reconciled! (*The men shake hands.*) The union of brave men is the most ardent wish of all good women.

## ACT II

SCENE I.—*A room at . Marie and Weislingen.*

MARIE: You say you love me. I willingly believe it, and hope to be happy with you and to make you happy.

WEISLINGEN: Blessed be your brother and the day he rode out to capture me!

[*Enter Goetz.*

GOETZ: Your page is back. Whatever his news, Adelbert, you are free! All I ask is your word that you will not aid and abet my enemies.

WEISLINGEN: I take your hand. And may I at the same time take the hand of this noblest of all women?

GOETZ: May I say "yes" for you, Marie? You need not blush—your eyes have answered clearly. Well, then, Weislingen, take her hand, and I say Amen, friend and brother! I must call my wife. Elizabeth! (*Enter ELIZABETH.*) Join your hand in theirs and say "God bless you!" They are a pair. Adelbert is going back to Bamberg to detach himself openly from the bishop, and then to his estates to settle his affairs. And now we'll leave him undisturbed to hear his boy's report.

[*Exit with Marie and Elizabeth.*

WEISLINGEN: Such bliss for one so unworthy!

[*Enter* FRANZ.]

FRANZ: God save you, noble sir! I bring you greetings from everybody in Bamberg—from the bishop down to the jester. How they are distressed at your mishap! I am to tell you to be patient—they will think the more impatiently of your deliverance; for they cannot spare you.

WEISLINGEN: They will have to. I'll return, but not to stay long.

FRANZ: Not to stay? My lord, if you but knew what I know! If you had but seen her—the angel in the shape of woman, who makes Bamberg a forecourt of heaven—Adelheid von Walldorf!

WEISLINGEN: I have heard much of her beauty. Is her husband at court?

FRANZ: She has been widowed for four months, and is at Bamberg for amusement. If she looks upon you, it is as though you were basking in spring sunshine.

WEISLINGEN: Her charms would be lost on me. I am betrothed. Marie will be the happiness of my life. And now pack up. First to Bamberg, and then to my castle.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*A forest. Some Nuremberg merchants, who, attacked on their way to the Frankfurt Fair by Goetz and his men, have escaped, leaving their goods in the hands of the knights. The page George has, however, recaptured two of the merchants as Goetz and his men enter.*

GOETZ: Search the forest! Let none escape!

GEORGE (*stepping forward*): I've done some preparatory work. Here they are.

GOETZ: Welcome, good lad! Keep them well guarded! (*Exit his men with the merchants.*) And now, what news of Weislingen?

GEORGE: Bad news! He looked confused when I said to him, "A few words from your Berlichingen." He tried to put me off with empty words, but when I pressed him he said he was under no obligation to you, and would have nothing to do with you.

GOETZ: Enough! I shall not forget this infamous treachery. Whoever gets into my power shall feel it. (*Exit GEORGE.*) I'll revel in their agony, deride their fear. And how, Goetz, are you thus changed? Should other people's faults and vices make you renounce your chivalry, and abandon yourself to vulgar cruelty? I'll drag him back in chains, if I can't get him any other way. And there's an end of it, Goetz; think of your duty!

[*Enter GEORGE with a casket.*]

GEORGE: Now let your joke be ended, they are frightened enough. One of them, a handsome young man, gave me this casket, and said, "Take this as ransom! The jewels I meant to take to my betrothed. Take them, and let me escape."

GOETZ (*examining the jewels*): This time, Marie, I shall not be tempted to bring it to you as a birthday gift. Even in your misfortune you would rejoice in the happiness of others. Take it, George. Give it back to the lad. Let him take it to his bride, with greeting from Goetz! And let all the prisoners free at sunset.

### ACT III

SCENE I.—*Pleasure-garden at Augsburg. The EMPEROR, the BISHOP OF BAMBERG, WEISLINGEN, the LADY ADELHEID, COURTIERS.*

EMPEROR: I am tired of these merchants with their eternal complaints! Every shopkeeper wants help, and no one will stir against the common enemy of the empire and of Christianity.

WEISLINGEN: Who would be active abroad while he is threatened at home?

BISHOP: If we could only remove that proud Sickingen and Berlichingen, the others would soon fall asunder.

EMPEROR: Brave, noble men at heart, who must be spared and used against the Turks.

WEISLINGEN: The consequences may be dangerous. Better to capture them and leave them quietly upon their knightly parole in their castles.

EMPEROR: If they then abide by the law, they might again be honourably and usefully employed. I shall open the session of the Diet to-morrow with this proposal.

WEISLINGEN: A clamour of joyful assent will spare your majesty the end of the speech.

*[Exit EMPEROR, BISHOP, and COURTIERs.]*

WEISLINGEN: And so you mean to go—to leave the festive scenes for which you longed with all your heart, to leave a friend to whom you are indispensable, to delay our union?

ADELHEID: The gayer, the freer shall I return to you.

WEISLINGEN: Will you be content if we proceed against Berlichingen?

ADELHEID: You deserve a kiss! My uncle, Von Wanzenau, must be captain!

WEISLINGEN: Impossible! An incompetent old dreamer!

ADELHEID: Let the fiery Werdenhagen, his sister's stepson, go with him.

WEISLINGEN: He is thoughtless and foolhardy, and will not improve matters.

ADELHEID: We have to think of our relatives. For love of me, you must do it! And I want some exemptions for the convent of St. Emmeraru; you can work the chancellor. Then the cup-bearer's post is vacant at the Hessian Court, and the high stewardship of the Palatinate. I want them for our friends Braimau and Mirsing.

WEISLINGEN: How shall I remember it all?

ADELHEID: I shall train a starling to repeat the names to you, and to add, "Please, please." (*Exit WEISLINGEN. To FRANZ, whom she stops as he crosses to follow his master*): Franz, could you get me a starling, or would you yourself be my starling? You would learn more rapidly.

FRANZ: If you would teach me. Try. Take me with you.

ADELHEID: No, you must serve me here. Have you a good memory?

FRANZ: For your words. I remember every syllable you spoke to me that first day at Bamberg.

ADELHEID: Now, listen, Franz. I shall tell you the names which I want you to repeat to your master, always adding, "Please, please."

FRANZ (*seizing her hand passionately*): Please, please!

ADELHEID (*stepping back*): Hands are not wanted. You must lose such bad manners. But you must not be so upset at a little rebuke. One punishes the children one loves.

FRANZ: You love me, then?

ADELHEID: I might love you as a child, but you are getting too tall and violent.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*Hall at Jaxthausen.* SICKINGEN and GOETZ.

GOETZ: So you want to marry a jilted woman?

SICKINGEN: To be deceived by him is an honour for you both. I want a mistress for my castles and gardens. In the field, at court, I want to stand alone.

[*Enter SELBITZ.*]

SELBITZ: Bad news! The emperor has put you under the ban, and has sent troops to seize you.

GOETZ: Sickingen, you hear. Take back your offer, and leave me!

SICKINGEN: I shall not turn from you in trouble. No better wooing than in time of war and danger.

GOETZ: On one condition. You must publicly detach yourself from me. The emperor loves and esteems you, and your intercession may save me in the hour of need.

SICKINGEN: But I can secretly send you twenty horsemen.

GOETZ: That offer I accept.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*A hill with a view over a fertile country.* GEORGE and GOETZ's men cross the stage, chasing the imperial troops. Then SELBITZ is carried on, wounded, accompanied by FAUD.

SELBITZ: Let me rest here!—and back to your master; back to Goetz!

FAUD: Let me stay with you. I am no good below; they have hammered my old bones till I can scarcely move. (*Exit soldiers.*) Here from the wall I can watch the fight.

SELBITZ: What do you see?

FAUD: Your horsemen are turning tail. I can see Goetz's three black feathers in the midst of the turmoil. Woe, he has fallen! And George's blue plume has disappeared! Sickingen's horsemen in flight! Ha! I see Goetz again! And George! Victory! Victory! They are routed! Goetz is after them—he has seized their flag! The fugitives are coming here! Oh! what will they do with you?

SELBITZ: Come down and draw! My sword is ready. I'll make it hot for them, even sitting or lying down!

*[Enter imperial troops. SELBITZ and FAUD defend themselves until LERSE comes to their rescue, attacking the soldiers furiously, killing some and putting the rest to flight. Enter GOETZ, GEORGE, a troop of armed men.]*

SELBITZ: Good luck, Goetz! Victory! Victory!  
How did you fare?

GOETZ: To George and Lerse I owe my life; I was off my horse when they came to the rescue. I have their flag and a few prisoners.

SELBITZ: Lerse saved me, too. See what work he has done here!

GOETZ: Good luck, Lerse! And God bless my George's first brave deed! Now back to the castle, and let us gather our scattered men.

## ACT IV

SCENE I.—*Jaxthausen. A small room. MARIE and SICKINGEN.*

SICKINGEN: You may smile, but I felt the desire to possess you when you first looked upon me with your blue eyes, when you were with your mother at the Diet of Speier. I have long been separated from you; but that wish remained, with the memory of that glance.

[*Enter GOETZ.*

SICKINGEN: Good luck!

MARIE: Welcome, a thousand times!

GOETZ: Now quickly to the chapel! I've thought it all out, and time presses.

SCENE II.—*Large hall; in the background a door, leading to the chapel. LERSE and men-at-arms. Enter GOETZ from chapel.*

GOETZ: How now, Lerse? The men had better be distributed over the walls. Let them take any breastplates, helmets, and arms they may want. Are the gates well manned?

LERSE: Yes, sir.

GOETZ: Sickingen will leave us at once. You will lead him through the lower gate, along the water, and across the ford. Then look around you, and come back.

[*Enter SICKINGEN, MARIE, ELIZABETH, from chapel. Drums in distance announce the enemy's approach.*

GOETZ: May God bless you and send you merry, happy days!

ELIZABETH: And may He let your children be like you!

SICKINGEN: I thank you, and I thank you, Marie, who will lead me to happiness.

GOETZ: A pleasant journey! Lerse will show you the way.

MARIE: That is not what we meant. We shall not leave you.

GOETZ: You must, sister! (*To SICKINGEN*) You understand? Talk to Marie; she is your wife. Take her to safety, and then think of me.

*[Exeunt LERSE, SICKINGEN and MARIE. Enter GEORGE.*

GEORGE: They approach from all sides. I saw their pikes glitter from the tower.

GOETZ: Have the gate barricaded with beams and stones.

*[Exit GEORGE. A trumpeter is dimly heard from the distance, requesting GOETZ to surrender unconditionally.*

*GOETZ refuses angrily, and slams the window. Enter LERSE.*

LERSE: There is plenty of powder, but bullets are scarce.

GOETZ: Look round for lead! Meanwhile, we must make the crossbows do.

*[Distant shooting is heard at intervals. Exit GOETZ with crossbow.*

LERSE (*breaking a window and detaching the lead from the glass*): This lead has rested long enough; now it may fly for a change.

*[Enter GOETZ.*

GOETZ: They have ceased firing, and offer a truce with all sorts of signs and white rags. They will probably ask me to surrender on knightly parole.

LERSE: I'll go and see. 'Tis best to know their mind.

*[Goes out and returns shortly.]*

LERSE: Liberty! Liberty! Here are the conditions. You may withdraw with arms, horses, and armour, leaving all provisions behind. Your property will be carefully guarded. I am to remain.

GOETZ: Come, take the best arms with you, and leave the others here! Come, Elizabeth! Through this very gate I led you as a young bride. Who knows when we shall return?

*[Exeunt GOETZ and ELIZABETH, followed by GEORGE. While the men are choosing arms and preparing, LERSE, who has heard shouting and firing without, looks through the window.]*

LERSE: God! They are murdering our master! He is off his horse! Help him!

FAUD: George is still fighting. Let's go! If they die, I don't want to live!

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE III.—*Night; anteroom in ADELHEID'S castle.*

*WEISLINGEN, FRANZ, ADELHEID, with a retinue of masked and costumed revellers.*

WEISLINGEN: May I, in these moments of lightheartedness, speak to you of serious matters? Goetz is probably by this time in our hands. The peasants' revolt is growing in violence; and the League has given me the command against them. We shall start before long. I shall take you to my castle in Franconia, where you will be safe, and not too far from me.

ADELHEID: We shall consider that. I may be useful to you here.

WEISLINGEN: We have not much time, for we break up to-morrow!

ADELHEID (*after a pause*): Very well, then; carnival to-night, and war to-morrow!

WEISLINGEN: You are fond of change. A pleasant night to you!

[*Exit.*

ADELHEID: I understand. You would remove me from the court, where Charles, our emperor's great successor, is the object of all hope? You will not change my plans. Franz!

FRANZ (*entering*): Gracious lady!

ADELHEID: Watch all the masks, and find out for me the archduke's disguise! You look sad?

FRANZ: It is your will that I should languish unto death.

ADELHEID (*apart*): I pity him. (*To FRANZ*) You are true and loving; I shall not forget you!

SCENE IV.—*Heilbronn Town Hall.* IMPERIAL COUNCILLOR *and* MAGISTRATES, USHERS, GOETZ.

COUNCILLOR: You know how you fell into our hands, and are a prisoner at discretion?

GOETZ: What will you give me to forget it?

COUNCILLOR: You gave your knightly parole to appear and humbly to await his majesty's pleasure?

GOETZ: Well, here I am, and await it!

COUNCILLOR: His majesty's mercy releases you from the ban and all punishment, provided you subscribe to all the articles which shall be read unto you.

GOETZ: I am his majesty's faithful servant. But, before you proceed, where are my men; what is their fate?

COUNCILLOR: That is no business of yours. Secretary, read the articles! (*Reads*): I, Goetz von Berlichingen, having lately risen in rebellion against the emperor

---

GOETZ: 'Tis false! I am no rebel! I refuse to listen any further!

COUNCILLOR: And yet we have strict orders to persuade you by fair means, or to throw you into prison.

GOETZ: To prison? Me? That cannot be the emperor's order! To promise me permission to ward myself on parole, and then again to break your treaty.

COUNCILLOR: We owe no faith to robbers.

GOETZ: If you were not the representative of my respected sovereign, you should swallow that word, or choke upon it!

[COUNCILLOR *makes a sign, and a bell is rung. Enter citizens with halberds and swords.*

COUNCILLOR: You will not listen—seize him!

[*They rush upon him. He strikes one down, and snatches a sword from another. They stand aloof.*

GOETZ: Come on! I should like to become acquainted with the bravest among you.

[*A trumpet is heard without. Enter USHER.*

USHER: Franz von Sickingen is without and sends word that having heard how faith has been broken with his brother-in-law, he insists upon justice, or within an

hour he will fire the four quarters of the town, and abandon it to be sacked by his men.

GOETZ: Brave friend!

COUNCILLOR: YOU had best dissuade your brother-in-law from his rebellious intention. He will only become the companion of your fall! Meanwhile, we will consider how we can best uphold the emperor's authority.

*[Exeunt all but GOETZ. Enter SICKINGEN.]*

GOETZ: That was help from heaven. I asked nothing but knightly ward upon my parole.

SICKINGEN: They have shamefully abused the imperial authority. I know the emperor, and have some influence with him. I shall want your fist in an enterprise I am preparing. Meanwhile, they will let you and your men return to your castle upon the promise not to move beyond its confines. And the emperor will soon call you. Now back to the wigs! They have had time enough to talk; let's save them the trouble!

## ACT V

SCENE I.—*Forest.* GOETZ and GEORGE.

GOETZ: No further! Another step and I should have broken my oath. What is that dust beyond? And that wild mob moving towards us?

LERSE (*entering*): The rebel peasants. Back to the castle! They have dealt horribly with the noblest men!

GOETZ: On my own soil I shall not try to evade the rabble.

*[Enter STUMPF, KOHL, SIEVERS, and armed peasants.]*

STUMPF: We come to ask you, brave Goetz, to be our captain.

GOETZ: What! Me? To break my oath? Stumpf, I thought you were a friend! Even if I were free, and you wanted to carry on as you did at Weinsberg, raving and burning, and murdering, I'd rather be killed than be your captain!

STUMPF: If we had a leader of authority, such things would not happen. The princes and all Germany would thank you.

SIEVERS: You must be our captain, or you will have to defend your own skin. We give you two hours to consider it.

GOETZ: Why consider? I can decide now as well as later. Will you desist from your misdeeds, and act like decent folk who know what they want? Then I shall help you with your claims, and be your captain for four weeks. Now, come!

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*Landscape, with village and castle in distance.*

GOETZ and GEORGE.

GEORGE: I beseech you, leave this infamous mob of robbers and incendiaries.

GOETZ: We have done some good and saved many a convent, many a life.

GEORGE: Oh, sir, I beg you to leave them at once, before they drag you away with them as prisoner, instead of following you as captain! (*Flames are seen rising from the distant village.*) See there! A new crime!

GOETZ: That is Miltenberg. Quick, George! Prevent the burning of the castle. I'll have nothing further to do with the scoundrels.

GEORGE: I shall save Miltenberg, or you will not see me again.

*[Exit.]*

GOETZ: Everybody blames me for the mischief, and nobody gives me credit for having prevented so much evil. Would I were thousands of miles away!

*[Enter SIEVERS, LINK, METZLER, peasants.]*

LINK: Rouse yourself, captain; the enemy is near and in great force!

GOETZ: Who burnt Miltenberg?

METZLER: If you want to make a fuss, we'll soon teach you!

GOETZ: You threaten? Scoundrel! *[He knocks him down with a blow of his fist.]*

KOHL: You are mad! The enemy is coming, and you quarrel.

*[Tumult, battle, and rout of the peasants. Then the stage gradually fills with gypsies. GOETZ returns wounded, is recognised by the gypsies, who bandage him, help him on to his horse, and ask him to lead them. Soldiers enter and level their halberds at GOETZ.]*

SCENE III.—ADELHEID'S *room.* *Night.* ADELHEID. FRANZ.

FRANZ: Oh, let me stay yet a little while—here, where I live. Without is death!

ADELHEID: Already you hesitate? Then give me back the phial. You played the hero, but you are only a boy; A man who woos a noble woman stakes his life, honour, virtue, happiness! Boy, leave me!

FRANZ: No, you are mine. And if I get your freedom I get my own. With a firm hand I shall pour the poison into my master's cup. Farewell.

*[He embraces her and hurries away.]*

SCENE IV.—*Rustic garden. MARIE sleeping in an arbour.*

LERSE.

LERSE: Gracious lady, awake! We must away. Goetz captured as a rebel and thrown into a dungeon! His age! His wounds!

MARIE: We must hurry to Weislingen. Only dire necessity can drive me to this step. Saving my brother's life I go to death. I shall kneel to him, weep before him.

*[Exit.]*

SCENE V.—WEISLINGEN'S *hall.*

WEISLINGEN: A wretched fever has dried my very marrow. No rest for me, day or night! Goetz haunts my very dreams. He is a prisoner, and yet I tremble before him. (*Enter MARIE.*) Oh, heaven! Marie's spirit, to tell me of her death!

MARIE: Weislingen, I am no spirit. I have come to beg of you my brother's life.

WEISLINGEN: Marie! You, angel of heaven, bring with you the tortures of hell. The breath of death is upon me, and you come to throw me into despair!

MARIE: My brother is ill in prison. His wounds—his age—

WEISLINGEN: Enough. Franz! (*Enter FRANZ in great excitement.*) The papers there! (*FRANZ hands him a sealed packet.*) Here is your brother's death-warrant; and thus I tear it. He lives. Do not weep, Franz; there's hope for the living.

FRANZ: You cannot, you must die! Poison from your wife. [*Rushes to the window, and throws himself out into the river.*]

WEISLINGEN: Woe to me! Poison from my wife! Franz seduced by the infamous woman! I am dying; and in my agony throb the tortures of hell.

MARIE (*kneeling*): Merciful God, have pity on him!

SCENE VI.—*A small garden outside the prison, GOETZ, ELIZABETH, LERSE, and prison-keeper.*

GOETZ: Almighty God! How lovely is it beneath Thy heaven! Farewell, my children! My roots are cut away, my strength totters to the grave. Let me see George once more, and sun myself in his look. You turn away and weep? He is dead! Then die, Goetz! How did he die? Alas! they took him among the incendiaries, and he has been executed?

ELIZABETH: No, he was slain at Miltenberg, fighting like a lion.

GOETZ: God be praised! Now release my soul! My poor wife! I leave you in a wicked world. Lerse, forsake her not! Blessings upon Marie and her husband. Selbitz is dead, and the good emperor, and my George. Give me some water! Heavenly air! Freedom!

[*He dies.*]

ELIZABETH: Freedom is only above—with thee; the world is a prison.

LERSE: Noble man! Woe to this age that rejected thee! Woe to the future that shall misjudge thee!

## FOOTNOTES:

[A] The story of "Goetz von Berlichingen" was founded on the life of a German soldier of fortune who flourished between 1480 and 1562. The possibilities of his biography inspired Goethe (Vol. IV, p. 253) with the idea of doing for Germany what Shakespeare had done for mediæval England. In a few weeks he

had turned the life into a series of vivid dramatic pictures, which so engrossed him that he "forgot Homer, Shakespeare, and everything." For the next two years the manuscript lay untouched. In 1773 he made a careful revision and published it anonymously under the title of "Goetz von Berlichingen of the Iron Hand"; it is in this form we possess the work now. At a still later period, in 1804, Goethe prepared another version of the play for the stage. The subject-matter of "Goetz" is purely revolutionary. Goetz, the hero himself, is a champion of a good cause—the cause of freedom and self-reliance. He is the embodiment of sturdy German virtues, the Empire and the Church playing the unenviable role of intrigue and oppression. As a stage play, "Goetz" is ill-constructed, but otherwise it stands a veritable literary triumph, and a worthy predecessor to "Faust." This epitome has been prepared from the German text.

---

# Iphigenia in Tauris<sup>[B]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

IPHIGENIA ORESTES

THOAS, *King of Tauris*

PYLADES ARKAS

*The scene throughout is laid in a grove before  
DIANA'S temple in Tauris.*

## ACT I

### **IPHIGENIA and THOAS.**

THOAS: To-day I come within this sacred fane,  
Which I have often entered to implore  
And thank the gods for conquest. In my breast  
I bear an old and fondly-cherish'd wish,  
To which methinks thou canst not be a stranger:  
I hope, a blessing to myself and realm,  
To lead thee to my dwelling as my bride.

IPHIGENIA: Too great thine offer, king, to one  
unknown,  
Who on this shore sought only what thou gavest,  
Safety and peace.

THOAS: Thus still to shroud thyself  
From me, as from the lowest, in the veil  
Of mystery which wrapp'd thy coming here,  
Would in no country be deem'd just or right.

IPHIGENIA: If I conceal'd, O king, my name, my race,  
It was embarrassment, and not mistrust.  
For didst thou know who stands before thee now,  
Strange horror would possess thy mighty heart,  
And, far from wishing me to share thy throne,  
Thou wouldst more likely banish me forthwith.

THOAS: Whate'er respecting thee the gods decree,  
Since thou hast dwelt amongst us, and enjoy'd  
The privilege the pious stranger claims,  
To me hath fail'd no blessing sent from heaven.  
End then thy silence, priestess!

IPHIGENIA: I issue from the Titan's race.

THOAS: From that same Tantalus, whom Jove himself  
Drew to his council and his social board?

IPHIGENIA: His crime was human, and their doom  
severe;  
Alas, and his whole race must bear their hate.  
His son, Pelops, obtained his second wife  
Through treachery and murder. And Hebe's sons,  
Thyestes and Atreus, envious of the love  
That Pelops bore his first-born, murdered him.  
The mother, held as murderess by the sire,  
In terror did destroy herself. The sons,  
After the death of Pelops, shared the rule  
O'er Mycenæ, till Atreus from the realm  
Thyestes drove. Oh, spare me to relate  
The deeds of horror, vengeance, cruel infamy  
That ended in a feast where Atreus made  
His brother eat the flesh of his own boys.

THOAS: But tell me by what miracle thou sprangest  
From race so savage.

IPHIGENIA: Atreus' eldest son  
Was Agamemnon; he, O king, my sire;  
My mother Clytemnestra, who then bore

To him Electra, and to fill his cup  
Of bliss, Orestes. But misfortunes new  
Befel our ancient house, when to avenge  
The fairest woman's wrongs the kings of Greece  
Round Ilion's walls encamp'd, led by my sire.  
In Aulis vainly for a favouring gale  
They waited; for, enrag'd against their chief,  
Diana stay'd their progress, and requir'd,  
Through Chalcas' voice, the monarch's eldest daughter.  
They lured me to the altar, and this head  
There to the goddess doomed. She was appeased,  
And shrouded me in a protecting cloud.  
Here I awakened from the dream of death,  
Diana's priestess, I who speak with thee.

THOAS: I yield no higher honour or regard  
To the king's daughter than the maid unknown;  
Once more my first proposal I repeat.

IPHIGENIA: Hath not the goddess who protected me  
Alone a right to my devoted head?

THOAS: Not many words are needed to refuse,  
The *no* alone is heard by the refused.

IPHIGENIA: I have to thee my inmost heart reveal'd.  
My father, mother, and my long-lost home  
With yearning soul I pine to see.

THOAS:           Then go!  
And to the voice of reason close thine ear.  
Hear then my last resolve. Be priestess still  
Of the great goddess who selected thee.  
From olden time no stranger near'd our shore  
But fell a victim at her sacred shrine;  
But thou, with kind affection didst enthrall  
Me so that wholly I forgot my duty;  
And I did not hear my people's murmurs.  
Now they cry aloud. No longer now  
Will I oppose the wishes of the crowd.

Two strangers, whom in caverns of the shore  
We found conceal'd, and whose arrival here  
Bodes to my realm no good, are in my power.  
With them thy goddess may once more resume  
Her ancient, pious, long-suspended rites!  
I send them here—thy duty not unknown.     *[Exit.*

IPHIGENIA: O goddess! Keep my hands from blood!

## ACT II

### ORESTES *and* PYLADES.

ORESTES: When I implor'd Apollo to remove  
The grisly band of Furies from my side,  
He promised aid and safety in the fane  
Of his lov'd sister, who o'er Tauris rules.  
Thus the prophetic word fulfils itself,  
That with my life shall terminate my woe.  
Thee only, friend, thee am I loath to take,  
The guiltless partner of my crime and curse,  
To yonder cheerless shore!

PYLADES:           Think not of death!  
But mark if not the gods perchance present  
Means and fit moment for a joyful flight.  
The gods avenge not on the son the deeds  
Done by their father.

ORESTES:           It is their decree  
Which doth destroy us.

PYLADES:           From our guards I learn  
A strange and god-like woman holds in check  
The execution of the bloody law.

ORESTES: The monarch's savage will decrees our death;  
A woman cannot save when he condemns.

PYLADES: She comes: leave us alone. I dare not tell  
At once our names, nor unreserv'd confide  
Our fortunes to her. Now retire awhile.

*[Exit ORESTES. Enter IPHIGENIA.]*

IPHIGENIA: Whence art thou? Stranger, speak! To me  
thy bearing  
Stamps thee of Grecian, not of Scythian race.

*[She unbinds his chains.]*

The gods avert the doom that threatens you!

PYLADES: Delicious music! Dearly welcome tones  
Of our own language in a foreign land!  
We are from Crete, Adrastus' sons; and I  
Am Cephalus; my eldest brother, he,  
Laodamas. Between us stood a youth  
Whom, when our sire died (having return'd  
From Troy, enrich'd with loot), in contest fierce  
My brother slew! 'Tis thus the Furies now  
For kindred-murder dog his restless steps.  
But to this savage shore the Delphian god  
Hath sent us, cheer'd by hope. My tale is told.

IPHIGENIA: Troy fallen! Dear stranger, oh, say!

PYLADES: The stately town  
Now lies in ruins. Many a hero's grave  
Will oft our thoughts recall to Ilion's shore.  
There lies Achilles and his noble friend;  
Nor Palamedes, nor Ajax, e'er again  
The daylight of their native land beheld.  
Yet happy are the thousands who receiv'd  
Their bitter death-blow from a hostile hand,  
And not like Agamemnon, who, ensnared,

Fell murdered on the day of his return  
By Clytemnestra, with Ægisthus' aid.

IPHIGENIA: Base passion prompted then this deed of  
shame?

PYLADES: And feelings, cherish'd long of deep  
revenge.

For such a dreadful deed, that if on earth  
Aught could exculpate murder, it were this.  
The monarch, for the welfare of the Greeks,  
Her eldest daughter doomed. Within her heart  
This planted such abhorrence that forthwith  
She to Ægisthus hath resigned herself,  
And round her husband flung the web of death.

IPHIGENIA (*veiling herself*): It is enough! Thou wilt  
again behold me.

### ACT III

#### IPHIGENIA *and* ORESTES.

IPHIGENIA: Unhappy man, I only loose thy bonds  
In token of a still severer doom.  
For the incensed king, should I refuse  
Compliance with the rites himself enjoin'd,  
Will choose another virgin from my train  
As my successor. Then, alas! with nought,  
pave ardent wishes, can I succour you.  
But tell me now, when Agamemnon fell,  
Orestes—did he share his sire's fate?  
Say, was he saved? And is he still alive?  
And lives Electra, too?

ORESTES: They both survive.  
Half of the horror only hast thou heard.  
Electra, on the day when fell her sire,  
Her brother from impending doom conceal'd;  
Him Strophius, his father's relative,  
Received with kindest care, and rear'd him up,  
With his own son, named Pylades, who soon  
Around the stranger twin'd love's fairest bonds.  
The longing to revenge the monarch's death  
Took them to Mycenæ, and by her son  
Was Clytemnestra slain.

IPHIGENIA: Immortal powers!  
O tell me of the poor unfortunate!  
Speak of Orestes!

ORESTES: Him the Furies chase.  
They glare around him with their hollow eyes,  
Like greedy eagles. In their murky dens  
They stir themselves, and from the corners creep  
Their comrades, dire remorse and pallid fear;  
Before them fumes a mist of Acheron.  
I am Orestes! and this guilty head  
Is stooping to the tomb and covets death;  
It will be welcome now in any shape.

[ORESTES *retires*. IPHIGENIA *prays to the gods*,  
*and*

ORESTES *returns*.

ORESTES: Who art thou, that thy voice thus horribly  
Can harrow up my bosom's inmost depths?

IPHIGENIA: Thine inmost heart reveals it. I am she—  
Iphigenia!

ORESTES: Hence, away, begone!  
Leave me! Like Heracles, a death of shame,  
Unworthy wretch, locked in myself, I'll die!

IPHIGENIA: Thou shalt not perish! Would that I might  
hear  
One quiet word from thee! Dispel my doubts,  
Make sure the bliss I have implored so long.  
Orestes! O my brother!

ORESTES: There's pity in thy look! oh, gaze not so—  
'Twas with such looks that Clytemnestra sought  
An entrance to her son Orestes' heart,  
And yet his uprais'd arm her bosom pierced.  
The weapon raise, spare not, this bosom rend,  
And make an outlet for its boiling streams.

*[He sinks exhausted. Enter PYLADES.]*

PYLADES: Dost thou not know me, and this sacred  
grove,  
And this blest light, which shines not on the dead?  
Attend! Each moment is of priceless worth,  
And our return hangs on a slender thread.  
The favouring gale, which swells our parting sail,  
Must to Olympus waft our perfect joy.  
Quick counsel and resolve the time demands.

## ACT IV

### IPHIGENIA *alone.*

IPHIGENIA: They hasten to the sea, where in a bay  
Their comrades in the vessel lie concealed,  
Waiting a signal. Me they have supplied  
With artful answers should the monarch send  
To urge the sacrifice. Detested falsehood!

*[Enter ARKAS.]*

ARKAS: Priestess, with speed conclude the sacrifice!  
Impatiently the king and people wait.

IPHIGENIA: The gods have not decreed that it should be.

The elder of these men of kindred-murder  
Bears guilt. The dread Erinnys here within  
Have seized upon their prey, polluting thus  
The sanctuary. I hasten now to bathe  
The goddess' image in the sea, and there  
With solemn rites its purity restore.

ARKAS: This hindrance to the monarch I'll announce.

[*Exit* ARKAS. Enter PYLADES.

PYLADES: Thy brother is restor'd! The fire of youth  
With growing glory shines upon his brow.  
Let us then hasten; guide me to the fane.  
I can unaided on my shoulder bear  
The goddess' image; how I long to feel  
The precious burden! Hast thou to the king  
Announced the prudent message as agreed?

IPHIGENIA: The royal messenger arrived, and I,  
According to thy counsel, fram'd my speech.

PYLADES: Danger again doth hover o'er our heads.  
Alas! Why hast thou failed to shroud thyself  
Within the veil of sacerdotal rights?

IPHIGENIA: I never have employed them as a veil.

PYLADES: Pure soul! Thy scruples will alike destroy  
Thyself and us. Come, let us be firm.  
Nor with incautious haste betray ourselves.

IPHIGENIA: It is an honest scruple, which forbids  
That I should cunningly deceive the king,  
And plunder him who was my second father.

PYLADES: Him dost thou fly, who would have slain  
thy brother.  
If we should perish, bitter self-reproach,  
Forerunner of despair, will be thy portion;  
Necessity commands. The rest thou knowest. [*Exit*.

IPHIGENIA: I must obey him, for I see my friends  
Beset with peril. Yet my own sad fate  
Doth with increasing anguish move my heart  
To steal the image, sacred and rever'd,  
Confided to my care, and him deceive  
To whom I owe my life and destiny!  
Let not abhorrence spring within my heart!

## ACT V

**THOAS *alone.***

THOAS: Fierce anger rages in my riven breast,  
First against her whom I esteem'd so pure;  
Then 'gainst myself, whose foolish lenity  
Hath fashion'd her for treason. Vain my hope  
To bind her to me. Now that I oppose  
Her wish, she seeks to gain her ends by fraud.

[*Enter* IPHIGENIA.

Wherefore delay the sacrifice; inform me!

IPHIGENIA: The goddess for reflection grants thee  
time.

THOAS: To thee this time seems also opportune.

IPHIGENIA: Are we not bound to render the distress'd  
The gracious kindness from the gods received?  
Thou know'st we are, and yet wilt thou compel me?

THOAS: Obey thine office, not the king.

IPHIGENIA: Oh, couldst thou see the struggle of my  
soul,  
Courageously toward the first attack

Of an unhappy doom which threatens me;  
Must I implore a miracle from heaven?

THOAS: Extravagant thy interest in the fate  
Of these two strangers. Tell me who they are.

IPHIGENIA: They are—they seem, at least—I think  
them Greeks.

THOAS: Thy countrymen; no doubt they have  
renewed  
The pleasing picture of return.

IPHIGENIA (*after a pause*): Attend,  
O king, and honour truth in me. A plot  
Deceitfully and secretly is laid  
Touching the captives thou dost ask in vain.  
They have escaped. The eldest is Orestes,  
Whom madness seized, my brother; Pylades,  
His early friend and confidant, the other.  
From Delphi, Phoebus sent them to this shore,  
To steal away the image of Diana,  
And to him bear back the sister thither.  
And for this, deliverance promised he  
The Fury-haunted son.

THOAS: The traitors have contrived a cunning web,  
And cast it round thee, who, secluded long,  
Giv'st willing credence to thine own desire.

IPHIGENIA: No, no! I'd pledge my life these men are  
true;  
And shouldst thou find them otherwise, O king,  
Then let them perish both, and cast me forth.

[*Enter ORESTES, armed.*]

ORESTES (*addressing his followers*): Redouble your  
exertions! Hold them back!  
And keep a passage open to the ship!  
(*To IPHIGENIA*) We are betray'd; brief time remains for  
flight!

*[He perceives the king.]*

THOAS: None in my presence with impunity  
His naked weapon wears!

IPHIGENIA: Do not profane  
Diana's sanctuary with rage and blood.  
In him revere the king, my second father!

ORESTES: Will he permit our peaceable return?

IPHIGENIA: Thy gleaming sword forbids me to reply.

*[Enter PYLADES, followed by ARKAS, with  
drawn swords]*

PYLADES: Do not delay, our friends are putting forth  
Their final strength!

ARKAS: They yield; their ship is ours!

THOAS: Let none annoy the foe while we confer.

*[ARKAS retires.]*

THOAS: Now, answer me; how dost thou prove thyself  
The priestess' brother, Agamemnon's son?

IPHIGENIA: See here, the mark on his right hand  
impress'd  
As of three stars, which on his natal day  
Were by the priest declar'd to indicate  
Some dreadful deed therewith to be perform'd!

THOAS: E'en though thy words had banish'd every  
doubt,  
Still must our arms decide. I see no peace;  
Their purpose, as thou didst thyself confess,  
Was to deprive me of Diana's image!

ORESTES: The image shall not be the cause of strife!  
We now perceive the error which the god  
Threw o'er our minds. His counsel I implor'd;  
He answer'd, "Back to Greece the sister bring,  
Who in the Tauris sanctuary abides."

To Phoebus' sister we applied the words,  
And she referred to thee.

IPHIGENIA: Oh, let thy heart  
Be moved by what an honest tongue has spoken.  
Look on us, king; an opportunity  
For such a noble deed not oft occurs!

THOAS: Then go!

IPHIGENIA: Not so, my king! I cannot part  
Without thy blessing, or in anger from thee.

THOAS (*extending his hand*): Fare thee well!

### FOOTNOTES:

[B] Goethe's fascinating and noble drama, "Iphigenia in Tauris," was first written in prose, and recast into verse in 1786. Inspired partly by his feelings towards Frau von Stein, whom Goethe "credited with knowing every trait of his being," and partly by the "Iphigenia in Tauris" of Euripides, the play is totally different from anything that had as yet come from his pen. Although it lacks some of the pomp and circumstance of the best Greek tragedy, it is written with great dignity in the strictest classical form, admirably suggesting the best in French classical drama. The prominent motive of the piece is the struggle between truth and falsehood. "It is," one critic has remarked, "a poetic drama of the soul." On its production at Weimar, the German public received it indifferently.

---

**GOGOL**<sup>[C]</sup>

---

# The Inspector-General

## *Persons in the Play*

ANTON ANTONOVITCH, *governor of a small town*

ANNA ANDREYEVNA, *his wife*

MARYA, *their daughter*

LUKA, *director of schools*

KHELSTAKOV, *a St. Petersburg official*

OSIP, *his servant-man*

BOBCHINSKI and DOBCHINSKI, *independent gentlemen*

A JUDGE, A CHARITY COMMISSIONER, A POSTMASTER

POLICE SUPERINTENDENT and CONSTABLES

A WAITER AT THE INN

## ACT I

SCENE.—*A room in the GOVERNOR'S house. The GOVERNOR, a coarse and ill-educated official, and several functionaries of the town.*

GOVERNOR (*addressing the functionaries*): I have bad news. An inspector-general is coming from St. Petersburg. You must see that your various departments are set in order. The hospital must be tidied up and the patients must be provided with nice white night-caps. The school-teachers must coach up the scholars in their subjects.

[*Enter BOBCHINSKI and DOBCHINSKI breathlessly.*]

BOBCHINSKI: What an extraordinary incident!

DOBCHINSKI: A startling announcement!

ALL: What is it? What is it?

BOBCHINSKI: I will tell you correctly. After you had received the letter from St. Petersburg, I ran out to tell the postmaster what it had announced. On the way Dobchinski pressed me to go into the inn for refreshment. Into the restaurant came an elegant young man with a fashionable aspect. The landlord told us he was an official on his way from Petersburg to Saratov, and that he is acting strangely, for he has been here more than a fortnight, and pays for nothing.

GOVERNOR: Good lord! Surely it cannot be he! Been here a fortnight? May heaven help us. You, sirs, get all your departments in proper trim. In the meantime I will take a stroll round the town, and satisfy myself that travellers are treated with due respect.

The governor orders the police to see that the street leading to the inn is well swept. He threatens to punish severely any of the townspeople who shall dare to bring complaints of any kind to the visiting official.

## ACT II

SCENE.—*A small room in the inn. OSIP lying on his master's bed.*

OSIP: Devil take it! I am famishing. It is two months since we left St. Petersburg. This master of mine has squandered all his money on the way, and here we are penniless. The old man sends his son money, but he goes on the racket with it till all is spent, and then he has to pawn his clothes almost to the last rag. And now this landlord declares he will let us have nothing more to eat unless we pay in advance. Ah, there's the knock.

*[He gets off the bed. KHELSTAKOV enters.]*

KHELSTAKOV: Go down and ask for something to eat.

OSIP: No. The landlord will not let us have it. He says we are swindlers, and he threatens to have you put in prison.

KHELSTAKOV: Go to the devil! Call the landlord. (*OSIP goes.*) How fearfully hungry I am. And I was cheated at cards and cleaned right out at Penza by that infantry captain. What a miserable little town this is. They give no credit at the provision shops.

[*Enter* WAITER.

WAITER: The landlord asks what you want.

KHELSTAKOV: Please bring my dinner at once. I must be busy directly I have dined.

The waiter replies that the landlord refuses to supply anything more, and seems likely to complain to the governor. But presently dinner is brought in. To Khlestakov's great consternation Osip announces that the governor has come and is asking for him.

KHELSTAKOV: What? The landlord has reported me!  
I'll put on an aristocratic air, and ask him how he dares

---

Governor, entering in trepidation and saluting humbly, astonishes him by profuse offers of hospitality and entertainment, though when at first mention is made of taking him to other quarters, the guest in horror ejaculates that he supposes the gaol is meant, and he asks what right the governor has to hint at such a thing.

KHELSTAKOV (*indignantly*): How dare you? I—I—I  
am a government official at St. Petersburg. I—I—I——

GOVERNOR (*aside*): Good heavens, what a rage he is in! He knows everything. Those confounded merchants have told him all.

Banging the table, Khlestakov declares he will *not* go to the gaol, but will complain to the Minister of the Interior; and the governor, trembling and terrified, pleads that he has a wife and little children, and begs that he may not be ruined. The ridiculous misunderstanding on both sides grows more confused every minute. The governor pours forth the most abject apologies; declares that if the people accuse him of oppression and extortion, and even of flogging women, they are a slandering mob.

KHELSTAKOV: What have I to do with your enemies or the women you have flogged? Don't attempt to flog me. Now, look here, I will pay this landlord's account, but just now I have not the money. That is why I am staying here.

GOVERNOR (*aside*): Sly rogue, trying to mystify me!  
(*Aloud*) If you really are short of money, I am ready to serve you at once.

The visitor says that he will in that case borrow 200 roubles, and the money is readily handed over; in fact, the governor quietly slips in 200 extra roubles. The governor, convinced that the inspector-general is simply determined to keep up his *incognito*, resolves to act accordingly, and to tell falsehoods appropriate for mutual deception. He invites the guest to visit Various institutions, and a round is made.

### ACT III

SCENE.—*A room in the GOVERNOR'S house. GOVERNOR, KHELSTAKOV, and other functionaries.*

KHELSTAKOV: Fine establishments! In other towns they showed me nothing.

GOVERNOR: In other towns I venture to say that the officials think most about their own profit; here we only aim at winning the approbation of the government.

KHELSTAKOV: That lunch was very good! The fish was delicious! Where was it that we lunched? Was it not at the hospital? I saw the beds, but there were not many patients. Have the sick recovered?

GOVERNOR: Yes. Since I became governor they all get well like flies, not so much by doctoring as by honesty and regularity. Thank God, everything goes satisfactorily here! Another governor would undoubtedly look after his own advantage; but, believe me, when I lie down to sleep, my prayer is, "O Thou my Lord, may the government perceive my zeal and be satisfied." So I have an easy conscience.

KHELSTAKOV: Are there any clubs here where a game at cards could be had?

GOVERNOR: God forbid! Here such a thing as a card-club is never heard of. I am disgusted at the sight of a card, and never dealt one in my life. Once to amuse the children I built a house of cards, and had accursed dreams all night.

LUKA (*aside*): But the villain cheated me yesterday out of a hundred roubles!

Introduced to the governor's wife and daughter, Khlestakov addresses them in the manner of a gallant from the metropolis, and chatters boastfully of his influence, his position, and his connections. His house is the first in St. Petersburg. Meantime, the various functionaries meet in the house of the governor to concert measures for propitiating this great courtier. They resolve to present him with a substantial token of regard. With great trepidation they wait on him.

JUDGE (*entering very nervously*): I have the honour to present myself. I have been judge here since 1816, and have been decorated with the Vladimir of the Fourth Class.

KHELSTAKOV: What have you there in your hand?

JUDGE (*in bewilderment drops banknotes on the floor*): Nothing.

KHELSTAKOV: How nothing? I see some money has been dropped.

JUDGE (*trembling and aside*): O heaven, I am already before the tribunal, and they have brought the cart to take me into exile.

Khlestakov picks up the notes, and asks that the money may be lent him, as he has spent all his cash on the journey. He promises to return it as soon as he reaches home, but the judge protests that the honour of lending it is enough, and he begs that there shall be no injunction against him.

Next to present himself is the postmaster, in full uniform, sword in hand. After a little conversation with this functionary, Khlestakov thinks he may just as well borrow of him also, and he forthwith mentions that a singular thing has happened to him, for he has lost all his money on the way, and would be glad to be obliged with the loan of three hundred roubles. It is instantly counted out with alacrity, and the

postmaster hastily retires. Also, in a very nervous state, Luka, the School Director, the Charity Commissioner, Bobchinski and Dobchinski, come to pay their homage, and Khlestakov borrows easily from each in turn.

KHELSTAKOV (*alone*): There are many officials here; it seems to me, however, that they take me for a government functionary. What fools! I must write about it all to Tryapitchkin at Petersburg; he will write sketches of it in the papers. Here, Osip, bring me paper and ink! I will just see how much money I have got. Oh, more than a thousand!

While he is writing a letter Osip interrupts him with earnest assurances that it will be prudent to depart speedily from the town; for people have been mistaking him for somebody else, and awkward complications may ensue. It is really time to go. There are splendid horses here, and these can be secured for the journey. Khlestakov consents, tells Osip to take the letter to the post, and to obtain good posthorses. Suddenly some merchants present themselves with petitions, bringing with them gifts of sugar-loaves and wine. They pour forth bitter complaints against the governor. They accuse him of constant and outrageous extortion. They beg Khlestakov to secure his deposition from office. When they offer the sugar-loaves and the wine, Khlestakov protests that he cannot accept bribes, but if they would offer him a loan of three hundred roubles that would be another matter. They do so and go out.

[*Enter MARYA nervously.*

MARYA: Ach!

KHELSTAKOV: Why are you so frightened?

MARYA: No; I am not frightened. I thought mamma might be here. I am disturbing you in your important business.

KHELSTAKOV: But your eyes are more attractive than important business.

MARYA: You are talking in St. Petersburg style.

KHELSTAKOV: May I venture to be so happy as to offer you a chair? But no; you should be offered a throne, not a chair! I offer you my love, which ever since your first glance——

MARYA: Love! I do not understand love!

He kisses her on the shoulder, and, when she rises angrily to go, falls on his knees. At that moment her mother enters. With a show of indignation she orders Marya away.

KHELSTAKOV (*kneeling at her feet*): Madame, you see I burn with love.

ANNA ANDREYEVNA: But permit me, I do not quite comprehend you. If I am not mistaken, you were making a proposal to my daughter?

KHELSTAKOV: No; I am in love with you.

ANNA ANDREYEVNA: But I am married!

KHELSTAKOV: That is nothing. Let us flee under the canopy of heaven. I crave your hand!

Marya enters, and seeing Khlestakov on his knees, shrieks. The mother scolds her for her bad manners, and declares that he was, after all, asking for the daughter's hand. Then enters the governor. He breathlessly begins to bewail the base, lying conduct of the merchants who have been slandering him, and swears he is innocent of oppressing anybody.

To his profound amazement, Anna informs her husband that the great man has honoured them by asking for their daughter's hand. On recovering from his amazement, he sees the couple kissing, and gives them his blessing. Osip enters at this juncture to say the horses are ready, and Khlestakov informs the governor that he is only off to visit for a day a rich uncle. He will quickly return. He presently rides off after affectionate farewell expressions on both sides.

## ACT IV

SCENE.—*As before. The GOVERNOR, ANNA ANDREYEVNA, and MARYA. A police-officer enters.*

GOVERNOR (*addressing the policeman*): Ivan Karpovitch, summon the merchants here, brother. Complaining of me, indeed! Cursed lot of Jews! Little turtle doves! Ascertain who brought petitions; and take care to let them know how heaven has honoured the governor. His daughter is going to marry a man without an equal in the world; who can achieve everything, everything, everything. Let everybody know! Shout it out

to everybody! Ring the bells! Devil take it; now that at length I triumph, triumph I will!

The police-officer retires. The governor and Anna indulge in roseate prospects of their coming prosperity. Of course they will not stay in these mean surroundings, but will remove to St. Petersburg. Suddenly the merchants enter. The governor receives them with the utmost indignation, assails them with a shower of vituperation. They abjectly entreat pardon. They promise to make amends by sending very handsome presents, and they are enjoined not to forget to do so. The wedding gifts are to be worthy of the occasion. The merchants retire crestfallen, and callers stream in with profuse congratulations. Anna, with studied haughtiness, makes them fully understand that the family will now be far above them all. All the people secretly express to each other their hatred and contempt for the governor and his family.

POSTMASTER (*breathlessly entering with an open letter in his hand*): An astonishing fact, gentlemen! The official which we took for an inspector-general is not one! I have discovered this from a letter which he wrote and which I saw was addressed "Post Office Street." So, as I said to myself that he had been reporting to the authorities something he had found wrong in the postal department, I felt a supernatural impulse constraining me to open the letter.

GOVERNOR: You dared to open the letter of so powerful a personage?

POSTMASTER: That is just the joke; that he is neither powerful nor a personage. I will read the letter. (*Reads*) "I hasten to inform you, my dear Tryapitchkin, of my experiences. I was cleared out of everything on the way by an infantry captain, so that an innkeeper wanted to put me in prison; when, owing to my Petersburg appearance and dress, the whole town suddenly took me for the governor-general. So now I am living with the governor, enjoy myself, and flirt with his wife and daughter. These people all lend me as much money as ever I please. The governor is as stupid as a grey gelding. The postmaster is a tippler. The charity commissioner is a pig in a skull-cap."

GOVERNOR: I am crushed—crushed—completely crushed. Catch him!

POSTMASTER: How can we catch him? I, as if purposely, specially ordered for him the very best post-carriage and three horses.

GOVERNOR: What an old fool I am! I have been thirty years in the service; not a tradesman nor contractor could cheat me; rogues upon rogues have I outwitted; three governors-general have I deceived!

ANNA ANDREYEVNA: But this cannot be, Antosha. He is engaged to Mashenka.

GOVERNOR (*enraged*): Engaged! Rubbish! Look, look; all the world, all Christendom, all of you look how the governor is fooled! Fool, fool; old driveller that I am! (*Shakes his fist at himself*) Ah, you fat-nose! Taking a rag for a man of rank! And now he is jingling his bells along the road. Who first said he was an inspector-general? Answer!

*[All point to BOBCHINSKI and DOBCHINSKI, who fall to accusing each other. A gendarme enters.]*

GENDARME: The inspector-general sent by imperial command has arrived, and requires you to attend him immediately. He awaits you at the inn.

*[Thunderstruck at this announcement, the whole group remained as if petrified, and the curtain falls.]*

## FOOTNOTES:

[C] Nicolai Vasilieyitch Gogol is famous not only as the prince of Russian humorists, but as the real founder of both the modern drama and the novel in Russian literature. He was born on March 31, 1809, in the province of Poltava, in South, or "Little," Russia, and died at Moscow on March 3, 1852. His life was replete with romantic episodes. After a short career on the stage, in St. Petersburg, followed by the tenure of a minor Government office, he returned to the South, and at once found his true vocation and achieved a wide popularity by a collection of stories and sketches of Cossack life, entitled "Evenings at a Farm

House," which appeared in 1830. Other "Cossack Tales" rapidly followed, including the famous "Taras Bulba"; in recognition of which, and of his project for writing a history of Russia in the Middle Ages, he was rewarded with a chair of history at St. Petersburg. This he held but for a short time, however. Turning his attention to comedy, Gogol now produced the drama "The Inspector-General" ("Revizor") in 1836, the play achieving a tremendous success on the stage in the spring of the same year, whilst in 1842 his novel entitled "Dead Souls" embodied the fruits of the same idea in fiction. The play is intended to bring a scathing indictment against the corruptions and abuses of officialism and administration. The following epitome has been prepared from the original Russian.

---

**OLIVER GOLDSMITH**<sup>[D]</sup>

---

# She Stoops to Conquer

## *Persons in the Play*

MR. HARDCASTLE	MARLOW
TONY LUMPKIN	KATE HARDCASTLE
HASTINGS	SIR CHARLES MARLOW
MRS. HARDCASTLE	CONSTANCE NEVILLE
SERVANTS	

## ACT I

SCENE I.—MR. HARDCASTLE'S *house*. MR. *and* MRS. HARDCASTLE.

MRS. HARDCASTLE: I vow, Mr. Hardcastle, I hate such old-fashioned trumpery.

HARDCASTLE: And I love it; old friends, old times, old manners, old books, old wine, and I believe you'll own I've been pretty fond of an old wife.

MRS. HARDCASTLE: Oh, you're for ever at your old wife. I'm not so old as you'd make me. I was twenty when my son Tony was born, and he's not come to years of discretion yet.

HARDCASTLE: Nor ever will, I dare answer; you've taught him finely. Alehouse and stable are his only schools.

MRS. HARDCASTLE: Poor boy, anyone can see he's consumptive.

[TONY *is heard hallooing.*

HARDCASTLE: Oh, very consumptive!

[TONY *crosses, and* MRS. HARDCASTLE *follows him out. Enter* KATE HARDCASTLE.

HARDCASTLE: Blessings on my pretty innocence! What a quantity of superfluous silk hast thou got about thee, girl!

KATE: But in the evening I am to wear my housewife's dress to please you; you know our agreement, sir.

HARDCASTLE: By the bye, I shall have to try your obedience this very evening. In fact, Kate, I expect the young gentleman I have chosen to be your husband, this very day; and my old friend his father, Sir Charles Marlow, soon after him. I shall not control your choice, but I am told that he is of an excellent understanding.

KATE: Is he?

HARDCASTLE: Very generous.

KATE: I believe I shall like him.

HARDCASTLE: Young and brave.

KATE: I'm sure I shall like him.

HARDCASTLE: And very handsome.

KATE: Say no more; he's mine.

HARDCASTLE: And, to crown all, he's one of the most reserved and bashful young fellows in the world.

KATE: That word has undone all the rest, still I think I'll have him. (*Exit* HARDCASTLE.) Reserved and sheepish. Can't he be cured? (*Enter* MISS NEVILLE.) I'm glad you

came, my dear. I am threatened with a lover, the son of Sir Charles Marlow.

MISS NEVILLE: The most intimate friend of Mr. Hastings, my admirer; and such a character. Among ladies of reputation the modestest man alive, but with others——

MISS HARDCASTLE: And has my mother been courting you for my brother Tony, as usual? I could almost love him for hating you so.

MISS NEVILLE: It is a good-natured creature at bottom, and I'm sure would wish to see me married to anyone but himself.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*An alehouse. TONY LUMPKIN carousing with the village riff-raff. MARLOW and HASTINGS arrive, and inquire the way to MR. HARDCASTLE'S house. TONY tells them they cannot possibly reach the house that night, but directs them to it as an inn.*

TONY: The old Buck's Head on the hill, one of the best inns in the whole county. But the landlord is rich and just going to leave off business; so he wants to be thought a gentleman, and will be for giving you his company. Ecod, he'll persuade you that his mother was an alderman, and his aunt a justice of the peace. I'll just step myself, and show you a piece of the way.

[*Exeunt.*]

## ACT II

SCENE.—*The hall of HARDCASTLE'S house. MARLOW and HASTINGS have just arrived at the supposed inn, and the*

*supposed innkeeper is paying hospitable attention to their belongings. Enter MARLOW and HASTINGS.*

HASTINGS: Upon my word, a very well-looking house; antique, but creditable.

MARLOW: The usual fate of a large mansion. Having just ruined the master by good housekeeping, it at last comes to levy contributions as an inn.

HASTINGS: Good and bad, you have lived pretty much among them; and yet, with all your experience you have never acquired any show of assurance. How shall you behave to the lady you have come down to visit?

MARLOW: As I behave to all other ladies. A barmaid, or a milliner—but to me a modest woman dressed out in her finery is the most tremendous object in creation. An impudent fellow may counterfeit modesty, but I'll be hanged if a modest man can counterfeit impudence. I shall bow very low, answer yes and no, and I don't think I shall venture to look her in the face. The fact is, I have really come down to forward your affair, not mine. Miss Neville loves you, the family don't know you, as my friend you are sure of a reception, and—Here comes mine host to interrupt us.

*[Enter HARDCASTLE.*

HARDCASTLE: Heartily welcome once more, gentlemen; which is Mr. Marlow? Sir, you are heartily welcome.

MARLOW: He has got our names from the servants already.

*[MARLOW and HASTINGS converse together, ostentatiously ignoring HARDCASTLE'S attempts to join in with a story of Marlborough at the siege of Denain.*

MARLOW: My good friend, a glass of that punch would help us to carry on the siege.

HARDCASTLE: Punch sir! (*Aside*) This is the most unaccountable kind of modesty I ever met with. Well, here, Mr. Marlow, here's to our better acquaintance.

MARLOW: A very impudent fellow, but a character; I'll humour him. Sir, my service to you. (*They drink.*) Well, now, what have you in the house for supper?

HARDCASTLE: For supper! (*Aside*) Was ever such a request to a man in his own house!

MARLOW: Yes, sir; supper. I begin to feel an appetite.

HARDCASTLE: Sure, such a brazen dog——Sir, I believe the bill of fare is drawn out; you shall see it. (*The menu is produced and discussed in scathing terms. Then MARLOW insists on seeing himself that the beds are properly aired.*) Well, sir, I will attend you. This may be modern modesty, but I never saw anything so like old-fashioned impudence.

[*Exeunt* HARDCASTLE and MARLOW.]

HASTINGS: This fellow's civilities begin to grow troublesome. (*Enter* MISS NEVILLE.) Miss Neville, by all that's happy!

MISS NEVILLE: My dear Hastings!

HASTINGS: But how could I have hoped to meet my dearest Constance at an inn?

MISS NEVILLE: An inn! You mistake. My aunt, my guardian, lives here. How could you think this house an inn?

HASTINGS: My friend, Mr. Marlow, and I were directed hither by a young fellow——

MISS NEVILLE: One of my hopeful cousin's tricks.

HASTINGS: We must keep up the deception with Marlow; else he will fly.

Hastings has planned to elope with Miss Neville; she wishes first to get into her own hands her jewelry, which is in Mrs. Hardcastle's possession. As they complete their plot Marlow enters.

HASTINGS: My dear Marlow, the most fortunate event! Let me present Miss Constance Neville. She and Miss Hardcastle have just alighted to take fresh horses. Miss Hardcastle will be here directly. Isn't it fortunate?

MARLOW: Oh, yes; very fortunate, a most joyful encounter; but our dresses, George! To-morrow will be every bit as convenient. Let it be to-morrow.

HASTINGS: Pshaw, man! Courage, courage! It is but the first plunge.

[*Enter KATE as from a walk. HASTINGS introduces them.*]

KATE (*after a pause*): I am glad of your safe arrival, sir. I am told you had some accidents by the way.

MARLOW: A few, madam. Yes, we had some. Yes, a good many. But should be sorry, madam—I mean glad—of any accidents that are so agreeably concluded. George, sure you won't go?

HASTINGS: You don't consider, man, that we are to manage a little *tête-à-tête* of our own.

[*Exeunt HASTINGS and MISS NEVILLE.*]

MARLOW: I am afraid, madam, I—hem—grow tiresome.

KATE: Not at all, sir; there is nothing I like so much as grave consideration. You were going to observe——

MARLOW: I was about to observe, madam—I was—I protest, I forgot——

KATE: Something about hypocrisy—this age of hypocrisy.

MARLOW: Ah, yes. In this age of hypocrisy there are few who—a—a—— But I see Miss Neville expects us;

shall I——

KATE: I'll follow you. If I could teach him a little confidence!

*[Exeunt.]*

Mrs. Hardcastle, Miss Neville, Hastings and Tony enter. In pursuance of their plot, Constance engages Tony in a determined flirtation, to his extreme disgust, while Hastings wins the heart of Mrs. Hardcastle by extravagant flatteries. On the pretext of bringing the "dear, sweet, pretty, provoking, undutiful boy" to a better mind, Hastings gets rid of the ladies, and then offers to take Miss Neville off Tony's hands. Tony joyfully engages to help the elopement, and procure Miss Neville's jewels.

### ACT III

SCENE.—*As before. Enter TONY with a casket.*

TONY: Ecod, I've got 'em. Cousin Con's necklaces, bobs and all. My mother shan't cheat the poor souls out of their fortin. Here's (*enter HASTINGS*) your sweetheart's jewels. If I hadn't a key to every drawer in my mother's bureau—— Never you mind me. Zounds, here she comes. Keep 'em. Morrice! Prance!

*[Exit HASTINGS. Enter MISS NEVILLE, and MRS. HARDCASTLE, who refuses to let her ward have her jewels.]*

MRS. HARDCASTLE: They are missing, I assure you. My son knows they are missing, and not to be found.

TONY: I can bear witness to that. I'll take my oath on't.

MRS. HARDCASTLE: In the meantime you can use my garnets.

*[Exit.]*

MISS NEVILLE: I detest garnets.

TONY: Don't be a fool! If she gives 'em you, take what you can get. I've stolen your jewels out of the

bureau. She's found it out, ecod, by the noise. Fly to your spark, and he'll tell you all about it. Vanish!

[*Exit* MISS NEVILLE.

Kate has reported Marlow's bashfulness to Hardcastle, who has told another tale. She has since learnt Marlow's blunder, and that he has taken her in her "housewife's dress" for the barmaid. She has resolved to test him in this character. She enters at the same time as Marlow, who is studying his notebook.

KATE: Did you call, sir?

MARLOW (*not looking up*): No, child.

KATE: Perhaps it was the other gentleman?

MARLOW: No, no, child, I tell you! (*Looking up.*) That is—yes, I think I did call. I vow, child, you're vastly handsome.

KATE: Oh, la, sir, you'll make me ashamed!

MARLOW: Suppose I should call for a taste of the nectar of your lips?

KATE: Nectar? Nectar? We keep no French wines. (*He tries to kiss her.*) Pray keep your distance. I'm sure you didn't treat Miss Hardcastle so. Are you a favourite among the ladies?

MARLOW: Yes, my dear. At the ladies' club up in town they call me their Agreeable Rattle. Do you ever work, child?

KATE: Ay, sure. There's not a screen or a quilt in the house but bears witness to that.

MARLOW: You must show me your embroidery.

[*As he seizes her hand, HARDCASTLE enters.*  
*Exit* MARLOW. KATE persuades her father to give her an hour to clear MARLOW'S character.

## ACT IV

SCENE.—*As before.* HASTINGS *has passed over the jewels to MARLOW'S care. The unconscious MARLOW has told him that the servant by his order has placed them in charge of the landlady. Enter HARDCASTLE, solus.*

HARDCASTLE: My house is turned topsy-turvy. His servants are drunk already. For his father's sake, I'll be calm. (*Enter MARLOW.*) Mr. Marlow, sir, the conduct of your servants is insufferable. Their manner of drinking is setting a very bad example.

MARLOW: I protest, my good friend, that's no fault of mine. They had my positive orders to drink as much as they could.

HARDCASTLE: Zounds, I shall go distracted! I'll stand it no longer! I desire that you and your drunken pack shall leave my house directly.

MARLOW: Leave your house? I never heard such cursed impudence. Bring me my bill.

HARDCASTLE: Nor I, confound me if ever I did!

MARLOW: My bill, I say.

HARDCASTLE: Young man, young man, from your father's letter I expected a well-bred, modest visitor, not a coxcomb and a bully. But he will be down here presently, and shall hear more of it.

[*Exit.*

MARLOW: How's this? Surely I have not mistaken the house? Everything looks like an inn. The barmaid, too. (*Enter KATE.*) A word with you, child. Who are you?

KATE: A poor relation, sir, who looks after the guests.

MARLOW: That is, you're the barmaid of this inn.

KATE: Inn? Oh, la! What brought that into your head? Old Mr. Hardcastle's house an inn!

MARLOW: Mr. Hardcastle's house? Mr. Hardcastle's? So all's out. I shall be laughed at over the whole town. To mistake this house of all others—and my father's old friend. What must he think of me! And may I be hanged, my dear, but I mistook you for the barmaid. I mistook—but it's all over. This house I no more show my face in. By heaven, she weeps! But the difference of our birth, fortune, education—an honorable connection would be impossible, and I would never harbour a thought of any other. Farewell. [*Exit.*]

KATE: He shall not go, if I have power to detain him. I will undeceive my father, and he shall laugh him out of his resolution.

[*Exit.*]

The second couple are about to take flight without the jewels, by Tony's help, when he receives a note from Hastings, which—not knowing its source—he hands to his mother to decipher. She resolves to carry Miss Neville off forthwith, to place her in charge of her old Aunt Pedigree, in the coach prepared for the elopement. Tony being ordered to attend them on horseback, hits on an expedient which he does not reveal, but contents himself with bidding Hastings meet him two hours hence in the garden. The party start on their journey.

## ACT V

SCENE I.—SIR CHARLES MARLOW *has arrived, and the two elders have been making merry over the blunder; both are now eager for the marriage. But they are mystified by MARLOW's assertion that he is indifferent to MISS HARDCASTLE, and his assertion is corroborated by what HARDCASTLE saw.*

SCENE II.—*The back of the garden. Enter TONY, booted and spurred, meeting HASTINGS.*

TONY: Ecod, five-and-twenty miles in two hours and a half is no such bad driving.

HASTINGS: But where are your fellow-passengers? Where have you left the ladies?

TONY: Why, where I found 'em! Led 'em astray, man. There's not a pond or a slough within five miles of the place but they can tell the taste of; and finished with the horsepond at the back of the garden. Mother's confoundedly frightened, and thinks herself forty miles off. So now, if your own horses be ready, you can whip off with my cousin, and no one to budge an inch after you.

HASTINGS: My dear friend, how can I be grateful.

[*Exit.*]

TONY: Here she comes—got up from the pond.

[*Enter MRS. HARDCASTLE.*]

MRS. HARDCASTLE: Oh, Tony, I'm killed—shook—battered to death! That last jolt has done for me. Whereabouts are we?

TONY: Crackskull Common by my guess, forty miles from home. Don't be afraid. Is that a man galloping behind us? Don't be afraid.

MRS. HARDCASTLE: Oh, there's a man coming! We are undone!

TONY (*aside*): Father-in-law, by all that's unlucky! Hide yourself, and keep close; if I cough it will mean danger.

[*Enter HARDCASTLE.*]

HARDCASTLE: I am sure I heard voices. What, Tony? Are you back already? (TONY *laughs.*)

MRS. HARDCASTLE (*running forward*): Oh, lud; he'll murder my poor boy! Here, good gentleman, whet your

rage on me. Take my money, take my life, good Mr. Highwayman, but spare my child.

HARDCASTLE: Sure, Dorothy, you have lost your wits? This is one of your tricks, you graceless rogue. Don't you remember me, and the mulberry-tree, and the horsepond?

MRS. HARDCASTLE: I shall remember it as long as I live. And this is your doing—you——

TONY: Ecod, mother, all the parish says you've spoilt me, so you may take the fruits on't.

[*Exeunt.*]

Miss Neville thinks better of the elopement, and resolves to appeal to Mr. Hardcastle's influence with his wife. This improved plan is carried to a successful issue, with great satisfaction to Tony Lumpkin.

SCENE III.—*The hall.* SIR CHARLES MARLOW *and* HARDCASTLE *witness, from concealment, the formal proposal of MARLOW to make the supposed "poor relation" his wife. They break in.*

SIR CHARLES: Charles, Charles, how thou hast deceived me! Is this your indifference?

HARDCASTLE: Your cold contempt? Your formal interview? What have you to say?

MARLOW: That I'm all amazement. What does it mean?

HARDCASTLE: It means that you say and unsay things at pleasure; that you can address a lady in private and deny it in public; that you have one story for us and another for my daughter.

MARLOW: Daughter? This lady your daughter? Oh, the devil! Oh—!

KATE: In which of your characters may we address you? The faltering gentleman who looks on the ground

and hates hypocrisy, or the bold, forward Agreeable Rattle of the ladies' club?

MARLOW: Zounds, this is worse than death! I must be gone.

HARDCASTLE: But you shall not! I see it was all a mistake. She'll forgive you; we'll all forgive you. Courage, man! And if she makes as good a wife as she has a daughter, I don't believe you'll ever repent your bargain. So now to supper. To-morrow we shall gather all the poor of this parish about us; the mistakes of the night shall be crowned with a merry morning.

#### FOOTNOTES:

[D] The Life of Goldsmith, by John Forster, may be found in Volume IX of the WORLD'S GREATEST BOOKS (see also Vol. IV, p. 275). "The Mistakes of a Night, or She Stoops to Conquer," appeared at Covent Garden, in March, 1773. So convinced was George Colman that the public would endure nothing but sentiment, that he could hardly be induced to accept the play, and was extremely nervous about its success, almost until the fall of the curtain on the first night. Nevertheless, its success was immediate and decisive, and it became established as a stock piece. The play loses nothing by the suppression of sentimental passages between Hastings and Miss Neville, without which Colman would certainly have declined it altogether. Apart from the main argument—the wooing of Kate Hardcastle—the plot turns on the points that Tony Lumpkin is the son of Mrs. Hardcastle by her first marriage, and that Constance Neville is her niece and ward, not her husband's.

---

# HEINRICH HEINE [\[E\]](#)

---

# Atta Troll

## *A Summer Night's Dream*

### I

In the valley lies attractive Cauterets. The  
shining houses  
Gay with balconies, and on them  
Stand fair ladies loudly laughing.

Laughing as they look beneath them  
On the brightly swarming market,  
Where are dancing bear and she-bear  
To the droning of the bagpipes.

Atta Troll and his good lady,  
Whom the people call black Mumma,  
Are the dancers; the Biscayans  
Shout aloud in admiration.

Atta Troll, who once paraded  
Like a mighty lord of deserts,  
Free upon the mountain summit,  
Dances in the vale to rabble!

Both the music and the laughter  
Quickly cease, and shrieking loudly,  
From the market fly the people,  
And the ladies they are fainting.

Yes, the slavish chain that bound him

Suddenly hath rent asunder  
Atta Troll. And, wildly springing,  
Up the rocks he nimbly clammers.

In the empty market standing,  
All alone are left black Mumma  
And the keeper. Wild with fury  
On the ground his hat he dashes.

On the wretched poor black Mumma  
Falls this much-enraged one's fury  
Doubly down at last; he beats her,  
Then he calls her Queen Christina.

## II

In the vale of Ronceval  
Not far off from Roland's cleft,  
And by savage fir-trees hidden,  
Lies the cave of Atta Troll.

In the bosom of his family,  
There he rests from all his hardships.  
Tender meeting! All his young ones  
Found he in the well-loved cavern:

Well-licked, lady-like young bears,  
Blonde their hair, like parson's daughters;  
Brown the boys, the youngest only  
With the single ear is black.

Gladly now relates the old one  
What he's in the world experienced,  
Of the overwhelming plaudits  
Reaped by his great skill in dancing.

Overcome by self-laudation,

Now he calls on deeds to witness  
That he is no wretched boaster,  
That he's really great at dancing.

### III

In the caverns with his offspring,  
Sick at heart, upon his back lies  
Atta Troll; in meditation  
Licks his paws, and, licking, growls:

"Mumma, Mumma, pearl of blackness,  
Whom I fished from out life's ocean,  
Is it thus that in life's ocean  
I am forced again to lose thee!

"Might I only once more sniffle  
That sweet odour, the peculiar,  
Of my black, my darling Mumma,  
Fragrant as the scent of roses!

"But, alas! my Mumma pineth  
In the fetters of those rascals,  
Who, the name of Men assuming,  
Call themselves Creation's lords.

"Mankind, are ye any better  
Than we others, just because ye  
Boiled and baked devour your victuals?  
In a raw state we eat ours.

"Children," grumbles Atta Troll,  
"Children, we must seize the future!  
If each bear but thought as I do,  
We should soon subdue the tyrants.

"Let the boar but form alliance

With the horse, the elephant  
Coil his trunk with love fraternal  
Round the valiant bullock's horn;

"Bear and wolf of every colour,  
Goat and monkey; even hares, too,  
Let them work awhile together,  
And the victory cannot fail us.

"Equal rights for all God's creatures,  
Be our fundamental maxim;  
Absolutely no distinction  
In belief, or skin, or smell.

"Strict equality! Ev'ry jackass  
Competent for highest office;  
On the other hand, the lion  
Trotting with the corn to grind."

#### IV

Many an honest, virtuous burgher  
Lives on earth in evil odour,  
Whilst your princely people reek of  
Lavender and ambergris.

Therefore do not make wry faces,  
Gentle reader, if the cave of  
Atta Troll should not remind you  
Of the spices of Arabia.

Tarry with me in the steamy  
Confines in the dismal odour,  
Where the hero to his youngest  
Speaks as if from out a cloud:

"Ever shun men's ways of thinking!

Not a creature that is decent  
Can be found among these creatures.  
Even Germans, once much better,

"In primeval times our cousins,  
These alike are now degen'rate:  
Traitors to their creed and godless,  
Now they preach e'en atheism!

"Only be no atheist,  
Like a non-bear who respects not  
His great Maker—Yes, a Maker  
Hath this universe created.

"Yonder in the starred pavilion,  
On the golden throne of power,  
World-controlling and majestic,  
Sits a giant Polar bear.

"At his feet are sitting gentle  
Sainted bears, who in their life-time  
Uncomplaining suffered; in their  
Paws the palm of martyrdom.

"Shall I ever, drunk with heaven,  
Yonder in the starred pavilion,  
With the Glory, with the palm-branch,  
Dance before the throne of God?"

## V

Figures twain, morose and baleful,  
And on all-fours slowly creeping,  
Break themselves a gloomy passage  
Through the underwood at midnight.

That is Atta Troll, the father,

And his son, young Master One-Ear.  
"This old stone"—growls Atta Troll—  
"Is the altar, where the Druids

"In the days of superstition  
Human sacrifices butchered.  
Oh, the overwhelming horror!  
Shedding blood to honour God!

"Now indeed far more enlightened  
Are these men—they only murder  
Now from selfishness and grasping.  
Each one plunders for himself!

"Nature never yet created  
Owners, no—for void of pockets,  
Not a pocket in our fur coats,  
We were born, the whole of us.

"Only man, that smooth-skinned being,  
Could in borrowed wool, so artful,  
Dress himself, or could, so artful,  
Thus provide himself with pockets.

"Be the mortal foe of all such  
Fierce oppressors, reconcileless,  
To the end of thy existence—  
Swear it, swear it here, my son!"

And the youngest swore as once did  
Hannibal. The moon illumined  
With her yellow light the Blood-stone,  
And the pair of misanthropes.

## VI

I was early one fine morning

With Lascaro setting forward  
On the bear-hunt. And at mid-day  
We arrived at Pont-d'Espagne.

Evening shades were dark'ning round us  
When we reached the wretched hostel,  
Where the Ollea-Podrida  
Steamed up from the dirty soup-dish.

Corresponding to the kitchen  
Was the bed. It swarmed with insects,  
Just as if it had been peppered!—  
Bugs are man's most mortal foe.

What a raving with these poets,  
E'en the tame ones! Why, they never  
Cease to sing and say, that Nature  
Is the Maker's mighty temple.

Well, so be it, charming people!  
But confess that in this temple  
All the stairs are slightly awkward.  
Miserably bad the stairs!

Close beside me strides Lascaro,  
Pale and long, just like a taper;  
Never speaking, never smiling,  
He, the dead son of a witch.

Yes, 'tis said, he is a dead one,  
Long defunct, although his mother,  
Old Uraka, by enchantments  
Keeps him living to appearance.

In the little fishing cottage,  
On the Lac-de-Gobe we met with  
Shelter and some trout for dinner;  
And they tasted quite delicious.

If the stuff I drank was really  
Wine, at this same Lac-de-Gobe,  
I know not. I think in Brunswick  
They would simply call it swipes.

## VII

From the sunny golden background  
Smile the violet mountain peaks,  
On the ridge there clings a village,  
Like a boldly ventured birds'-nest.

Having climbed there, 'twas apparent  
That the old ones wing had taken,  
And behind were tarrying only  
All the young brood, not yet fledged.

Nearly all that day I lingered  
With the children, and we chatted  
Quite familiar. They were curious  
Who I was, what I was doing?

"Germany, dear friends"—so said I—  
"Is the land where I was born;  
Bears live there in any number,  
And I took to hunting bears.

"There I drew the skin for many  
Over very bearish ears;  
And between them I was sometimes  
Roughly by their bear claws handled.

"But with merely unlicked blockheads  
Every day to be contending  
In my well-loved home, at last I  
Found to be too much for me.

"So at last have journeyed hither,  
Seeking out some better sport;  
I intend to try my prowess  
On the mighty Atta Troll."

## VIII

Like a narrow street the valley,  
And its name is Spectre Hollow;  
Rugged crags rise up abruptly  
Either side of giddy heights.

On a dizzy, steep projection,  
Peeping downwards, like a watch-tower,  
Stands Uraka's daring cottage;  
Thither I Lascaro followed.

With his mother he took counsel,  
Using secret signs as language,  
How might Atta Troll be tempted,  
How he might be put to death.

For right well had we his traces  
Followed up. And now no longer  
Dare escape be thought of. Numbered  
Are thy days, O Atta Troll!

What Uraka as her lawful  
Business followed, that was honest;  
For she dealt in mountain simples  
And she also sold stuffed birds.

Full of all these natural wonders  
Was the hut. The smell was dreadful  
Of the henbane, cuckoo-flowers,  
Dandelion and deadmen's fingers.

Vultures, too, a large collection,  
Carefully arranged on all sides,  
With the wings at full extended  
And the most enormous beaks.

Was't the odour of the foolish  
Plants which stupefied my senses?  
Strange sensations crept about me  
At the sight of all these birds.

## IX

Argonauts without a ship,  
Who on foot the mountain traverse,  
And instead of golden fleeces  
Only look to win a bear-skin

Ah, we are but sorry devils!  
Heroes of a modern pattern,  
And there's not a classic poet  
Would in song immortalise us!

And for all that we have suffered  
Mighty hardships! What a shower  
Overtook us on the summit,  
And no tree and no *fiacre*!

Tired to death, and out of humour,  
Like two well-drenched poodles, once more,  
Very late at night, we clambered  
To the witch's hut above.

Shivering, and with teeth a-chatter,  
Near the hearth I stood awhile;  
Then, as though the warmth o'ercame me,  
Sank at last upon the straw.

How the roaring of the chimney  
Terrified me. Like the moaning  
Of poor, wretched, dried-up souls—  
Quite familiar seemed the voices.

Sleep completely overcame me  
In the end, and then in place of  
Waking phantasm, rose before me  
Quite a wholesome, firm-set dream.

And I dreamed the little cottage  
Suddenly became a ballroom.  
Carried up aloft on pillars  
And by chandeliers illumined.

Then invisible musicians  
Struck up from "Robert le Diable"  
That ungodly dance of nuns;  
I was walking all alone there.

But at last the portals open  
Of themselves, and then come marching,  
Measured footsteps, slow and solemn,  
Most extraordinary guests.

Nothing now but bears and spectres,  
Walking upright, every he-bear  
On the arm a ghost conducted,  
Muffled in a long white shroud.

Sometimes in the dance's bustle,  
Tore a bear the burial garment  
Off the head of his companion;  
Lo! a death's-head came to view.

But at last sounds forth a joyous  
Crashing of the horns and cymbals;  
And the kettle-drums they thunder,

And there came the galopade.

This I did not dream the end of—  
For a most ill-mannered bruin  
Trode upon my favourite corn,  
So that, shrieking out, I woke.

## X

In the cavern, with his offspring,  
Atta Troll lies, and he slumbers  
With the snoring of the righteous;  
But at last he wakes up yawning.

"Children!"—sighs he, whilst are trickling  
Tears from those large eyes unbidden—  
"Children! Finished is my earthly  
Pilgrimage, and we must part.

"Just at mid-day whilst I slumbered  
Came a dream, which has its meaning.  
Then my spirit sweetly tasted  
Omens of my coming death.

"On the world and fate reflecting,  
Yawning I had fallen asleep,  
When I dreamed that I was lying  
Underneath a lofty tree.

"From the tree's o'erspreading branches  
Dribbled down transparent honey.  
Joyous blinking, up above me  
Seven little bears I noticed.

"Tender, graceful little creatures,  
Rosy coloured were their fur coats,  
As they clambered; from their shoulders

Just like silk two wings were sprouting.

"And with soft and supernatural  
Flute-like voices they were singing!  
While thus singing, icy coldness  
Crept throughout my skin, and flame-like

"From my skin my soul departed;  
Soared in brightness up to heaven."  
Thus in tender words and falt'ring  
Grunted Atta Troll. His ears then

Pricked themselves and strangely worked,  
And from his repose he started,  
Trembling, and with rapture bellowing,  
"Children, do ye hear those sounds?

"Is it not the voice melodious  
Of your mother? Oh, I know it,  
'Tis the growling of my Mumma!  
Mumma! Yes, my own black Mumma!"

Atta Troll, whilst these words utt'ring,  
Like a madman headlong bounded  
From the cavern to destruction!  
Ah! he rushed upon his doom!

In the vale of Ronceval,  
On the very spot where whilom  
Charlemagne's peerless nephew  
Gasp'd away his fleeting spirit,

There fell also Atta Troll,  
Fell through treason, like the other,  
Whom the traitor, knighthood's Judas,  
Ganelon of Mainz, betrayed.

## XI

Four gigantic men in triumph  
Brought along the slaughtered Bear.  
Upright sat he in an armchair,  
Like a patient at the hot-wells.

That same day soon after skinning  
Atta Troll, they up to auction  
Put the skin. For just a hundred  
Francs a furrier purchased it.

Elegantly then he trimmed it,  
And he edged it round with scarlet,  
And again he sold it quickly  
Just for double what it cost.

So, at last, third hand possessed it—  
Julietta, and at Paris  
It reposes in her chamber,  
Serving as a bed-side carpet.

What of Mumma? Ah, the Mumma  
Is a poor weak woman! Frailty  
Is her name! Alas, the women  
Are as so much porcelain frail.

When the hand of Fate had parted  
Mumma from her noble husband,  
Neither did she die of sorrow,  
Nor succumb to melancholy.

And at last a fixed appointment,  
And for life a safe provision,  
Far away she found at Paris  
In the famed Jardin des Plantes.

Sunday last as I was walking

In the gardens with Julietta,  
By the railing round the bear-pit—  
Gracious Heavens! What saw we there!

'Twas a powerful desert bear  
From Siberia, snow-white coated,  
Playing there an over-tender,  
Amorous game with some black she-bear.

And, by Jupiter! 'twas Mumma!  
'Twas the wife of Atta Troll!  
I remember her distinctly  
By the moist eye's tender glances.

## XII

Where in heaven, Master Louis,  
Have you all this crazy nonsense  
Scraped together? Such the question  
Of the Cardinal of Este,  
After having read the poem  
Of Rolando's frenzied doings,  
Which Ariosto with submission  
To his Eminence dedicated.

Yes, Varnhagen, worthy friend,  
Yes, I see the same words nearly  
On thy lips this moment hanging  
With the same sarcastic smile.

"Sounds this not like youthful visions,  
Which I once dreamt with Chamisso  
And Brentano and Fouqué,  
On those deep-blue moonlight evenings?"

Yes, my friend, it is the echo  
Of those long-forgotten dream-days;

Only that a modern trilling  
Mingles with the ancient cadence.

Other seasons, other songsters!  
Other songsters, other ditties!  
What a cackling, as of geese, which  
Once preserved the Capitol!

Other seasons, other songsters!  
Other songsters, other ditties!  
I might take a pleasure also  
In them had I other ears!

## FOOTNOTES:

[E] Heinrich Heine was born on December 13, 1797, at Düsseldorf, the son of Jewish parents. After quitting school he was sent to Frankfort to the banking establishment of an uncle, but a commercial career failed to appeal to him, and in 1819 he entered the University of Bonn, with a view of studying for law. His thoughts, however, were given to poetry; and 1822 saw the publication of his first volume of poems. Up to this time he was largely dependent upon the generosity of his uncle. Thus, in order to fulfil his obligations, he entered the University of Göttingen, where he obtained his degree of law, having previously qualified himself for practice by renouncing the Jewish faith for Christianity. A voluminous prose-writer, a wonderful satirist, and an ardent politician, Heine's present-day fame rests largely on his poetry, and especially the wonderful lyrical pieces. "Atta Troll" (1846), which has been described as the "Swan-song of Romanticism," was written in the hey-day of his activities, and admirably conveys something of the temper and genius of its many-sided author. Heine died on February 17. 1856.

---

**HOMER**<sup>[F]</sup>

---

# The Iliad

## *I.—Of the Wrath of Achilles; and of Hector*

Achilles' baneful wrath resound, O goddess, that  
    impos'd  
Infinite sorrows on the Greeks, and many brave souls  
    loos'd.  
From breasts heroic; sent them far to that invisible  
    cave  
That no light comforts; and their limbs to dogs and  
    vultures gave;  
To all which Jove's will gave effect; from whom strife  
    first begun  
Betwixt Atrides, king of men, and Thetis' god-like son.

To appease Phoebus, Agamemnon restored the captive daughter of the sun-god's priest, allotted to him for spoil; but took Briseis from Achilles to replace her. Achilles vowed to render no more aid to the Greeks, telling his mother, the sea-nymph Thetis, what had befallen, calling on Jove to aid his vengeance.

So Peleus' son, swift-foot Achilles, at his swift ship  
    sate,  
Burning in wrath, nor ever came to councils of estate  
That make men honour'd, never trod the fierce  
    embattled field,  
But kept close, and his lov'd heart pined, what fight  
    and cries could yield,  
Thirsting at all parts to the host.

To satisfy Thetis, Jupiter sent a false dream to Agamemnon, the king of men, persuading him that Troy should now fall to his attack. Beguiled by the dream, Agamemnon set forth in battle array the whole Greek host, save that Achilles and his followers were absent. And the whole host of Troy came forth to meet them. Then Menelaus challenged Paris to single combat; for the twain were the cause of the war, seeing that Paris had stolen away Helen, the wife of Menelaus. Truce was struck

while the combat should take place. Paris hurled his javelin, but did not pierce his foe's shield; Menelaus, having called on Jove,

Shook and threw his lance; which struck through  
Paris' shield,  
And with the strength he gave to it, it made the cures  
yield,  
His coat of mail, his breast; yet he prevented sable  
death.  
This taint he followed with his sword, drawn from a  
silver sheath,  
Which lifting high, he struck his helm full where the  
plume did stand,  
On which it piecemeal brake, and fell from his  
unhappy hand ...  
"Lo, now my lance hath missed his end, my sword in  
shivers flew,  
And he 'scapes all." With this again he rushed upon his  
guest,  
And caught him by the horse-hair plume that dangled  
on his crest,  
With thought to drag him to the Greeks; which he had  
surely done,  
And so, besides the victory, had wondrous glory won.  
But Cyprian Venus brake the string; and so the victor's  
palm  
Was, for so full a man at arms, only an empty helm.  
That then he swung about his head, and cast among  
his friends,  
Who scrambled and took it up with shouts. Again then  
he intends  
To force the life-blood of his foe, and ran on him  
amain,  
With shaken jav'lin; when the queen that lovers love,  
again  
Attended and now ravish'd him from that encounter  
quite,

With ease, and wondrous suddenly; for she, a goddess,  
might.  
She hid him in a cloud of gold, and never made him  
known  
Till in his chamber fresh and sweet she gently set him  
down.

Thereupon the truce was treacherously broken by Pandarus, who, incited by Minerva, wounded Menelaus with an arrow; and the armies closed with each other. Great deeds were done by Diomedes on the Greek side. But Hector had gone back to Troy to rouse Paris; on the walls his wife Andromache saw him.

She ran to Hector, and with her, tender of heart and  
hand,  
Her son borne in his nurse's arms; when, like a  
heavenly sign  
Compact of many golden stars, the princely child did  
shine.  
Hector, though grief bereft his speech, yet smiled upon  
his joy.  
Andromache cried out, mix'd hands, and to the  
strength of Troy  
Thus wept forth her affection: "O noblest in desire!  
Thy mind inflamed with other's good will set thyself  
on fire.

Nor pitiest thou my son, nor wife, that must thy  
widow be  
If now thou issue; all the field will only run on thee."  
"Nay," answered he; "but in this fire must Hector's  
trial shine;  
Here must his country, father, friends, be made in him  
divine.  
Yet such a stormy day shall come (in mind and soul I  
know),  
When sacred Troy shall shed her towers for tears of  
overthrow;  
When Priam, all his birth and power, shall in those  
tears be drown'd.

But neither Troy's posterity so much my soul doth  
wound,  
Priam nor Hecuba herself, nor all my brother's woes,  
(Who, though so many, and so good must all be food  
for foes),  
As thy sad state; when some rude Greek shall lead  
thee weeping hence,  
These free days clouded, and a night of captive  
violence  
Loading thy temples, out of which thine eyes must  
never see,  
But spin the Greek wives webs of task, and their fetch-  
water be."  
This said, he reached to take his son; who of his arms  
afraid,  
And then the horse-hair plume, with which he was so  
overlaid,  
Nodded so horribly, he cling'd back to his nurse and  
cried.  
Laughter affected his great sire, who doff'd and laid  
aside  
His fearful helm, that on the earth cast round about its  
light;  
Then took and kiss'd his loving son. "Afflict me not,  
dear wife,  
  
With these vain griefs. He doth not live that can  
disjoin my life  
And this firm bosom, but my fate; and fate whose  
wings can fly?  
Noble, ignoble, fate controls. Once born, the best must  
die."

## **II.—*Of the Battle by the Ships***

After this, Hector fought with Ajax, and neither had the better. And after that the Greeks set a rampart and a ditch about their ships. Also, Agamemnon would have

bidden the Greeks depart altogether, but Diomedes withstood him. And in the fighting that followed, Agamemnon showed himself the best man among the Greeks, seeing that neither Achilles nor Diomedes joined the fray; and the Trojans had the better, driving the Greeks back to the rampart, and bursting through, so that they were like to have burnt the Greek ships where they lay, led on by Hector. To and fro swayed the tide of battle; for while Jove slept, Neptune and Juno gave force and courage to the Greeks, and the Trojans were borne back; Hector being sore hurt with a stone cast by Ajax. But Jove, awaking, restored Hector's strength, sending Apollo to him. Then Apollo and Hector led

The Trojan forces. The Greeks stood. A fervent  
clamour spread  
The air on both sides as they joined. Out flew the  
shafts and darts,  
Some falling short, but other some found butts in  
breasts and hearts.  
As long as Phoebus held but out his horrid shield, so  
long  
The darts flew raging either way, and death grew both  
ways strong.  
But when the Greeks had seen his face, and who it  
was that shook  
The bristled targe, known by his voice, then all their  
strength forsook  
Their nerves and minds. And then look how a goodly  
herd of neat,  
Or wealthy flock of sheep, being close, and dreadless  
at their meat,  
  
In some black midnight, suddenly, and not a keeper  
near,  
A brace of horrid bears rush in, and then fly here and  
there.  
The poor affrighted flocks or herds, so every way  
dispersed  
The heartless Grecians, so the Sun their headlong  
chase reversed  
To headlong flight, and that day rais'd with all grace  
Hector's head.

... When Hector saw his sister's son lie slaughtered in  
the sand,  
He called to all his friends, and prayed they would not  
in that strait  
Forsake his nephew, but maintain about his corse the  
fight,  
And save it from the spoil of Greece.

The archery of Teucer, brother of Ajax, was dealing destruction among the Trojans,  
when Jove broke the bow-string; and thereafter the god stirred

With such addition of his spirit the spirit Hector bore  
To burn the fleet, that of itself was hot enough before.  
But now he fared like Mars himself, so brandishing  
his lance  
As through the deep shades of a wood a raging fire  
should glance,  
Held up to all eyes by a hill; about his lips a foam  
Stood, as when th' ocean is enraged; his eyes were  
overcome  
With fervour, and resembled flames, set off by his  
dark brows,  
And from his temples his bright helm abhorred  
lightnings throws.  
He, girt in fire borne for the fleet, still rushed at every  
troop,  
And fell upon it like a wave, high raised, that then  
doth stoop  
Out from the clouds, grows as it stoops with storms,  
then down doth come  
And cuff a ship, when all her sides are hid in brackish  
foam,  
Strong gales still raging in her sails, her sailors' minds  
dismay'd,  
Death being but little from their lives; so Jovelike  
Hector fray'd  
And plied the Greeks, who knew not what would  
chance, for all their guards.

And as the baneful king of beasts, leapt in to oxen  
herds  
Fed in the meadows of a fen exceeding great, the  
beasts  
In number infinite, 'mongst whom (their herdsmen  
wanting breasts  
To fight with lions for the price of a black ox's life)  
He here and there jumps first and last, in his  
bloodthirsty strife;  
Chased and assaulted, and at length down in the midst  
goes one,  
And all the rest 'sperst through the fen; so now all  
Greece was gone.

On the Grecian side Ajax

Stalked here and there, and in his hand a huge great  
bead-hook held,  
Twelve cubits long, and full of iron. And then again  
there grew  
A bitter conflict at the fleet. You would have said none  
drew  
A weary breath, nor ever did, they laid so freshly on.

It seemed that even Ajax would be overborne. But Patroclus, the loved friend of Achilles, saw this destruction coming upon the Greeks, and he earnestly besought Achilles, if he would not be moved to sally forth to the rescue himself, to suffer him to go out against the Trojans, bearing the arms of Achilles and leading his Myrmidons into the fray. Which leave Achilles granted him.

### ***III.—Of Patroclus, and the Rousing of Achilles***

Bearing the armour of Achilles, save the spear which none other could wield, Patroclus sped forth, leading the Myrmidons.

And when ye see upon a mountain bred  
A den of wolves about whose hearts unmeasured  
strengths are fed,

New come from currie of a stag, their jaws all blood-  
besmeared,  
And when from some black-water fount they all  
together herd,  
There having plentifully lapped with thin and thrust-  
out tongues  
The top and clearest of the spring, go, belching from  
their lungs  
The clotted gore, look dreadfully, and entertain no  
dread,  
Their bellies gaunt, all taken up with being so rawly  
fed;  
Then say that such in strength and look, were great  
Achilles' men  
Now ordered for the dreadful fight.

The Trojans, taking Patroclus for Achilles, were now driven before him and the other Grecian chiefs. Patroclus slew Sarpedon, king of Lycia, and the fight raged furiously about the corse. The Trojans fled, Patroclus pursued. At last Phoebus Apollo smote his armour from him; Euphorbus thrust him through from behind, and Hector slew him. Ajax and Menelaus came to rescue Patroclus' body; Hector fled, but had already stripped off the armour of Achilles, which he now put on in place of his own. Again the battle waxed furious about the dead Patroclus until Menelaus and Meriones bore the corpse while the two Ajaces stood guard.

Now, when the ill news was brought to Achilles, he fell into a great passion of grief; which lamentation Thetis, his mother, heard from the sea-deeps; and came to him, bidding him not go forth to the war till she had brought him new armour from Vulcan. Nevertheless, at the bidding of Iris, he arose:

And forth the wall he stepped and stood, and sent  
abroad his voice;  
Which Pallas far-off echoed, who did betwixt them  
noise  
Shrill tumult to a topless height. His brazen voice once  
heard,  
The minds of all were startled, so they yielded. Thrice  
he spake,  
And thrice, in heat of all the charge, the Trojans  
started back.

In this wise was the dead Patroclus brought back to Achilles. But Thetis went to Vulcan and besought him, and he wrought new armour for Achilles—a shield most marvellous, and a cuirass and helmet—which she bore to her son. And the wrath of Achilles against Agamemnon was assuaged; and they two were reconciled at a gathering of the chiefs. And when by the counsel of Ulysses they had all well broken their fast, the Greeks went forth to the battle, Achilles leading. Now, in this contest, by Jove's decree, all the Olympian gods were suffered to take part.

And thus the bless'd gods both sides urged; they all  
stood in the midst  
And brake contention to their hosts. And over all their  
heads  
The gods' king in abhorred claps his thunder rattled  
out.  
Beneath them, Neptune tossed the earth; the  
mountains round about  
Bowed with affright and shook their heads, Jove's hill  
the earthquake felt,  
Steep Ida trembling at her roots, and all her fountains  
spilt,  
With crannied brows; the infernal king, that all things  
frays, was fray'd  
When this black battle of the gods was joining. Thus  
array'd  
'Gainst Neptune Phoebus with winged shafts, 'gainst  
Mars the blue-eyed maid,  
'Gainst Juno Phoebe, whose white hands bore stinging  
darts of gold,  
Her side armed with a sheaf of shafts, and (by the  
birth two-fold  
Of bright Latona) sister-twin to him that shoots so far.  
Against Latona, Hermes stood, grave guard in peace  
and war  
Of human beings. Against the god whose empire is on  
fire,  
The wat'ry godhead, that great flood, to show whose  
pow'r entire  
In spoil as th' other, all his streams on lurking  
whirlpits trod,

Xanthus by gods, by men Scamander called. Thus god  
    'gainst god  
Entered the field.

#### *IV.—Of Achilles and Hector*

Now Achilles fell upon the Trojan host, slaying one after another of their mighty men; but Æneas and Hector the gods shielded from him. Twelve he took captive, to sacrifice at the funeral of Patroclus. And he would have stormed into Troy itself but that Phoebus deceived him, and all the Trojans fled within the walls save Hector. But when he saw Achilles coming, cold fear shook Hector from his stand.

No more stay now, all posts we've left, he fled in fear  
    the hand  
Of that Fear-Master, who, hawk-like, air's swiftest  
    passenger,  
That holds a timorous dove in chase, and with  
    command doth bear  
His fiery onset, the dove hastes, the hawk comes  
    whizzing on.  
This way and that he turns and winds and cuffs the  
    pigeon:  
So urged Achilles Hector's flight.

They ran thrice about the walls, until Hector, beguiled by Athene in the form of his brother Deiphobus, stayed to fight Achilles. Having cast his lance in vain,

Then forth his sword flew, sharp and broad, and bore a  
    deadly weight,  
With which he rushed in. And look how an eagle from  
    her height  
Stoops to the rapture of a lamb, or cuffs a timorous  
    hare;  
So fell in Hector; and at him Achilles.

Achilles smote Hector through with his javelin, and thus death closed his eyes. Then, in his wrath for the death of Patroclus, Achilles bound the dead Hector by his feet to his chariot,

And scourged on his horse that freely flew;  
A whirlwind made of startled dust drave with them as  
they drew,  
With which were all his black-brown curls knotted in  
heaps and fill'd.

Which piteous sight was seen from the walls by Priam and Hecuba; but Andromache  
did not know that Hector had stayed without, until the clamour flew

Up to her turret; then she shook; her work fell from  
her hand,  
And up she started, called her maids; she needs must  
understand  
That ominous outcry. "Come," said she; then fury-like  
she went,  
Two women, as she willed, at hand, and made her  
quick ascent  
Up to the tower and press of men, her spirit in uproar.  
Round  
She cast her greedy eye, and saw her Hector slain, and  
bound  
T'Achilles' chariot, manlessly dragged to the Grecian  
fleet.  
Black night struck through her, under her trance took  
away her feet.

Thus all Troy mourned; but Achilles dragged the slain Hector to the slain Patroclus,  
and did despite to his body in his wrath; and made ready to hold high obsequies for  
his friend. And on the morrow

They raised a huge pile, and to arms went every  
Myrmidon,  
Charged by Achilles; chariots and horse were  
harnessed,  
Fighters and charioteers got up, and they the sad  
march led,  
A cloud of infinite foot behind. In midst of all was  
borne  
Patroclus' person by his peers.

Fit feastings were held, and games with rich prizes, racings and wrestlings, wherein the might of Ajax could not overcome the skill of Ulysses, nor his skill the might of Ajax. Then Thetis by the will of the gods bade Achilles cease from his wrath against Hector; and suffer the Trojans to redeem his body for a ransom. And Iris came to Priam where the old king sate: the princesses his seed, the princesses his sons' fair wives, all mourning by. She bade him offer ransom to Achilles; and then, guided by Hermes, Priam came to the tent of Achilles, bearing rich gifts, and he kneeled before him, clasping his knees, and besought him, saying:

"Pity an old man like thy sire, different in only this,  
That I am wretcheder, and bear that weight of miseries  
That never man did, my cursed lips enforced to kiss  
that hand  
That slew my children." At his feet he laid his  
reverend head.  
Achilles' thoughts now with his sire, now with his  
friend were fed.

Moved by compassion, and by the message which Thetis had brought him, Achilles accepted the ransom, and suffered Priam to bear away the body, granting a twelve days' truce. And Troy mourned for him, Andromache lamenting and Hecuba, his mother. And on this wise spake Helen herself.

"O Hector, all my brothers more were not so loved of  
me  
As thy most virtues. Not my lord I held so dear as  
thee,  
That brought me hither; before which I would I had  
been brought  
To ruin; for what breeds that wish, which is the  
mischief wrought  
By my access, yet never found one harsh taunt, one  
word's ill  
From thy sweet carriage. Twenty years do now their  
circles fill  
Since my arrival; all which time thou didst not only  
bear  
Thyself without check, but all else that my lord's  
brothers were.  
Their sisters' lords, sisters themselves, the queen, my  
mother-in-law

(The king being never but most mild) when thy man's  
spirit saw  
Sour and reproachful, it would still reprove their  
bitterness  
With sweet words and thy gentle soul."

So the body of Hector was laid upon the fire, and was burnt; and his ashes were gathered into an urn of gold and laid in a grave.

## FOOTNOTES:

[E] Of the personality of Homer, the maker of the "Iliad" and the "Odyssey," those great epic poems which were the common heritage of all Greeks, we have no knowledge. Tradition pictures him as blind and old. Seven cities claimed to be his birthplace. Probably he lived in the ninth century B.C., since the particular stages of social life which he portrays probably belong to that era. Beyond this, all is conjecture. The poems were not written down till a later date, when their authorship was already a matter of tradition; and when what we may call the canon of the text of the epics was laid down in the sixth century B.C., it may be readily supposed that they were not in the exact form which the master-poet himself had given them. Hence the ingenuity of the modern commentator has endeavoured to resolve Homer into an indefinite number of ballad-mongers, whose ballads were edited into their existing unity. On the whole, this view may be called Teutonic. Of the "Iliad," it suffices to say that it relates events immediately preceding the fall of Troy, at the close of the tenth year of the siege undertaken by the Greeks on account of the abduction of Helen from Menelaus by Paris. Of Chapman's translation we shall speak in the introduction to the "Odyssey."

---

# The Odyssey<sup>[G]</sup>

## *I.—How Ulysses Came to Phæacia, and of Nausicaa*

Years had passed since the fall of Troy, yet alone Ulysses came not to his home in Ithaca. Therefore many suitors came to woo his wife Penelope, devouring his substance with riotous living, sorely grieving her heart, and that of her young son, Telemachus. But Ulysses the nymph Calypso had held for seven years an unwilling guest in the island of Ogygia. And now the gods were minded to bring home the man—

That wandered wondrous far, when he the town  
Of sacred Troy had sacked and shivered down;  
The cities of a world of nations  
With all their manners, minds, and fashions  
He was and knew; at sea felt many woes,  
Much care sustained to save from overthrows  
Himself and friends in their retreat for home;  
But so their fates he could not overcome.

Then came Pallas Athene to Telemachus, and bade him take ship that he might get tidings of his sire. And he spake words of reproach to the company of suitors. To whom

Antinous only in this sort replied:  
"High-spoken, and of spirit unpacified,  
How have you shamed us in this speech of yours!  
Will you brand us for an offence not ours?  
Your mother, first in craft, is first in cause.  
Three years are past, and near the fourth now draws,  
Since first she mocked the peers Achaian;  
All she made hope, and promised every man."

The suitors suffered Telemachus to depart, though they repented after; and he came with Athene, in disguise of Mentor, to Nestor at Pylos, and thence to Menelaus at Sparta, who told him how he had laid hold on Proteus, the seer, and learnt from him first of the slaying of his own brother Agamemnon; and, secondly, concerning Ulysses,

Laertes' son; whom I beheld  
In nymph Calypso's palace, who compell'd  
His stay with her, and since he could not see  
His country earth, he mourned incessantly.

Laden with rich gifts, Telemachus set out on his return home, while the suitors sought to way-lay him. And, meantime. Calypso, warned by Hermes, let Ulysses depart from Ogygia on a raft. Which, being overwhelmed by storms, he yet made shore on the isle of Phæacia; where, finding shelter, he fell asleep. But Pallas visited the Princess Nausicaa in a dream.

Straight rose the lovely morn, that up did raise  
Fair-veiled Nausicaa, whose dream her praise  
To admiration took.

She went with her maidens, with raiment for cleansing, to the river, where, having washed the garments,

They bathed themselves, and all with glittering oil  
Smoothed their white skins, refreshing then their toil  
With pleasant dinner. Then Nausicaa,  
With other virgins did at stool-ball play,  
Their shoulder-reaching head-tires laying by.  
Nausicaa, with wrists of ivory,  
The liking stroke struck, singing first a song,  
As custom ordered, and, amidst the throng,  
Nausicaa, whom never husband tamed,  
Above them all in all the beauties flamed.  
The queen now for the upstroke, struck the ball  
Quite wide off th' other maids, and made it fall  
Amidst the whirlpools. At which, out-shrieked all,  
And with the shriek did wise Ulysses wake;  
Who, hearing maidish voices, from the brake  
Put hasty head out; and his sight did press  
The eyes of soft-haired virgins ... Horrid was  
His rough appearance to them; the hard pass  
He had at sea stuck by him. All in flight  
The virgins scattered, frightened with this sight.  
All but Nausicaa fled; but she stood fast;

Pallas had put a boldness in her breast,  
And in her fair limbs tender fear compress'd.  
And still she stood him, as resolved to know  
What man he was, or out of what should grow  
His strange repair to them. Then thus spake he;  
"Let me beseech, O queen, this truth of thee,  
Are you of mortal or the deified race?  
If of the gods that th' ample heavens embrace,  
I can resemble you to none alive  
So near as Cynthia, chaste-born birth of Jove.  
If sprung of humans that inhabit earth,  
Thrice blest are both the authors of your birth;  
But most blest he that hath the gift to engage  
Your bright neck in the yoke of marriage."

He prayed her then for some garment, and that she would show him the town. Then she, calling her maidens, they brought for him food and oil and raiment, and went apart while he should cleanse and array himself.

And Pallas wrought in him a grace full great  
From head to shoulders, and as sure did seat  
His goodly presence. As he sat apart,  
Nausicaa's eyes struck wonder through her heart;  
He showed to her till now not worth the note;  
But now he seemed as he had godhead got.

Then, fearing the gossip of the market-place, she bade him follow afoot with her maidens, giving him directions how he should find her father's palace, which entering,

"Address suit to my mother, that her mean  
May make the day of your redition seen.  
For if she once be won to wish you well,  
Your hope may instantly your passport seal,  
And thenceforth sure abide to see your friends,  
Fair house, and all to which your heart contends."

Nausicaa and her maidens went forward, Ulysses following after a time; whom Pallas met, and told him of the King Alcinous and the Queen Arete. Then he, being wrapped in a cloud which she had set about him, entered unmarked; and, the cloud

vanishing, embraced the knees of Arete in supplication, as one distressed by many labours. And they all received him graciously. Now, as they sat at meat, a bard sang of the fall of Troy; and Alcinous, the king, marked how Ulysses wept at the tale; and then Ulysses told them who he was, and of his adventures, on this wise.

## *II.—Ulysses Tells of his Wanderings*

After many wanderings, we came to the isle of the Cyclops, and I, with twelve of my men, to his cave. He coming home bespake us.

"Ho! guests! What are ye? Whence sail ye these seas?  
Traffic or rove ye, and, like thieves, oppress  
Poor strange adventurers, exposing so  
Your souls to danger, and your lives to woe?"  
"Reverence the gods, thou greatest of all that live,  
We suppliants are." "O thou fool," answered he,  
"To come so far, and to importune me  
With any god's fear or observed love!  
We Cyclops care not for your goat-fed Jove  
Nor other blest ones; we are better far.  
To Jove himself dare I bid open war."  
The Cyclop devoured two sailors, and slept. I slew  
    him not sleeping—  
For there we all had perished, since it past  
Our powers to lift aside a log so vast  
As barred all our escape.

At morn, he drove forth the flocks, but barred the entry again, having devoured two more of my comrades. But we made ready a great stake for thrusting out his one eye. And when he came home at night, driving in all his sheep,

Two of my soldiers more  
At once he snatched up, and to supper went.  
Then dared I words to him, and did present  
A bowl of wine with these words: "Cyclop! take  
A bowl of wine." "Thy name, that I may make  
A hospitable gift; for this rich wine  
Fell from the river, that is more divine,  
Of nectar and ambrosia." "Cyclop, see,

My name is No-Man." Cruel answered he.  
"No-Man! I'll eat thee last of all thy friends."

He slept; we took the spar, made keen before,  
And plunged it in his eye. Then did he roar  
In claps like thunder.

Other Cyclops gathered, to inquire who had harmed him; but he—

"by craft, not might,  
No-Man hath given me death." They then said right,  
"If no man hurt thee, and thyself alone,  
That which is done to thee by Jove is done."  
Then groaning up and down, he groping tried  
To find the stone, which found, he put aside,  
But in the door sat, feeling if he could,  
As the sheep issued, on some man lay hold.

But we, ranging the sheep three abreast, were borne out under their bellies, and drove them in haste down to our ship; and having put out, I cried aloud:

"Cyclop! if any ask thee who imposed  
Th' unsightly blemish that thine eye enclosed,  
Say that Ulysses, old Laertes' son,  
Whose seat is Ithaca, who hath won  
Surname of city-razer, bored it out."  
At this he brayed so loud that round about  
He drove affrighted echoes through the air  
In burning fury; and the top he tare  
From off a huge rock, and so right a throw  
Made at our ship that just before the prow  
It overflowed and fell, missed mast and all  
Exceeding little; but about the fall  
So fierce a wave it raised that back it bore  
Our ship, so far it almost touched the shore.

So we escaped; but the Cyclop stirred up against us the wrath of his father Neptune. Thereafter we came to the caves of Æolus, lord of the winds, and then to the land of the giants called Laestrygones, whence there escaped but one ship of all our company.

Then to the isle of Ææa we attained,  
Where fair-haired, dreadful, eloquent Circe reigned.

Then I sent a company, led by Eurylochus, to search  
the land.

These in a dale did Circe's house descry;  
Before her gates hill-wolves and lions lie;  
Which, with her virtuous drugs, so tame she made  
That wolf nor lion would no man invade  
With any violence, but all arose,  
Their huge, long tails wagged, and in fawns would  
close,  
As loving dogs. Amaz'd they stay'd at gate,  
And heard within the goddess elevate  
A voice divine, as at her web she wrought,  
Subtle and glorious and past earthly thought.

She called them in, but Eurylochus, abiding without, saw her feast them, and then turn them with her wand into swine. From him hearing these things I hastened thither. But Hermes met me, and gave me of the herb Moly, to be a protection against her spells, and wise counsel withal. So when she had feasted me she touched me with her wand.

I drew my sword, and charged her, as I meant  
To take her life. When out she cried, and bent  
Beneath my sword her knees, embracing mine,  
And full of tears, said, "Who, of what high line  
Art thou? Deep-souled Ulysses must thou be."  
Then I, "O Circe, I indeed am he.  
Dissolve the charms my friends' forced forms enchain,  
And show me here those honoured friends like men."

Now she restored them, and knowing the will of the gods, made good cheer for us all, so that we abode with her for one year. Nor might we depart thence till I had made journey to the abode of Hades to get speech of Tiresias the Seer. Whereby I saw made shades of famous folk, past recounting. Thence returning, Circe suffered us to be gone; with warning of perils before us, and of how we should avoid them.

First to the Sirens. Whoso hears the call  
Of any Siren, he will so despise

Both wife and children, for their sorceries,  
That never home turns his affection's stream,  
Nor they take joy in him nor he in them.  
Next monstrous Scylla. Six long necks look out  
Of her rank shoulders; every neck doth let  
A ghastly head out; every head, three set,  
Thick thrust together, of abhorred teeth,  
And every tooth stuck with a sable death;  
Charybdis, too, whose horrid throat did draw  
The brackish sea up. These we saw

And escaped only in part. Then came they to the island where are fed the Oxen of the Sun; and because his comrades would slay them, destruction came upon them, and Ulysses alone came alive to the isle of Calypso.

### *III.—How Ulysses Came Back to Ithaca*

Now, when Ulysses had made an end, it pleased Alcinous and all the Phæacians that they should speed him home with many rich gifts. So they set him in a ship, and bore him to Ithaca, and laid him on the shore, yet sleeping, with all the goodly gifts about him, and departed. But he, waking, wist not where he was till Pallas came to him. Who counselled him how he should deal with the Wooers, and disguised him as a man ancient and worn.

Then Ulysses sought and found the faithful swine-herd Eumæus, who made him welcome, not knowing who he was, and told him of the ill-doing of the suitors. But Pallas went and brought back Telemachus from Sparata, evading the Wooers' ambush.

Out rushed amazed Eumæus, and let go  
The cup to earth, that he had laboured so,  
Cleansed for the neat wine, did the prince surprise,  
Kissed his fair forehead, both his lovely eyes,  
And wept for joy. Then entering, from his seat  
His father rose to him; who would not let  
The old man remove, but drew him back, and prest  
With earnest terms his sitting, saying, "Guest,  
Take here your seat again."

Eumæus departing, Pallas restored Ulysses to his own likeness, and he made himself known to Telemachus, and instructed him.

"Go them for home, and troop up with the Wooers,  
Thy will with theirs joined, power with their rude  
powers;  
And after shall the herdsmen guide to town  
My steps, my person wholly overgrown  
With all appearance of a poor old swain,  
Heavy and wretched. If their high disdain  
Of my vile presence made them my desert  
Affect with contumelies, let thy loved heart  
Beat in fixed confines of thy bosom still,  
And see me suffer, patient of their ill.  
But when I give the sign, all th' arms that are  
Aloft thy roof in some near room prepare—  
Two swords, two darts, two shields, left for us twain.  
But let none know Ulysses near again."  
But when air's rosy birth, the morn, arose,  
Telemachus did for the turn dispose  
His early steps; went on with spritely pace,  
And to the Wooers studied little grace ...  
And now the king and herdsman from the field  
Drew nigh the town; when in the yard there lay  
A dog called Argus, which, before his way  
Assumed for Ilion, Ulysses bred,  
Yet stood his pleasure then in little stead,  
As being too young, but, growing to his grace,  
Young men made choice of him for every chase,  
Or of their wild goats, of their hares, or harts;  
But, his king gone, and he, now past his parts,  
Lay all abjectly on the stable's store  
Before the ox-stall, and mules' stable-door,  
To keep the clothes cast from the peasants' hands  
While they laid compass on Ulysses' lands,  
The dog, with ticks (unlook'd to) overgrown.  
But by this dog no sooner seen but known  
Was wise Ulysses; who now enter'd there.  
Up went his dog's laid ears, coming near,  
Up he himself rose, fawned, and wagged his stern,

Couch'd close his ears, and lay so; nor discern  
Could ever more his dear-loved lord again.  
Ulysses saw it, nor had power t'abstain  
From shedding tears; but (far-off seeing his swain)  
His grief dissembled.... Then they entered in  
And left poor Argus dead; his lord's first sight  
Since that time twenty years bereft his sight.

Telemachus welcomed the wayworn suppliant; the feasting Wooers, too, sent him portions of meat, save Antinous, who

Rapt up a stool, with which he smit  
The king's right shoulder, 'twixt his neck and it.  
He stood him like a rock. Antinous' dart  
Stirred not Ulysses, who in his great heart  
Deep ills projected.

The very Wooers were wroth. Which clamour Penelope hearing, she sent for Eumæus, and bade him summon the stranger to her; but he would not come till evening, by reason of the suitors, from whom he had discourteous treatment.

Now Ulysses coming to Penelope, did not discover himself, but told her made-up tales of his doings; as, how he had seen Ulysses, and of a robe he had worn which Penelope knew for one she had given him; so that she gave credence to his words. Then she bade call the ancient nurse Euryclea, that she might wash the stranger's feet. But by a scar he came to be discovered by the aged dame. Her he charged with silence and to let no ear in all the court more know his being there. As for Penelope, she told him of her intent to promise herself to the man who could wield Ulysses' bow, knowing well that none had the strength and skill.

#### *IV.—Of the Doom of the Suitors*

On the morrow came Penelope to the Wooers, bearing the bow of her lord.

Her maids on both sides stood; and thus she spake:  
"Hear me, ye Wooers, that a pleasure take  
To do me sorrow, and my house invade  
To eat and drink, as if 'twere only made  
To serve your rapines, striving who shall frame  
Me for his wife. And since 'tis made a game,  
I here propose divine Ulysses' bow

For that great master-piece, to which ye row.  
He that can draw it with least show to strive,  
And through these twelve axe-heads an arrow drive,  
Him will I follow, and this house forego."  
Whereat the herd Eumæus wept for woe.

Then Telemachus set up the axe-heads, and himself made vain essay, the more to tempt the Wooers. And while they after him strove all vainly, Ulysses went out and bespake Eumæus and another herd, Philoetius.

"I am your lord; through many a sufferance tried  
Arrived now here, whom twenty years have held  
Forth from my home. Of all the company  
Now serving here besides, not one but you  
Mine ear hath witnessed willing to bestow  
Their wishes of my life, so long held dead.  
The curious Wooers will by no means give  
The offer of the bow and arrow leave  
To come at me; spite then their pride, do thou,  
My good Eumæus, bring both shaft and bow  
To my hands' proof; and charge the maids before  
That instantly they shut the door.  
Do thou, Philoetius, keep their closure fast."

Then Ulysses claiming to make trial of the bow, the Wooers would have denied him; but Penelope would not; whereas Telemachus made a vow that it was for himself and none other to decide, and the guest should make trial. But he, handling it while they mocked, with ease

Drew the bow round. Then twanged he up the string,  
That as a swallow in the air doth sing,  
So sharp the string sung when he gave it touch,  
Once having bent and drawn it. Which so much  
Amazed the Wooers, that their colours went  
And came most grievously. And then Jove rent  
The air with thunder; which at heart did cheer  
The now-enough-sustaining traveller.

Then through the axes at the first hole flew  
The steel-charged arrow. Straightway to him drew

His son in complete arms....

"Now for us

There rests another mark more hard to hit,  
And such as never man before hath smit;  
Whose full point likewise my hands shall assay,  
And try if Phoebus will give me his day."  
He said, and off his bitter arrow thrust  
Right at Antinous, that struck him just  
As he was lifting up the bowl, to show  
That 'twixt the cup and lip much ill may grow.

Then the rest cried out upon him with threats, while they made vain search for weapons in the hall.

He, frowning, said, "Dogs, see in me the man  
Ye all held dead at Troy. My house it is  
That thus ye spoil, and thus your luxuries  
Fill with my women's rapes; in which ye woo  
The wife of one that lives, and no thought show  
Of man's fit fear, or gods', your present fame,  
Or any fair sense of your future name;  
And, therefore, present and eternal death  
Shall end your base life."

Then the Wooers made at Ulysses and Telemachus, who smote down first Eurymachus and then Amphinomus. But a way to the armoury having been left, the Wooers got arms by aid of a traitor; whom Eumæus and Philoetius smote, and then came to Ulysses and his son. Moreover, Pallas also came to their help; so that the Wooers, being routed—

Ulysses and his son the flyers chased  
As when, with crooked beaks and seres, a cast  
Of hill-bred eagles, cast off at some game,  
That yet their strengths keep, but, put up, in flame  
The eagle stoops; from which, along the field  
The poor fowls make wing this and that way yield  
Their hard-flown pinions, then the clouds assay  
For 'scape or shelter, their forlorn dismay  
All spirit exhaling, all wings strength to carry

Their bodies forth, and, truss'd up, to the quarry  
Their falconers ride in, and rejoice to see  
Their hawks perform a flight so fervently;  
So in their flight Ulysses with his heir  
Did stoop and cuff the Wooers, that the air  
Broke in vast sighs, whose heads they shot and cleft,  
The pavement boiling with the souls they reft.

Now all the Wooers were slain, and they of the household that were their accomplices; and the chamber was purified.

Then first did tears ensue  
Her rapt assurance; when she ran and spread  
Her arms about his neck, kiss'd oft his head.  
He wept for joy, t'enjoy a wife so fit  
For his grave mind, that knew his depth of wit.

But as for the Wooers, Hermes gathered the souls of them together, and, as bats gibbering in a cavern rise, so came they forth gibbering and went down to the House of Hades.

## FOOTNOTES:

[G] Of the "Odyssey" it may be said with certainty that its composition was later than that of the "Iliad," but it cannot be affirmed that both poems were not composed within the life-time of one man. It may be claimed that the best criticism declines to reject the identity of authorship of the poet of the "Iliad" and the poet of the "Odyssey," while admitting the probability that the work of other poets was incorporated in his. We have given our readers the translation by George Chapman, Shakespeare's contemporary, with which may be compared the fine modern prose translation by Professor Butcher and Mr. Andrew Lang. On the other hand, Alexander Pope's verse rendering has nothing Homeric about it. It may be regretted that Chapman did not in the "Odyssey" retain the swinging metre which he used in the "Iliad." The poem relates the adventures of Odysseus (latinised into Ulysses) on his homeward voyages, after the fall of Troy.

---

**HORACE**<sup>[H]</sup>

---

# Poems

## *Satires*

### HUMAN DISCONTENT

Whence is it, sir, that none contented lives  
With the fair lot which prudent reason gives,  
Or chance presents, yet all with envy view  
The schemes that others variously pursue?  
Broken with toils, with ponderous arms  
    oppressed,  
The soldier thinks the merchant solely blest.  
In opposite extreme, when tempests rise,  
"War is a better choice," the merchant cries.  
When early clients thunder at his gate,  
The barrister applauds the rustic's fate;  
While, by *sub-poenas* dragged from home, the  
    clown  
Thinks the supremely happy dwell in town!  
Not to be tedious, mark the moral aim  
Of these examples. Should some god proclaim,  
"Your prayers are heard: you, soldier, to your  
    seas;  
You, lawyer, take that envied rustic's ease,—  
Each to his several part—What! Ha! not move  
Even to the bliss you wished!" And shall not  
    Jove,  
With cheeks inflamed and angry brow, forswear  
A weak indulgence to their future prayer?

## AVARICE

Some, self-deceived, who think their lust of gold  
Is but a love of fame, this maxim hold,  
"No fortune is enough, since others rate  
Our worth proportioned to a large estate."  
Say, for their cure what arts would you employ?  
Let them be wretched, and their choice enjoy.  
Would you the real use of riches know?  
Bread, herbs, and wine are all they can bestow.  
Or add, what nature's deepest wants supplies;  
These and no more thy mass of money buys.  
But with continual watching almost dead,  
Housebreaking thieves, and midnight fires to  
    dread,  
Or the suspected slave's untimely flight  
With the dear pelf—if this be thy delight,  
Be it my fate, so heaven in bounty please,  
Still to be poor of blessings such as these!

## A PARAGON OF INCONSISTENCY

Nothing was of a piece in the whole man:  
Sometimes he like a frightened coward ran,  
Whose foes are at his heels; now soft and slow  
He moved, like folks who in procession go.  
Now with two hundred slaves he crowds his  
    train;  
Now walks with ten. In high and haughty strain,  
At morn, of kings and governors he prates;  
At night, "A frugal table, O ye Fates,  
A little shell the sacred salt to hold,  
And clothes, though coarse, to keep from me the  
    cold."  
Yet give this wight, so frugally content,  
A thousand pounds, 'tis every penny spent

Within the week! He drank the night away  
Till rising dawn, then snored out all the day.  
Sure, such a various creature ne'er was known.  
But have you, sir, no vices of your own?

### **ON JUDGING FRIENDS**

A kindly friend, who balances my good  
And bad together, as in truth he should,  
If haply my good qualities prevail,  
Inclines indulgent to the sinking scale:  
For like indulgence let his friendship plead,  
His merits be with equal measure weighed;  
For he who hopes his wen shall not offend  
Should overlook the pimples of his friend.

### **ON LOYALTY TO ABSENT FRIENDS**

He who, malignant, tears an absent friend,  
Or fails, when others blame him, to defend,  
Who trivial bursts of laughter strives to raise  
And courts for witty cynicism praise,  
Who can, what he has never seen, reveal,  
And friendship's secrets knows not to conceal—  
Romans beware—that man is black of soul.

### **HORACE'S DEBT TO HIS FATHER**

If some few trivial faults deform my soul  
(Like a fair face, when spotted with a mole),  
If none with avarice justly brand my fame,  
With sordidness, or deeds too vile to name;  
If pure and innocent; if dear (forgive  
These little praises) to my friends I live,

My father was the cause, who, though  
                  maintained  
By a lean farm but poorly, yet disdained  
The country schoolmaster, to whose low care  
The mighty captain sent his high-born heir,  
With satchel, copy-book, and pelf to pay  
The wretched teacher on the appointed day.  
To Rome by this bold father was I brought,  
To learn those arts which well-born youths are  
                  taught,  
So dressed, and so attended, you would swear  
I was some wealthy lord's expensive heir.  
Himself my guardian, of unblemished truth,  
Among my tutors would attend my youth,  
And thus preserved my chastity of mind—  
That prime of virtue in its highest kind.

### **HORACE'S HABITS IN THE CITY**

Alone I saunter, as by fancy led,  
I cheapen herbs, or ask the price of bread,  
I watch while fortune-tellers fate reveal,  
Then homeward hasten to my frugal meal,  
Herbs, pulse, and pancakes (each a separate  
                  plate),  
While three domestics at my supper wait.  
A bowl on a white marble table stands,  
Two goblets, and a ewer to wash my hands,  
And hallowed cup of true Campanian clay  
My pure libation to the gods to pay.  
I then retire to rest, nor anxious fear  
Before dread Marsyas early to appear.  
I lie till ten; then take a walk, or choose  
A book, perhaps, or trifle with the muse.  
For cheerful exercise and manly toil  
Anoint my body with the pliant oil—

Yet not with such as Natta's, when he vamps  
His filthy limbs and robs the public lamps.  
But when the sun pours down his fiercer fire,  
And bids me from the toilsome sport retire,  
I haste to bathe, and in a temperate mood  
Regale my craving appetite with food  
(Enough to nourish nature for a day);  
Then trifle my domestic hours away.  
Such is the life from bad ambition free;  
Such comfort has one humble born like me:  
With which I feel myself more truly blest,  
Than if my sires the quæstor's power possessed.

#### FOOTNOTES:

[H] Horace (Q. Horatius Flaccus), who was born near Venusia, in Apulia, in 65 B.C., and died in 8 B.C., was a southern Italian. When twenty, Horace was a student of philosophy at Athens. A period of poverty-stricken Bohemianism followed his return to Rome, till acquaintance with Virgil opened a path into the circle of Mæcenas and of the emperor. His literary career falls into three divisions—that of his "Epodes" and "Satires," down to 30 B.C.; that of his lyrics, down to 23 B.C., when the first three books of the "Odes" appeared; and that of the reflective and literary "Epistles," which include the famous "Art of Poetry," and, with sundry official odes, belong to his later years. Horatian "satire," it should be observed, does not imply ferocious personal onslaughts, but a miscellany containing good-humoured ridicule of types, and lively sketches of character and incident. So varied a performance as satirist, lyrist, moralist and critic, coupled with his vivid interest in mankind, help to account for the appeal which Horace has made to all epochs, countries, and ranks. Of the translations of Horace here given, some are by Prof. Wight Duff, and have been specially made for this selection, whilst a few are by Milton, Dryden, Cowper, and Francis.

---

### *Horace and the Bore*

SCENE.—*Rome, on the Sacred Way. The poet is walking down the street, composing some trifle, in a brown study,*

*when a person, known to him only by name, rushes up and seizes his hand.*

BORE (*effusively*): How d'ye do, my dear fellow?

HORACE (*politely*): Nicely at present. I'm at your service, sir. (HORACE *walks on, and as the BORE keeps following, tries to choke him off.*) You don't want anything, do you?

BORE: You must make my acquaintance, I'm a savant.

HORACE: Then I'll think the more of you. (HORACE, *anxious to get away, walks fast one minute, halts the next, whispers something to his attendant slave, and is bathed in perspiration all over. Then, quietly to himself*) Lucky Bolanus, with your hot temper!

BORE (*whose chatter on things in general, and about the streets of Rome in particular, has been received with dead silence*): You're frightfully keen to be off. I've noticed it all along. But it's no good. I'm going to stick to you right through. I'll escort you from here to your destination.

HORACE (*deprecatingly*): No need for you to make such a detour. (*Inventing fibs as he goes along*) There's someone I want to look up—a person you don't know, on the other side of the river—yes, far away—he's confined to bed—near Cæsar's Park.

BORE: Oh, I've nothing to do, and I don't dislike exercise. I'll follow you right there. (HORACE *is as crestfallen as a sulky donkey when an extra heavy load is dumped upon its back. The BORE continues*) If I know myself, you'll not value Viscus more highly as a friend, or Varius either; for who can write verses faster, and more of them, than I can? Who's a greater master of deportment? As for my singing, it's enough to make even Hermogenes jealous!

HORACE (*seizing the chance of interrupting*): Have you a mother—any relatives to whom your health is of moment?

BORE: Not one left. I've laid them all to rest.

HORACE: Lucky people! Now I'm the sole survivor. Do for *me*! The melancholy fate draws near which a fortune-telling Sabellian crone once prophesied in my boyhood: "This lad neither dread poison nor hostile sword shall take off, nor pleurisy, nor cough, nor crippling gout. A chatterbox will one day be his death!"

BORE (*realising that, as it is the hour for opening the law course, he must answer to his recognisances, or lose a suit to which he is a party*): Oblige me with your assistance in court for a little.

HORACE: Deuce take me if I've strength to hang about so long, or know any law. Besides, I'm hurrying, you know where.

BORE: I'm in a fix what to do—whether to give you up or my case.

HORACE: Me, please.

BORE: Shan't! (*Starts ahead of HORACE, who, beaten at every point, has to follow. The other opens conversation again.*) On what footing do you and Mæcenas stand?

HORACE (*haughtily*): He has a select circle, and thoroughly sound judgment.

BORE (*unimpressed*): Ah! No one ever made a smarter use of his chances. You'd have a powerful supporter, a capable understudy, if you'd agree to introduce your humble servant. Deuce take me if you wouldn't clear everybody out of your way.

HORACE (*disgusted*): We don't live on the terms *you* fancy. No establishment is more honest than his, or more

foreign to such intrigues. It does me no harm, I tell you, because this one has more money or learning than I. Everybody has his own place.

BORE: A tall story—hardly believable.

HORACE: A fact, nevertheless.

BORE: You fire my anxiety all the more to be one of his intimate friends.

HORACE (*sarcastically*): You've only got to wish. Such are *your* qualities, you'll carry him by storm.

BORE (*on whom the irony is lost*): I'll not fail myself. I'll bribe his slaves. If I find the door shut in my face I'll not give up. I'll watch for lucky moments. I'll meet him at street corners. I'll see him home. Life grants man nothing without hard work.

*[Enter FUSCUS, a friend of HORACE. Knowing the BORE'S ways, he reads the situation. HORACE furtively tugs at FUSCUS'S gown, pinches him, nods and winks to FUSCUS to rescue him. FUSCUS smiles, and with a mischievous fondness for a joke, pretends he does not understand.]*

HORACE (*angry with Fuscus*): Of course, you *did* say you wanted to talk over something with me in private.

FUSCUS: Ah, yes, I remember; but I'll tell you at a more convenient season. (*Inventing an excuse with mock solemnity.*) To-day is the "Thirtieth Sabbath." You wouldn't affront the circumcised Jews, would you?

HORACE: I have no scruples.

FUSCUS: But *I* have. I'm a slightly weaker brother—one, of many. Pardon, I'll talk about it another time.

*[Exit, leaving HORACE like a victim under the knife.]*

HORACE (*to himself*): To think this day should have dawned so black for me!

[*Suddenly enter the PLAINTIFF in the suit against the BORE.*

PLAINTIFF (*loudly to the BORE*): Where are you off to, you scoundrel? (*To HORACE*) May I call you as a witness to his contempt of court?

[*HORACE lets his ear be touched, according to legal form. The BORE is hauled away to court, he and the PLAINTIFF bawling at each other. The arrest attracts a large crowd.*

HORACE (*quietly disappearing*): What an escape! Thank Apollo!

## *The Art of Poetry*

### **UNITY AND SIMPLICITY ARE REQUISITE**

Suppose a painter to a human head  
Should join a horse's neck, and wildly spread  
The various plumage of the feather'd kind  
O'er limbs of different beasts, absurdly joined.  
Or if he gave to view of beauteous maid  
Above the waist with every charm arrayed,  
But ending, fish-like, in a mermaid tail,  
Could you to laugh at such a picture fail?  
Such is the book that, like a sick man's dreams,  
Varies all shapes, and mixes all extremes.  
"Painters and poets our indulgence claim,  
Their daring equal, and their art the same."  
I own the indulgence, such I give and take;  
But not through nature's sacred rules to break.  
Your opening promises some grand design,

And purple patches with broad lustre shine  
Sewed on the poem; here in laboured strain  
A sacred grove, or fair Diana's fane  
Rises to view; there through delightful meads  
A murmuring stream its winding water leads.

Why will you thus a mighty vase intend,  
If in a worthless bowl your labours end?  
Then learn this wandering humour to control,  
And keep one equal tenour through the whole.

### **THE FALSEHOOD OF EXTREMES IN STYLE**

But oft our greatest errors take their rise  
From our best views. I strive to be concise,  
And prove obscure. My strength, or passion,  
flees,  
When I would write with elegance and ease.  
Aiming at greatness, some to fustian soar:  
Some, bent on safety, creep along the shore.  
Thus injudicious, while one fault we shun,  
Into its opposite extreme we run.

### **CHOICE OF THEME**

Examine well, ye writers, weigh with care,  
What suits your genius, what your strength can  
bear;  
For when a well-proportioned theme you choose,  
Nor words, nor method shall their aid refuse.

### **WORDS OLD AND NEW**

The author of a promised work must be  
Subtle and careful in word-harmony.

To choose and to reject. You merit praise  
If by deft linking of known words a phrase  
Strikes one as new. Should unfamiliar theme  
Need fresh-invented terms, proper will seem  
Diction unknown of old. This licence used  
With fair discretion never is refused.  
As when the forest, with the bending year,  
First sheds the leaves, which earliest appear,  
So an old race of words maturely dies,  
And some, new born, in youth and vigour rise.  
Many shall rise which now forgotten lie;  
Others, in present credit, soon shall die,  
If custom will, whose arbitrary sway  
Words and the forms of language must obey.

### **WORDS MUST SUIT CHARACTER**

'Tis not enough, ye writers, that ye charm  
With pretty elegance; a play should warm  
With soft concernment—should possess the soul,  
And, as it wills, the listeners control.  
With those who laugh, our social joy appears;  
With those who mourn, we sympathise in tears;  
If you would have me weep, begin the strain,  
Then I shall feel your sorrow, feel your pain;  
But if your heroes act not what they say,  
I sleep or laugh the lifeless scene away.

### **ON LITERARY BORROWING**

If you would make a common theme your own,  
Dwell not on incidents already known;  
Nor word for word translate with painful care,  
Nor be confined in such a narrow sphere.

## **ON BEGINNING A HEROIC POEM**

Begin your work with modest grace and plain,  
Not in the cyclic bard's bombastic strain:  
"I chant the glorious war and Priam's fate——"  
How will the boaster keep this ranting rate?  
The mountains laboured with prodigious throes,  
And lo! a mouse ridiculous arose.  
Far better Homer, who tries naught in vain,  
Opens his poem in a humbler strain:  
"Muse, tell the many who after Troy subdued,  
Manners and towns of various nations viewed."  
Right to the great event he speeds his course,  
And bears his readers, with impetuous force,  
Into the midst of things, while every line  
Opens by just degrees his whole design.

## **ACTION AND NARRATION IN PLAYS**

The business of the drama must appear  
In action or description. What we hear,  
With slower passion to the heart proceeds  
Than when an audience views the very deeds.  
But let not such upon the stage be brought  
Which better should behind the scenes be  
wrought;  
Nor force the unwilling audience to behold  
What may with vivid elegance be told.  
Let not Medea with unnatural rage  
Murder her little children on the stage.

## **GOOD SENSE A WELL-SPRING OF POETRY**

Good sense, the fountain of the muse's art,  
Let the strong page of Socrates impart;

For if the mind with clear conceptions glow,  
The willing words in just expressions flow.  
The poet who with nice discernment knows  
What to his country and his friends he owes;  
How various nature warms the human breast,  
To love the parent, brother, friend, or guest;  
What the high duties of our judges are,  
Of senator or general sent to war;  
He surely knows, with nice self-judging art,  
The strokes peculiar to each different part.  
Keep nature's great original in view,  
And thence the living images pursue.  
For when the sentiments and manners please,  
And all the characters are wrought with ease,  
Your play, though weak in beauty, force, and art,  
More strongly shall delight, and warm the heart,  
Than where a lifeless pomp of verse appears,  
And with sonorous trifles charms our ears.

### **PERFECTION CANNOT BE EXPECTED**

Where beauties in a poem faults outshine,  
I am not angry if a casual line  
(That with some trivial blot unequal flows)  
A careless hand or human frailty shows.  
Then shall I angrily see no excuse  
If honest Homer slumber o'er his muse?  
Yet surely sometimes an indulgent sleep  
O'er works of length allowably may creep!

### **A HIGH STANDARD MUST BE EXACTED**

In certain subjects, Piso, be assured,  
Tame mediocrity may be endured.  
But god, and man, and booksellers deny

A poet's right to mediocrity!

## **ARE POETS BORN OR MADE?**

'Tis long disputed whether poems claim  
From art or nature their best right to fame;  
But art, if un-enriched by nature's vein,  
And a rude genius of uncultured strain,  
Are useless both: they must be fast combined  
And mutual succour in each other find.

---

### *Odes*

#### **A DEDICATION**

Mæcenas, sprung from regal line,  
Bulwark and dearest glory mine!  
Some love to stir Olympic dust  
With glowing chariot-wheels which just  
Avoid the goal, and win a prize  
Fit for the rulers of the skies.  
One joys in triple civic fame  
Conferred by fickle Rome's acclaim;  
Another likes from Libya's plain  
To store his private barns with grain;  
A third who, with unceasing toil,  
Hoes cheerful the paternal soil,  
No promised wealth of Attalus  
Shall tempt to venture timorous  
Sailing in Cyprian bark to brave  
The terrors of Myrtoan wave.  
Others in tented fields rejoice,

Trumpets and answering clarion-voice.  
Be mine the ivy, fair reward,  
Which blissful crowns the immortal bard;  
Be mine amid the breezy grove,  
In sacred solitude to rove—  
To see the nymphs and satyrs bound,  
Light dancing in the mazy round,  
While all the tuneful muses join  
Their various harmony divine.  
Count me but in the lyric choir—  
My crest shall to the stars aspire.

### TO PYRRHA

What slender youth bedewed with liquid odours  
Courts thee on roses in some pleasant cave,  
    Pyrrha? For whom bind'st thou  
    In wreaths thy golden hair,  
Plain in thy neatness? Oh, how oft shall he  
On faith and changed gods complain, and seas  
    Rough with black winds, and storms  
    Unwonted shall admire!  
Who now enjoys thee credulous, all gold,  
Who always vacant, always amiable  
    Hopes thee, of flattering gales  
    Unmindful. Hapless they  
To whom thou untried seem'st fair. Me, in my  
    vowed  
Picture, the sacred wall declares to have hung  
    My dank and dropping weeds  
    To the stern god of sea.

### WINTER CHEER

Seest thou yon mountain laden with deep snow

The groves beneath their fleecy burthen bow,  
The streams congealed, forget to flow?  
Come, thaw the cold, and lay a cheerful pile  
Of fuel on the hearth;  
Broach the best cask and make old winter smile  
With seasonable mirth.

This be our part—let Heaven dispose the rest;  
If Jove commands, the winds shall sleep  
That now wage war upon the foamy deep,  
And gentle gales spring from the balmy west.

E'en let us shift to-morrow as we may:  
When to-morrow's passed away,  
We at least shall have to say,  
We have lived another day;  
Your auburn locks will soon be silvered o'er,  
Old age is at our heels, and youth returns no  
more.

### **"GATHER YE ROSEBUDS WHILE YE MAY"**

Secure those golden early joys,  
That youth unsoured with sorrow bears,  
Ere withering time the taste destroys  
With sickness and unwieldy years.  
For active sports, for pleasing rest,  
This is the time to be possessed;  
The best is but in season best.

The appointed tryst of promised bliss,  
The pleasing whisper in the dark,  
The half-unwilling willing kiss,  
The laugh that guides thee to the mark,  
When the kind nymph would coyly feign,  
And hides but to be found again—  
These, these are joys the gods for youth ordain.

## GOD AND EMPEROR

Saturnian Jove, parent and guardian god  
Of human kind, to thee the Fates award  
The care of Cæsar's reign; to thine alone  
    Inferior, let his empire rise.  
Whether the Parthian's formidable power  
Or Indians or the Seres of the East,  
With humbled pride beneath his triumph fall,  
    Wide o'er a willing world shall he  
Contented rule, and to thy throne shall bend  
Submissive. Thou in thy tremendous car  
Shalt shake Olympus' head, and at our groves  
    Polluted hurl thy dreadful bolts.

## THE STRENGTH OF INNOCENCE

The man of life, unstained and free from craft,  
    Ne'er needs, my Fuscus, Moorish darts to  
    throw;  
He needs no quiver filled with venom'd shaft,  
    Nor e'er a bow.

Whether he fare thro' Afric's boiling shoals,  
    Or o'er the Caucasus inhospitable,  
Or where the great Hydaspes river rolls,  
    Renowned in fable.

Once in a Sabine forest as I strayed  
    Beyond my boundary, by fancy charmed,  
Singing my Lalage, a wolf, afraid,  
    Shunned me unarmed.

The broad oak-woods of hardy Daunia,  
    Rear no such monster mid their fiercest scions,  
Nor Juba's arid Mauretania,

The nurse of lions.

Set me where, in the heart of frozen plains,  
No tree is freshened by a summer wind,  
A quarter of the globe enthralled by rains,  
And Jove unkind;

Or set me 'neath the chariot of the Sun,  
Where, overnear his fires, no homes may be;  
I'll love, for her sweet smile and voice, but one—  
My Lalage.

### TRANQUILLITY

Should fortune frown, live thou serene;  
Nor let thy spirit rise too high,  
Though kinder grown she change the scene;  
Bethink thee, Delius, thou must die.

Whether thy slow days mournful pass,  
Or swiftly joyous fleet away,  
While thou reclining on the grass  
Dost bless with wine the festal day.

Where poplar white and giant pine  
Ward off the inhospitable beam;  
Where their luxuriant branches twine,  
Where bickers down its course the stream,

Here bid them perfumes bring, and wine,  
And the fair rose's short-lived flower,  
While youth and fortune and the twine  
Spun by the Sisters, grant an hour.

We all must tread the path of Fate,  
And ever shakes the fateful urn,  
Whose lot embarks us, soon or late,

On Charon's boat—beyond return.

### TO A FAIR DECEIVER

Did any punishment attend  
Thy former perjuries,  
I should believe a second time,  
Thy charming flatteries:  
Did but one wrinkle mark thy face  
Or hadst thou lost one single grace.

No sooner hast thou, with false vows,  
Provoked the powers above,  
But thou art fairer than before,  
And we are more in love.  
Thus Heaven and Earth seem to declare  
They pardon falsehood in the fair.

The nymphs, and cruel Cupid too,  
Sharpening his pointed dart  
On an old home besmeared with blood,  
Forbear thy perjured heart.  
Fresh youth grows up to wear thy chains,  
And the old slave no freedom gains.

### THE GOLDEN MEAN

The man who follows Wisdom's voice,  
And makes the Golden Mean his choice,  
Nor plunged in squalid gloomy cells  
Midst hoary desolation dwells;  
Nor to allure the envious eye  
Rears a proud palace to the sky;  
The man whose steadfast soul can bear  
Fortune indulgent or severe,  
Hopes when she frowns, and when she smiles

With cautious fear eludes her wiles.

### TO THE FOUNTAIN OF BANDUSIA

Bandusia's Well, that crystal dost outshine,  
Worthy art thou of festal wine and wreath!  
An offered kid to-morrow shall be thine,  
Whose swelling brows his earliest horns  
unsheath.  
And mark him for the feats of love and strife.  
In vain: for this same youngling from the fold  
Of playful goats shall with his crimson life  
Incarnadine thy waters fresh and cold.  
The blazing Dog-star's unrelenting hour  
Can touch thee not: to roaming herd or bulls  
O'erwrought by plough, thou giv'st a shady  
bower,  
Thou shalt be one of Earth's renowned pools!  
For I shall sing thy grotto ilex-crowned,  
Whence fall thy waters of the babbling sound.

### TO THE GOD FAUNUS

O Faun-god, wooer of each nymph that flees,  
Come, cross my land! Across those sunny leas,  
Tread thou benign, and all my flock's increase  
Bless ere thou go.

In each full year a tender kid be slain,  
If Venus' mate, the bowl, be charged amain  
With wine, and incense thick the altar stain  
Of long ago.

The herds disport upon the grassy ground,  
When in thy name December's Nones come  
round;

Idling on meads the thorpe, with steers unbound,  
Its joys doth show.

Amid emboldened lambs the wolf roams free;  
The forest sheds its leafage wild for thee;  
And thrice the delver stamps his foot in glee  
On earth, his foe.

### AN ENVOI

Now have I reared memorial to last  
More durable than brass, and to o'ertop  
The pile of royal pyramids. No waste  
Of rain or ravening Boreas hath power  
To ruin it, nor lapse of time to come  
In the innumerable round of years.  
I shall not wholly die; great part of me  
Shall 'scape the Funeral Goddess. Evermore  
Fresh shall my honours grow, while pontiffs still  
Do climb the Capitol with silent maid.  
It shall be told where brawls the Aufidus  
In fury, and where Daunus poor in streams  
Once reigned o'er rural tribes, it shall be told  
That Horace rose from lowliness to fame  
And first adapted to Italian strains  
The Æolian lay. Assume the eminence,  
My own Melpomene, which merit won,  
And deign to wreath my hair in Delphic bays.

---

# VICTOR HUGO <sup>[1]</sup>

---

# Hernani

## *Persons in the Drama*

HERNANI	A MOUNTAINEER
CHARLES V. OF SPAIN	A PAGE
DON RICARDO	SOLDIERS
DON RUY GOMEZ	CONSPIRATORS
DOÑA SOL	RETAINERS

Date of action, 1519.

## ACT I

SCENE—KING CHARLES *and some of his noblemen are creeping into the courtyard of the palace of DON RUY GOMEZ DE SILVA at Saragossa. It is midnight, and the palace is dark, save for a dim light coming from a balcony window.*

THE KING: Here will I wait till Doña Sol comes down.  
Guard every entrance. And if Hernani  
Attempts to fight you need not kill the man.  
Brigand although he is, he shall go free,  
If I can win his lady.

DON RICARDO: Shoot the hawk  
If you would keep the dove. The mountaineer  
Is a most desperate outlaw.

THE KING: Let him live.  
If I were not so passionately in love  
With Doña Sol I would help Hernani  
To rescue her from her old guardian.

To think that Don Ruy Gomez should have kept  
So beautiful a girl a prisoner,  
And tried to marry her! Had Hernani  
Eloped with her before I fell in love  
I would have praised his courage.

*[The balcony window opens, and as the noblemen  
retire, DOÑA SOL comes down.]*

DOÑA SOL: Hernani!

THE KING (*holding her*): Sweet Doña Sol.

DOÑA SOL: Oh, where is Hernani?

THE KING: I am the king, King Charles. I worship you,  
And I will make you happy.

DOÑA SOL: Hernani!  
Help! Help me, Hernani! [*She tries to escape.*]

THE KING: I am your king!  
I love you, Doña Sol. Come, you shall be  
A duchess.

DOÑA SOL: No.

THE KING: Princess.

DOÑA SOL: No.

THE KING: Queen of Spain!  
Yes; I will marry you if you will come.

DOÑA SOL: I cannot; I love Hernani.

THE KING: That brigand is not worthy of you. A throne  
Is waiting. If you will not come with me,  
My men must carry you away by force.

*[While he is talking HERNANI appears.]*

HERNANI: King Charles, you are a coward and a cur!

DOÑA SOL (*clasping him*): Save me!

HERNANI: I will, my love.

THE KING: Where are my men?

HERNANI: In my hands. I have sixty followers  
Waiting out there. And now a word with you.  
Your father killed my father; you have stolen  
My lands and titles from me; and I vowed  
To kill you.

THE KING: Titles? Lands? Who are you, then?

HERNANI: But meeting Doña Sol, I lost all thought  
Of vengeance. Now I come to rescue her,  
And find you in my path again—a wretch  
Using his strength against a helpless girl.  
Quick! Draw your sword, and prove you are a man!

THE KING: I am your king. I shall not fight with you.  
Strike if you want to murder me.

HERNANI: You think  
I hold with the divinity of kings?  
Now, will you fight?

*[Striking him with the flat of his sword.]*

THE KING: I will not. Murder me,  
You bandit, as you murder every man  
That you desire to rob! Cross swords with you?  
A common thief? No; get to your trade.  
Creep round; assassinate me from behind!

*[KING CHARLES fixes his fierce, hawk-like eyes on the young brigand. HERNANI recoils, lowers his sword; then, moved beyond himself by the strength of character displayed by THE KING, he breaks his blade on the pavement.]*

HERNANI: Be off, then.

THE KING: Very well, sir. I shall set  
A price upon your head, and hound you down.

HERNANI: I cannot kill you now, with Doña Sol  
Looking at us. But I will keep my vow

When next we meet.

THE KING: Never shall you obtain  
Mercy, respite, or pardon at my hands.

*[He departs.]*

DOÑA SOL: Now let us fly.

HERNANI: No; I must go alone.  
It means death! Did you see King Charles's face?  
It means death. Oh, my love, my sweet, true love!  
You would have shared with me the wild, rough life  
I lead up in the mountains: the green couch  
Beneath the trees, the water from the brook.  
But now I shall be hunted down and killed.  
You must not come. Good-bye.

DOÑA SOL: Oh, Hernani!  
Will you leave me like this?

HERNANI: No, I will stay!  
Fold your arms closely round me, love, and rest  
Your dear head on my shoulder. Let us talk  
In whispers, as we used to, when I came  
At night beneath your window. Do you still  
Remember our first meeting?

*[There is a clash of bells.]*

DOÑA SOL: Hernani,  
It is the tocsin!

HERNANI: No; our wedding-bells.

*[Shouts are heard. Lights appear in all the  
windows.]*

*The noise of the bells grows louder. A  
mountaineer  
runs in, with his sword drawn.*

THE MOUNTAINEER: The streets are filled with soldiers.

DOÑA SOL: Save yourself!  
Here is a side gate.

THE CROWD (*out in the street*): Bring the brigand out!

HERNANI: One kiss, then, and farewell.

DOÑA SOL (*embracing him*): It is our first.

HERNANI: And it may be our last. Farewell, my love!

## ACT II

SCENE—DON RUY GOMEZ, *an old, grey-haired, but superb-looking man, is standing in the hall of his castle in the Aragon mountains.*

DON RUY GOMEZ: Only an hour, and then she is my wife!  
I have been jealous and unjust, and used  
Some violence. But now she is my bride  
She shall know how a man can love.

[A PAGE *enters.*

PAGE: My lord,  
There is a pilgrim at the gate, who craves  
For shelter.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Let him in. On this glad day  
Give friend or stranger welcome. Is there news  
Of Hernani?

PAGE: King Charles has routed him  
And killed him, so they say.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Thank Heaven for that!  
My cup of happiness is full. Run, boy!  
Bid Doña Sol put on her wedding-gown,  
And as you go admit my pilgrim guest.

[*The PAGE retires.*

Would I could let the whole world see my joy!

[HERNANI *enters, disguised as a pilgrim.*

HERNANI: To you, my lord, all peace and happiness!

DON RUY GOMEZ: And peace and happiness to you, my guest!  
Where are you bound for?

HERNANI: For Our Lady's shrine.

[DOÑA SOL *enters, arrayed in a wedding-dress.*

DON RUY GOMEZ: Here is the lady at whose shrine I pray.  
My dearest bride! Where is your coronet?  
You have forgotten it, and all the gems  
I gave you as a wedding gift.

HERNANI (*in a wild, loud voice*): What man  
Wishes to gain ten thousand golden crowns?  
This is the price set upon Hernani.

[*Everyone is amazed. Tearing off his pilgrim robe, he shows himself in the dress of a mountaineer.*

I am Hernani.

DOÑA SOL: Ah! he is not dead!

HERNANI: Ten thousand crowns for me!

DON RUY GOMEZ: The sum is great.  
I am not sure of all my men.

HERNANI: Which one  
Will sell me to King Charles? Will you? Will you?

[*The retainers move away from him. DOÑA SOL makes an imploring gesture; she is speechless with fear.*

DON RUY GOMEZ: My friend, you are my guest, and I  
will slay  
The man that dare lay hands on you. I come  
Of noble race. And were you Hernani  
Or Satan, I would keep the sacred law  
Of hospitality. My honour is  
A thing I prize above all else on earth,

And King Charles shall not stain it while I live!  
Come, men, and arm, and close the castle gate.

*[He goes out, followed by all his retainers. DOÑA SOL remains, her face white with anguish. HERNANI glares at her.]*

HERNANI: So he has bought you, this old wealthy man!  
Bought you outright!  
Oh, God, how false and vain  
All women are!

DOÑA SOL: When I refused the throne  
Offered me by King Charles, was I then false?  
Is this an ornament vain women wear  
Upon their wedding day?

*[She takes a dagger from her bosom.]*

Oh, Hernani,  
They told me you were killed! I have been dressed  
For marriage, but against the bridal night  
I kept this dagger.

HERNANI: Slay me with it, love!  
I am unworthy of you! Blind and mad  
Was I to doubt the sweetest, bravest soul  
That ever walked in beauty on this earth.

DOÑA SOL (*clasping him in her arms*): My hero and my  
lover, and my lord,  
Love me, and love me always!

HERNANI: Unto death.

*[As he embraces her, DON RUY GOMEZ enters.]*

DON RUY GOMEZ: Judas!

HERNANI: Yes. Draw your sword and take my life.  
But spare your bride, for she is innocent.  
I came to carry her away, but she  
Refused to follow me.

DOÑA SOL: It is not true.  
I love him. Slay us both, or pardon us!

DON RUY GOMEZ: You love him, Doña Sol? Then he must die.

*[There is a sound of trumpets outside. A PAGE enters.]*

THE PAGE: His Majesty King Charles is at the gate,  
With all his army.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Open to the king!

DOÑA SOL: Nothing can save him now!

*[DON RUY GOMEZ presses a spring in the wall, and a door opens into a hiding-place.]*

DON RUY GOMEZ (to HERNANI): Here you are safe.

HERNANI: Surrender me! I am a prisoner now,  
And not a guest.

*[He enters the hiding-place. DON RUY GOMEZ closes it.]*

THE PAGE: His Majesty, the King!

*[KING CHARLES enters, followed by his soldiers. DOÑA SOL covers herself hastily in her bridal veil.]*

THE KING (to the soldiers): Seize all the keys, and guard the gates!

(To DON RUY GOMEZ) My lord,  
I hear that you are sheltering my foe,  
The brigand Hernani.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Sire, that is true.

THE KING: I want his head—or yours.

DON RUY GOMEZ: He is my guest.  
I come of men who are not used to sell  
The head of any guest, even to their king.

THE KING: Why, man, he is your rival! You resolved  
To help me hunt him down. You gave your word.

DON RUY GOMEZ: But now he is my guest.

THE KING: He shall be found,  
Though every stone in all your castle walls  
Fall ere I find him.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Raze my castle, then;  
I cannot play the traitor.

THE KING: Well, two heads  
Are better, some men say, than one. My lord,  
I must have yours as well as Hernani's.  
Arrest this man!

*[As the soldiers come forward, DOÑA SOL throws  
up her veil and strides up hastily to KING  
CHARLES.]*

DOÑA SOL: You are a wicked and cruel king!

THE KING: What? Doña Sol? *(In a whisper)*  
It is my love for you  
That stirs in me this passion. You alone  
Can calm it. *(To DON RUY GOMEZ)*  
Until you deliver up  
Hernani, I shall keep your lovely ward  
As hostage.

DOÑA SOL *(taking the dagger, and hiding it again in  
her bosom)*: It will save him! I must go!

*[She goes up to KING CHARLES and he leads her  
out.]*

DON RUY GOMEZ *runs to the wall to press the spring.*  
DOÑA SOL *turns as she passes through the door, and stops  
him by a wild glance. He waits, with heaving breast, till the  
hall is empty, and then lets HERNANI out.*

DON RUY GOMEZ: The king is gone. Here are two swords.  
Now fight.

HERNANI: No! You have saved me! No. I cannot fight.  
My life belongs to you. But ere I die  
Let me see Doña Sol.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Did you not hear  
What happened? Till I give you up, King Charles  
Holds her as hostage.

HERNANI: Fool! He loves her.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Quick!  
Call up my men! To horse! Pursue the king!

HERNANI: Leave it to me. I will avenge us both.  
My way is best—a dagger in the dark.  
Let us go forth on foot and track him down.

DON RUY GOMEZ: And when your rival dies?

HERNANI (*taking a horn from his belt*): Then claim your  
debt!  
My life belongs to you. At any time  
You wish to take it, sound upon this horn,  
And I will kill myself.

DON RUY GOMEZ: Your hand on it!

### ACT III

SCENE—CHARLES OF SPAIN, *who has just been elected Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, is kneeling by the tomb of Charlemagne in the underground vault at Aix-la-Chapelle.*

CHARLES: O mighty architect of Christendom,  
Inspire me now to carry on thy work!  
Ah, let me with the lightning of thy sword  
Smite the rebellious people down, and make  
Their kings my footstool! Warrior of God!  
Give me the power to subjugate and weld

The warring races in a hierarchy  
Of Christian government throughout the world!

*[The tramp of many feet is heard.]*

Here my assassins come! Oh, let me creep,  
Thou mighty spirit, into thy great tomb!  
Counsel me from thy ashes; speak to me;  
Instruct me how to rule with a strong hand,  
And punish these wild men as they deserve!

*[He hides in the tomb: the CONSPIRATORS enter.]*

THEIR LEADER: Since Charles of Spain aims at a tyranny,  
We, whom he threatens with his power, must use  
The only weapon of defence still left—  
Assassination! Here, before the tomb  
Of Charlemagne, let us decide by lot  
On whom the noble task shall fall to strike  
The tyrant down.

*[The CONSPIRATORS write their names on pieces of parchment, and throw them into an urn. They kneel down in silent prayer. Then their leader draws one of the names.]*

THE CONSPIRATORS: Who is it?

THEIR LEADER: Hernani.

HERNANI: I have won! I hold thee now at last!

DON RUY GOMEZ: No, I must strike the blow!  
Take back your life,  
Take Doña Sol, but let me strike the blow!

*[He offers HERNANI the horn.]*

HERNANI: No! I have more than you have to avenge.

THEIR LEADER: Don Ruy Gomez de Silva, you shall strike  
The second blow if the first fail. And now  
Let us all swear to strike and die in turn,  
Until Charles falls.

THE CONSPIRATORS: We swear!

CHARLES (*coming out of the tomb*): You are dead men.

[*The great vault is lighted up by torches, and a band of soldiers who have been hiding behind the pillars surround the CONSPIRATORS.*]

CHARLES (*to a soldier*): Bring in the lady. (*To HERNANI*)  
What is your true name?

HERNANI: I will reveal it now that I must die.  
Don Juan of Aragon, Duke of Segorbe,  
Duke of Cardona, Marquis of Monroy,  
Count Albaterra, and Viscount of Gor,  
And lord of scores of towns and villages  
Whose names I have forgotten. You, no doubt,  
Remember all of them, Charles of Castile,  
For they belong to you now.

[*The soldier returns with DOÑA SOL. She throws herself at the emperor's feet.*]

DOÑA SOL: Pardon him!

CHARLES: Rise, Duchess of Segorbe and Cardona.  
Marquise of Monroy—and your other names, Don Juan?

HERNANI: Who is speaking thus—the king?

CHARLES: No. It is the emperor. He is a man  
Different from the king (*turning to the astonished*  
CONSPIRATORS); and he will win  
Your loyalty, my friends, and your good aid,  
If God in His great mercy will but guide  
His erring feet along the pathway trod  
By Charlemagne. Don Juan of Aragon,  
Forgive me, and receive now from my hands  
A wife full worthy of you, Doña Sol.

[*The two lovers kneel at his feet. Taking from his neck the Golden Fleece, he puts it on HERNANI.*]

THE SPECTATORS: Long live the emperor.

DON RUY GOMEZ: I have the horn.

## ACT IV

SCENE—*A terrace by the palace of Aragon. It is midnight, and the guests are departing from the marriage feast of HERNANI and DOÑA SOL.*

DOÑA SOL: At last, my husband, we are left alone.  
How glad I am the feast and noise is done—  
Are over.

HERNANI: I, too, am weary of the loud, wild joy.  
Happiness is a deep and quiet thing,  
As deep and grave and quiet as true love.

DOÑA SOL: Yes, happiness and love are like a strain  
Of calm and lovely music. Hernani,  
Listen! (*The sound of a mountain horn floats on the air.*)  
It is some mountaineer that plays  
Upon your silver horn. [HERNANI *staggers back.*

HERNANI: The tiger comes!  
The old, grey tiger! Look! In the shadows there!

DOÑA SOL: What is it frightens you?

[*The horn sounds again.*

HERNANI: He wants my blood! I cannot!

[DON RUY GOMEZ *enters, playing on the horn like a madman.*

DON RUY GOMEZ: So you have not kept your word.  
"My life belongs to you. At any time  
You wish to take it, sound upon this horn  
And I will kill myself." You are forsworn!

HERNANI: I have no weapon on me.

DON RUY GOMEZ (*offering a dagger and a phial*):  
Which of these  
Do you prefer?

HERNANI: The poison.

DOÑA SOL: Are you mad?

HERNANI: He saved my life at Aragon. I gave  
My word of honour I would kill myself  
When he desired.

*[He raises the phial to his lips, but his wife wrests  
it from him.]*

DOÑA SOL (*to her guardian*): Why do you desire  
To kill my husband?

DON RUY GOMEZ: I have sworn no man  
Shall marry you but me. I keep my oath!

*[With a wild gesture DOÑA SOL drinks half of the  
poison, and hands HERNANI the rest.]*

DOÑA SOL: You are two cruel men. Drink, Hernani,  
And let us go to sleep!

HERNANI (*emptying the phial*): Kiss me, my sweet.  
It is our bridal night.

DOÑA SOL (*falling beside him on the ground*): Fold me,  
my love,  
Close in your arms. *[They die.]*

DON RUY GOMEZ: Oh, I am a lost soul!

*[He kills himself.]*

## FOOTNOTES:

[1] Victor Hugo (see Vol. V, p. 122) occupies an anomalous position among the great dramatists of the world. He is really a poet with a splendid lyrical inspiration; but he combines this in his plays with an acquired but effective talent for stage-craft. "Hernani" is the most famous play in the European literature of the nineteenth century. This is partly due to the fact that it was the first great romantic drama given on the French stage. When it was produced, on February 25, 1830, there was a fierce battle in the theatre between the followers of the new movement and the adherents of the classic school of French playwriting. Little of the play itself was heard on the first night. The voices of the players were drowned in a storm of denunciations from the classicists, and counter-cheers from the romanticists. The admirers of Victor Hugo won. "Hernani" is certainly the most romantic of romantic dramas. The plot is striking, and full of swift and astonishing changes, but the characters are not always true to life. Nevertheless, "Hernani" is a fine,

interesting, poetic melodrama, with a rather weak last act. The gloomy scene with which it closes lacks the inevitability of true tragedy. Had the play ended happily it would undoubtedly have retained its popularity.

---

# Marion de Lorme<sup>[J]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

MARION DE LORME

DIDIER

LOUIS XIII.

THE MARQUIS DE SAVERNY

THE MARQUIS DE NANGIS

THE COMTE DE GASSE

BRICHANTEAU

L'ANGELY, *the King's Jester*

ROCHEBARON      LAFFEMAS

TOWN CRIER      HEADSMAN      TWO WORKMEN

SOLDIERS, OFFICIALS, AND A CROWD OF PEOPLE

## ACT I

SCENE—*A street in Blois in 1638. Some officers are sitting in the twilight outside a tavern, chatting, smoking, and drinking. They rise up to welcome the COMTE DE GASSE.*

BRICHANTEAU: You come to Blois to join the regiment?

We all condole with you. What is the news  
From Paris?

GASSE: The duel has come in again. Richelieu  
Is furious.

ROCHEBARON: That's no news. We duel here,  
To pass the time away.

GASSE: But have you heard  
Of the incredible, mysterious flight  
Of Marion de Lorme?

BRICHANTEAU: We have some news,  
Gasse, for you. Marion is here.

GASSE: At Blois?  
You jest! The Queen of Beauty? Marion  
In a place like this?

BRICHANTEAU: Saverny was attacked  
Last night by footpads. They were killing him,  
When a man beat them off, and took our friend  
Into a house.

GASSE: But Marion de Lorme?

BRICHANTEAU: It was her house. Saverny's rescuer  
Was the young man with whom she is in love.

ROCHEBARON: What is the man like?

BRICHANTEAU: Ask Saverny that.

THE TOWN CRIER (*arriving with a crowd*):  
"Ordinance. Louis, by the grace of God,  
King of France and Navarre, unto all men,  
To whom these presents come, greeting! We will,  
Ordain, and rule, henceforward, that all men,  
Nobles or commoners, who break the law  
By duelling, whether one survive or two,  
Shall be hanged by the neck till they are dead.  
Such is our good pleasure."

GASSE: Hang us like thieves.

[*Two officers of the town fix the edict to the wall, and the CRIER and the crowd depart. SAVERNY enters. The street grows dark.*]

SAVERNY: Fair Marion de Lorme has left her house.  
I cannot find her.

GASSE: What was the man like?

SAVERNY: I do not know. On entering the house  
I recognised sweet Marion, and began  
To speak to her. Before I could turn round  
And thank the man to whom I owed my life,  
He knocked the candle over. I withdrew,  
Seeing I was not wanted. All I know  
Is that his name is Didier.

ROCHEBARON: It smacks  
Of vulgar origin. To think a man  
With such a name should carry Marion off—  
Marion, the queen of beauty and of love!

SAVERNY: There may be men with greater names, but  
none  
With greater hearts. To leap from Marion's arms,  
And fight with footpads for a stranger's life!  
The thing's heroic! I owe Didier  
A debt that I would pay, if need there was,  
With all my blood. I wish he were my friend!

[L'ANGELY, *the King's jester—a mournful-  
looking creature—comes and sits with the  
officers. He is followed by a tall, pale,  
handsome young man. It is DIDIER.*

DIDIER: The Marquis of Saverny! So the fop  
Called himself. Oh, the easy, impudent air  
With which he spoke to Marie! And I saved  
The creature's life. If I meet him again——

GASSE: Saverny!

DIDIER: Here's my man.

GASSE: Have you observed  
The edict against duelling, on pain  
Of hanging?

SAVERNY: Hanging? Hang a gentleman?  
You jest! That is a punishment for serfs.

BRICHANTEAU: Well, read the edict underneath the  
lamp.

SAVERNY (*annoyed at DIDIER for staring at him*):  
Go, read it for me, pale face!

DIDIER: I?

SAVERNY: Yes, you.

DIDIER (*rising*): It is an ordinance that punishes  
By gibbeting all squabbling noblemen.  
Having done all you wanted, may I claim  
A slight reward? Will you now fight with me?

SAVERNY: Certainly. Where?

DIDIER: Here. Who will lend a sword?

L'ANGELY: For this wild folly, take a fool's sword,  
friend,  
And in exchange, bequeath to me, for luck,  
The bit of rope that hangs you.

DIDIER (*taking his sword*): Now, marquis!

SAVERNY: Sir, at your service.

DIDIER: Guard!

[*As their swords clash, MARION DE LORME  
appears.*]

MARION (*seeing*

DIDIER *fighting*): Stop! Help! Help! Help!

[*In answer to her cries the town guard arrive.*]

THE CAPTAIN OF THE GUARD: Down with your  
swords! What! Duelling beneath  
The edict of the king! You are dead men.

[DIDIER and SAVERNY are disarmed and led away.]

MARION: What has he done?

[L'ANGELY points to the edict: she reads it.  
Oh, when I called for help  
Death came! Is there no way to rescue him?  
The king is kind at heart, he will forgive

---

L'ANGELY: But Richelieu will not! He loves red blood,  
The scarlet cardinal, he loves red blood!

MARION: You frighten me! Who are you?

L'ANGELY: The king's fool.

MARION: Ah, Didier! If a woman's feeble hand  
Can save you, mine shall do it! [*She departs.*]

L'ANGELY (*picking up the sword he lent to Didier*):  
Ha! Ha! Ha!  
It was not I that played the fool to-night!

## ACT II

SCENE—*A hall in the castle of Chambord. KING LOUIS XIII., a grey-haired, weak-minded man, is sitting, pale and sorrowful, in a chair of state. L'ANGELY stands beside him.*

THE KING: Oh, it is miserable to be a king  
That lives but does not govern. Richelieu  
Is killing all my friends. I sometimes think  
He wants their blood to dye his scarlet robes.

L'ANGELY: He works for France, sire——

THE KING: Yes, and for himself.  
I hate him. Never did a king of France

Govern with so tyrannical a hand  
As he now does. A single word from me  
And all his pomp and splendour, all his power,  
Would vanish. But I cannot say the word;  
He will not let me. Come, amuse me, fool!

L'ANGELY: Is not life, sire, a thing of bitterness?

THE KING: It is. Man is a shadow.

L'ANGELY: And a king  
The miserablest creature on this earth.

THE KING: It gives me pleasure when you speak like  
that.

I wish that I were dead. In all the world  
You are the only man I ever found  
Worth listening to. I often wonder why  
You care to live. What are you? A poor fool—  
A puppet that I jerk to make me laugh.

L'ANGELY: I live on out of curiosity.  
The puppet of the king, I sit and watch  
The antics of the puppet of the priest!

THE KING: Yes, that is what I am. You speak the  
truth.  
Could Satan not become a cardinal,  
And take possession of my very soul?

L'ANGELY: I think that's what has happened.

THE KING: He loves blood,  
The cardinal! It was the Huguenots  
Yesterday that he wanted to behead,  
And now it is the duellists. Blood! Blood!  
He cannot live unless he lives in blood.

[L'ANGELY *makes a sign*. MARION DE LORME  
*and the* MARQUIS DE NANGIS *enter*.

MARION: Pardon!

THE KING: For whom?

MARION: Didier.

NANGIS: And the Marquis of Saverny.  
They are two boys of twenty years of age—  
Two children—they were quarrelling, when some spies  
Posted by Richelieu ...

MARION: Pardon them, my king!  
You will have pity on them. Two young boys,  
Caught in a boyish quarrel! No blood shed.  
You will not kill my Didier for that!  
You will not! Oh, you will not!

THE KING (*wiping the tears from his eyes*): Richelieu  
Has ordered that all duellists be hanged.  
You make my head ache. Go. Leave me!  
It must be so, for he has ordered it.

[L'ANGELY *signs to MARION to hide herself in  
the dark hall. She does so. NANGIS goes out.*

THE KING (*yawning*): I wish they would not come  
and worry me.  
Amuse me, L'Angely, for I am sad.  
Can you not talk to me of death again?  
That is a pleasant subject. Your gay talk  
Alone enables me to bear with life.

L'ANGELY: Sire, I have come to say farewell to you.

THE KING: Farewell? You cannot leave me! Only  
death  
Can end your service to a king.

L'ANGELY: 'Tis death  
That ends it. You condemn me to be hanged,  
Since you refuse to pardon those two boys.  
For it was I who made them fight. I lent  
My sword to Didier.

THE KING (*sadly*): Oh, my poor fool!  
So they will break your neck as well! Farewell!  
Life will be dull without you. When you die,

L'Angely, come and tell me how it feels,  
If you can, as some dead men do return  
In ghostly form to earth.

L'ANGELY (*to himself*): A pleasant task!

THE KING: No! It would frighten me if you came  
back.

You must not die. L'Angely, do you think  
That I could master Richelieu, if I wished?

L'ANGELY: Try!

THE KING: Some paper!

[L'ANGELY *gives him some; he hurriedly  
scrawls a few words, and hands the writing  
to the fool.*

I have pardoned all of you.

L'ANGELY (*running to MARION*): Here is the pardon.  
Thank the king for it.

THE KING (*as MARION throws herself at his feet*):  
I must not! Give the paper back to me!  
Richelieu will be angry.

MARION (*thrusting the pardon in her bosom*): You  
must tear  
My heart out ere you take it from me, sire!

THE KING (*lowering his eyes, dazzled by her beauty*):  
Are you a sorceress? You frighten me!  
Keep it and go!

MARION (*as she departs*): My Didier is saved!

THE KING: At last I have shown Cardinal Richelieu  
That I am King of France—

L'ANGELY: Who in a fright  
Made a mistake, and once did what was right!

### ACT III

SCENE—*A field by the castle of Beaugenoy. A great gap has been made in the outer wall, through which looms the castle-keep. Two workmen are covering the gap with a vast black cloth.*

A WORKMAN: If they would hang the two young gentlemen  
Outside the wall, the cardinal could see  
The execution without breaking down  
The ramparts in this way.

HIS MATE: Could he not come  
Through the great gate?

A WORKMAN: What! In a litter borne  
By four-and twenty men? No! Richelieu  
Travels in greater state than any king.  
He enters, like a conqueror, through the breach  
Made in the castles of our noblemen.  
He means to kill them all, they say.

HIS MATE: And now  
He comes in his great litter through this wall,  
To see these poor boys hanged? What cruelty!

A WORKMAN: Now come and see the gallows we  
have built.

*[As they depart, MARION arrives at the castle gate. She knocks, but before the door opens, LAFFEMAS, RICHELIEU'S agent, gallops up.]*

MARION: An order from the king.

THE GATEKEEPER: You cannot pass.

LAFFEMAS: An order from the cardinal.

THE GATEKEEPER: Pass in.

MARION: I have a pardon for two prisoners!

LAFFEMAS: And I the document revoking it!  
The cardinal is coming here to-night  
To see the execution. It is fixed  
For nine o'clock.

MARION: Then there is no more hope!  
Oh, God! Oh, God! My Didier must die!  
Nothing can save him!

LAFFEMAS: You can, Marion.  
Yes, you can still! I will let Didier escape  
If, Marion, you will——

MARION: No!

LAFFEMAS: Then he dies!

MARION: And if he lives, I lose him. (*A long silence.*)  
He shall live.

[*She goes into the castle with LAFFEMAS.  
DIDIER and SAVERNY appear, guarded by the  
jailer and his men. It is now night.*

THE JAILER (*in a whisper to SAVERNY*): You can  
escape. The Marquis of Nangis  
Has made all preparations for the flight.

SAVERNY: For both of us?

THE JAILER: No; only you. And that  
May cost me my own life.

SAVERNY: Well, save my friend.

THE JAILER: I cannot.

SAVERNY: Then I must remain with him.  
(*To DIDIER*) They will hang us, friend, to-night.

---

DIDIER: Are you sure,  
Saverny, she is Marion de Lorme?  
On your honour, are you sure?

SAVERNY: Yes, I am.  
I cannot understand you, Didier.  
Are you not proud to think that you have made  
So great a conquest?

DIDIER: And I thought she was  
As innocent as she was beautiful!

SAVERNY: She loves you. You should be content with  
that.

You will not die while Marion de Lorme  
Lives. And I hope that she will not forget  
I am your friend, but come and save me, too.

*[It grows darker SAVERNY falls asleep.  
MARION comes out of the gate carrying a  
bundle, and accompanied by DIDIER.]*

MARION: Put on these clothes. Richelieu has arrived;  
Can you not hear the guns announcing him?

DIDIER: Raise your eyes! Raise your eyes, and look at  
me!  
What sort of man, think you, am I? A fool,  
Or libertine?

MARION (*trembling, as she fixes her eyes  
passionately  
on his*): I love you Didier,  
More than my life. Your eyes are terrible.  
What have I done? Am I not your Marie?

DIDIER: Marie? Or Marion de Lorme?

MARION: Didier,  
Forgive me! I—I—meant to tell you all.  
I feared to lose you if you learnt my name.  
You had redeemed me by your love. I longed  
To raise all memories of my former self,  
And live a new life with you, Didier.  
For, oh, I love you, and I love you still,

Deeply and truly! Didier, be kind,  
Or you will kill me!

DIDIER: How have you obtained  
This favour for me? Why is Laffemas  
Risking his neck by letting me escape?

MARION: Not now! I cannot tell you now!  
Fly! Fly!  
Hark, they are coming! Do not stop to speak.  
Save yourself!

DIDIER: No; I have no wish to live!  
Thank God, here is the headsman!

[A HEADSMAN, carrying his axe, appears with  
a crowd of soldiers, officials, and SAVERNY.]

MARION (*falling to the earth*): Didier!

SAVERNY: What a shame  
To rob me of my sleep!

THE HEADSMAN (*grimly*): The time has come  
To put you both to bed.

SAVERNY (*gaily*): A headsman! Good!  
I like the axe much better than the rope.

DIDIER (*embracing him*): Good-bye, my friend!

MARION (*clinging to him*): And me! Didier, me!  
Will you not say good-bye to me?

DIDIER (*wildly, as the soldiers drag him off*): No! No!  
My heart is breaking! Oh, Marie, Marie!  
I love you. I was wrong!

MARION: You pardon me?

DIDIER: I ask your pardon. Think of me sometimes.  
Good-bye, my darling. [*He is dragged behind the wall.*]

AN OFFICIAL (*catching MARION in his arms as she  
falls*):

All hope is not lost.

Look, here is Richelieu! Go and plead with him.

*[The castle guns are fired. The cloth, hiding the great breach in the wall, drops. The CARDINAL comes in his gigantic scarlet litter, borne by twenty-four footguards. Scarlet curtains conceal him from the shouting mob.]*

MARION (*dragging herself on her knees to the litter*):  
In the name of God, oh, my Lord Cardinal,  
Pardon these two poor boys!

A VOICE (*from the litter*): No pardon!

*[The litter passes on, and the crowd surges through the wall after it. MARION is left alone.]*

## FOOTNOTES:

[J] Victor Hugo wrote "Marion de Lorme" in 1829, three months before he composed "Hernani." King Charles X., however, refused to license the play, because of the terrible way in which his ancestor, Louis XIII., was portrayed in it. But after the Revolution of 1830, and the success of "Hernani," the forbidden drama was produced on the stage. Its original title was "A Duel Under Richelieu." The whole play is built around the frustrated duel in which two young men engage against the edict of the great cardinal. This economy of stage-craft makes "Marion de Lorme" a superior work, in point of construction, to "Hernani." And though it may be less picturesque than that more famous example of the romantic drama, it is on the whole a finer effort of genius.

---

# Ruy Blas<sup>[K]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

DON SALLUST DE BAZAN		<i>President of the Magistrates</i>
RUY BLAS		<i>Lackey to Don Sallust</i>
DON CESAR DE BAZAN		<i>Cousin to Don Sallust</i>
DON MANUEL ARIAS	}	<i>Counsellors</i>
THE COUNT OF CAMPOREAL	}	
DOÑA MARIA, Queen of Spain		
<i>A crowd of Spanish Grandees, Counsellors, and Alguazils</i>		

## ACT I

SCENE—*A room in the palace of King Charles II., at Madrid,  
about 1695.*

DON SALLUST: So, after twenty years of constant toil,  
And twenty years of honour and high power,  
The weak hand of a woman strikes me down  
Into the dust. Dishonoured and exiled!  
And by the queen, a foolish, foreign girl  
Ignorant of our ways, who has no fear  
Because she has no knowledge. Had she guessed  
I had so many weapons of revenge  
That I am now perplexed which one to use,  
She would have been more careful. Poisoning,  
Of course, is easy; and when she was dead  
I could retrieve the power that I have lost.

But I would rather crush and conquer her  
Some other way; make her a very slave  
Obedient to my slightest wish, and rule  
The country in her name. The king is mad,  
And she will soon be regent. (*Calling*) Ruy Blas!

RUY BLAS (*appearing at the door*): Sir?

DON SALLUST: Order my men to gather up and pack  
My papers, books and documents! I leave  
The palace at the break of day. But you  
Must wait here till the queen comes through this room  
At morning, on her way to mass. Who's that?

[DON CESAR *enters, and he and RUY BLAS  
look at each other in surprise. Then, seeing  
he is not wanted, the lackey departs.*

DON CESAR: Well, here I am, dear cousin! Have you  
found,  
After a search of twenty years, a post  
Worthy of me? Upon the principle  
Of setting thieves to capture thieves, I'd make  
A splendid captain of your alguazils!

DON SALLUST: I know all your remarkable exploits,  
My cousin. Were I not chief magistrate,  
Your murders, thefts, and acts of brigandage  
Would long since have been punished, and Don Cesar,  
Count of Garofa—

DON CESAR: He died years ago.  
I now am Zafari.

DON SALLUST: Zafari can die,  
And Cesar, Count of Garofa, revive,  
And dazzle all the ladies of the court  
With his fine presence, and the wealth I'll give,  
If he will serve me, as a cousin should,  
Boldly and faithfully.

DON CESAR: Ah, this sounds well.  
Give me a hundred ducats to begin,  
And I am your man! What do you want of me?  
Some rival quietly despatched?

DON SALLUST: I need  
A daring, gallant and ambitious man  
To help me to avenge myself.

DON CESAR: On whom?

DON SALLUST: A woman.

DON CESAR: I have fallen very low,  
Don Sallust, but I have not come to that.  
Murder may be my trade, but to bring down  
A woman by a dastardly intrigue  
Is something I would never stoop to do!  
I am a wolf, maybe, but not a snake!

DON SALLUST: Give me your hand, my cousin! You  
have come  
Out of the ordeal I prepared for you  
Better than I expected.

DON CESAR: Then this plot  
Against a woman——

DON SALLUST: Merely was a test.  
I'll give you now the money you require.  
A hundred ducats, was it? I will fetch them.

*[He departs, and signs to RUY BLAS to enter.]*

DON CESAR: I knew you in your strange disguise,  
Ruy Blas.  
What are you doing here?

RUY BLAS: Ah, Zafari!  
Hunger has now compelled me to adopt  
The livery of a lackey. Don Sallust  
To-night engaged me as his servitor,

And brought me here. And I came, Zafari,  
Because—— (*He hesitates.*)

DON CESAR: You wanted food!

RUY BLAS: No. It was love  
I hungered for.

DON CESAR: There are some pretty maids  
In this great palace.

RUY BLAS: I am mad, mad, mad!  
I am in love, Zafari, with the queen—  
I, a lackey. Night after night I creep  
Into the royal park, and leave some flowers  
Upon her favourite seat. This evening  
I put a letter with them.

DON CESAR: My poor friend,  
You certainly are mad!

DON SALLUST (*opening the door slightly and pointing  
out DON CESAR to three armed alguazils as he  
whispers*): That is the man. Arrest him when he leaves.  
And kill him quickly. [*He then enters the room, and  
gives a purse to DON CESAR, saying: Here is what  
you want.*  
Call on me to-morrow.

DON CESAR (*giving RUY BLAS half the ducats*):  
Come with me.  
Be a free man again.

DON SALLUST (*in an aside*): The devil!

RUY BLAS (*refusing the money*): No;  
I never shall be a free man again.  
My heart is captive; I must stay on here.

DON CESAR: Well, each man to his fate. Your hand,  
old friend!

*[After shaking hands, he goes out—to his doom.]*

DON SALLUST: No one has seen you yet, I think, Ruy Blas,  
Clad in this livery?

RUY BLAS: No one, my lord.

DON SALLUST: Good! Shut the doors, and put on this attire.

*[Bringing out the costume of a nobleman of high rank, he helps his lackey to dress in it.]*

Splendid! You have a very gallant air,  
And you will make a perfect nobleman.  
Now listen. I've your interests at heart,  
And if you will obey me faithfully,  
You shall succeed in all that you desire.  
But stay. There is a letter I must send  
Before I leave Madrid. Write it for me.

*[RUY BLAS sits down at the table, and DON SALLUST dictates to him:]*

"My life is in great danger. You alone  
Can save me. Come this evening to my house.  
No one will recognise you if you use  
The side-door by the corner." Now sign it  
"Cesar," the name I commonly employ  
In love affairs.

RUY BLAS: Shall I address the note?

DON SALLUST: Ah, no! I must deliver it myself.  
Hark! There is someone coming. 'Tis the Queen!

*[Dragging RUY BLAS with him, he opens the door, and says to the noblemen surrounding the QUEEN:]*

Allow me to present to you, my friends,  
Don Cesar, Count of Garofa, my cousin.

## ACT II

SCENE.—*The Hall of Government in the palace at Madrid, six months after. The Privy Counsellors are sitting,—among them DON MANUEL ARIAS and the COUNT OF CAMPOREAL.*

DON MANUEL: How quickly he has climbed to  
supreme power!  
General Secretary, Minister,  
And now Duke of Olmedo!

CAMPOREAL: It is strange,  
A cousin of that fallen president,  
Don Sallust, could have won to such a height  
Within six months!

DON MANUEL: The queen reigns over us  
And he reigns, over her.

CAMPOREAL: That is not so.  
Don Cesar never sees the queen alone.  
I know it. I have had them watched by spies.  
They shun each other. Do you know, he lives  
By Tormez mansion, in a shuttered house,  
With two black mutes to wait on him?

DON MANUEL: Two mutes!  
He is, indeed, a terrible, strange man.  
And now to business! We must re-arrange  
Some of the taxes and monopolies.  
We want a fair division.

*[All the COUNSELLORS seat themselves.]*

A COUNSELLOR: I must have  
The salt monopoly.

CAMPOREAL: No; that is mine!  
You have the tax upon the trade in slaves.  
I'll change that for the arsenic, if you like.

[RUY BLAS *has entered at the beginning of the dispute: after listening some time he comes forward.*

RUY BLAS: You vile, rapacious gang of quarrelling thieves!

What! Can you rob the dead? Here by the grave  
Of the great empire that was Spain, you sit,  
Like greedy vultures, preying on her corpse!  
We were the conquerors of the world, but now  
Our army dwindled to four thousand men  
That never get their arms, their food, their pay,  
Is but a mob of brigands, and they live  
By pillaging their wretched countrymen.  
Our hardy peasantry is crushed beneath  
A load of taxes and monopolies,  
But not a ducat of the revenue  
Is spent on Spain. Bankrupt in wealth and power,  
Dead to all sense of honour, justice, right,  
She lies, while you, you foul hyenas, snarl  
Over her stricken body.

[*Turning to the COUNT OF CAMPOREAL, and the COUNSELLOR who was quarrelling with him, he says sternly:*

Let me not see  
Either of you again at court.

[*As they depart, RUY BLAS speaks to the other consternated COUNSELLORS:*

Every man  
Who will not serve Spain honestly must go.  
If there are any who will work with me  
In building up our country's power and fame,  
On equal laws for rich and poor alike,  
I shall be pleased to meet them in this room  
In two hours' time.

[*All the COUNSELLORS go out, bowing low to RUY BLAS as they pass by him. When he is*

*alone, the QUEEN comes from behind the  
tapestry; her face is radiant with joy.*

THE QUEEN: You spoke to them as I would like to  
speak

Were I a man. Oh, let me take, dear Duke,  
This loyal hand, so strong, and so sincere.

RUY BLAS: How did you hear me, madam?

THE QUEEN (*showing a secret door*): In this place  
That Philip made to watch his counsellors.  
How often have I seen poor Carlos here,  
Listening to the villains robbing him,  
And ruining the state!

RUY BLAS:           What did he say?

THE QUEEN: Nothing, but it drove him mad at last.  
But you! How masterful you were! The voice  
With which you thundered still rings in my ears.  
I raised the tapestry to look at you.  
You towered above them terrible and great,  
A king of men! What was it that inspired  
Such fury in you?

RUY BLAS:       Love for you, my queen!  
If Spain falls, you will fall with it. But I  
Will save it for your sake. Oh, I am mad!  
I love you! Love you with a love that eats  
The life out of me! God! What shall I do?  
Die? Shall I die? Pardon me! Pardon me!

THE QUEEN: No, live! Live for your country, and your  
queen!  
Both of us need you. For the last six months  
I have been watching from my hiding-place  
Your struggle with my treacherous counsellors,  
And seeing in you the master-mind of Spain, have,  
without consulting you, advanced  
Your interests. And now your strong, pure hands

Grasp all the reins of government and power,  
Perform the work entrusted unto you!  
Rescue our people from their misery.  
Raise Spain up from her grave; restore to her  
The strength that made her empress of the world;  
And love me as I love you—

RUY BLAS: Oh, my queen!

THE QUEEN: With a pure, steady, honourable love,  
Working and waiting with a patient heart  
Till I am free to marry you. Farewell!

*[She kisses him on the brow, and departs by  
the secret door.]*

### ACT III

SCENE.—*A small, dark room in the house lent by DON SALLUST  
to RUY BLAS. It is late at night, and RUY BLAS is pacing  
up and down in a state of wild agitation.*

RUY BLAS: I only am a pawn with which he plays  
Against the queen. He seeks to ruin her  
By means of me. No! I will save her yet.  
Save her and lose her! Cunning though you are,  
Don Sallust, you have overlooked one thing;  
Even a lackey will lay down his life  
To save a noble woman whom he loves  
From ruin and dishonour.

*[Going to the table, he pours something into  
glass.]*

Oh, my queen!  
Never more shall we meet upon this earth.

*[As he raises the glass to his lips, THE QUEEN  
enters.]*

THE QUEEN: Don Cesar!

RUY BLAS: Oh, my God, my God!

THE QUEEN: Fear not.

I shall protect you.

RUY BLAS: What has brought you here?

THE QUEEN: Your letter, Cesar.

RUY BLAS: Letter? I have sent

No letter.

THE QUEEN: What is this, then? Look and read.

*[She gives him the note he wrote for DON SALLUST as his lackey.]*

RUY BLAS (*reading it*): "My life is in great danger. You alone can save me."

THE QUEEN (*continuing*): "Come this evening to my house.

No one will recognise you if you use The side door by the corner." Here's your name, "Cesar."

RUY BLAS: Go! Go! It is a plot against you. I cannot now explain. Fly for your life!

THE QUEEN: But you are in great danger. No! I'll stay, And help you, Cesar.

RUY BLAS: Go, I tell you! Go! The letter is not mine. Who let you in?

DON SALLUST (*striding into the room*): I did.

RUY BLAS: Go, madam, while the way is clear.

DON SALLUST: It is too late. Doña Maria is No longer Queen of Spain.

THE QUEEN (*in terror*): What, then, am I?

DON SALLUST: A lady who has sold her throne for love.

RUY BLAS: No!

DON SALLUST (*whispering to RUY BLAS*): I am working in your interests.

(*Aloud to THE QUEEN*) Now listen, madam. I have found you here,

Alone with Cesar, in his room, at night.

This conduct—in a queen—would lead the Pope—

Were the fact published—to annul your marriage.

Why not avoid the scandal?

*[Taking a parchment from his pocket, he presents it to THE QUEEN.]*

Sign this deed

Admitting everything, and we can keep

All the proceedings secret. I have put

Plenty of money in the coach that waits

Outside the door. Ride off in it and take

Cesar with you, to France or Portugal.

No one will stop you. But if you refuse

Everything shall be published. Here's a pen.

*[He leads the terrified QUEEN to a writing-table, and puts a pen in her hand. RUY BLAS stands in a corner, motionless and bewildered.]*

THE QUEEN: Oh, I am lost! Lost, and yet innocent!

DON SALLUST: You lose a crown; but think of what you gain—

A life of love and peace and happiness.

Don Cesar loves you, and is worthy of you.

A man of noble race; almost a prince.

*[THE QUEEN is about to sign, but RUY BLAS snatches the pen from her hand, and tears up the parchment.]*

RUY BLAS: You must not sign it! This man lies to you. I am Ruy Blas, a common serving-man.

*[Turning fiercely on DON SALLUST.]*

No more of it, I say! I'll have no more!  
You mean, contemptible scoundrel! Tell the truth!

DON SALLUST: This creature is, in fact, my serving-  
man,  
Only he has blabbed too soon.

THE QUEEN: Great Heavens!

DON SALLUST: No matter. My revenge is good  
enough.

What do you think of it? Madrid will laugh!  
You exiled me, my lady; brought me down  
Into the dust. I'll drag you from the throne  
And hold you up—the laughing-stock of Spain!

*[While he is speaking RUY BLAS silently bolts  
the door; then, creeping behind DON  
SALLUST, he snatches his sword from the  
scabbard.]*

RUY BLAS: Insult the queen again, you wretch, and I  
Will kill you where you stand. You foul, black snake,  
Crawl in the further room and say your prayers.

*[DON SALLUST rushes towards the outer  
door; RUY BLAS pushes him back at the  
sword's point.]*

THE QUEEN: You are not going to slay him?

RUY BLAS: This affair  
Must be now settled once for all. Go in!

*[This to DON SALLUST, whom he has now  
almost driven into the further room.]*

DON SALLUST: Give me a sword, and let us fight it  
out.

RUY BLAS: Surely a nobleman would never stoop  
To fight a duel with his serving-man?  
No! I am going to kill you like a dog!

THE QUEEN: Spare him!

DON SALLUST: Help! Murder! Help!

RUY BLAS: Have you done?

[DON SALLUST *leaps at* RUY BLAS, *and the two men reel into the further room, and the door closes behind them.* THE QUEEN *covers her face.*

THE QUEEN: Oh, God!

[*There is a silence.* RUY BLAS *returns without the sword.*

RUY BLAS (*falling on his knees*): Pardon me, madam, pardon me!

I am less guilty than I seem. At heart,  
I am an honest man. My love for you  
Led me into the trap that villain laid.  
Will you not pardon me?

THE QUEEN: No!

RUY BLAS: Never?

THE QUEEN: No!

[*Staggering to the table, he seizes the glass and drains it.*

RUY BLAS: Well, that is over, then.

THE QUEEN (*running up to him*): What have you done?

RUY BLAS: Nothing. But, oh, to think you loved me once!

THE QUEEN: What was there in that glass? I love you still!  
What was it? Poison? Tell me.

RUY BLAS (*as she clasps him*): Yes, my queen.

THE QUEEN: Then I have killed you! But I love you now!  
More than before. Had I but pardoned you—

RUY BLAS: I should have drunk the poison all the same.

I could not bear to live. Good-bye!

*[He falls down, and THE QUEEN holds him up in her arms.]*

Fly! Fly!

No one will know. That door.

*>[He tries to point to it, but sinks back in the agony of death.]*

THE QUEEN (*throwing herself on him*): Ruy Blas!

RUY BLAS (*reviving at the sound of his name*):

Thanks! Thanks! *[He dies.]*

#### FOOTNOTES:

[K] In appearance, "Ruy Blas" is a pendant to "Hernani." In the earlier play, Victor Hugo gives a striking picture of the Spanish nobility in the days of its power and splendour. In the later drama, which he composed in 1838, he depicts in lurid light the corruption into which that nobility afterwards fell. But, as a matter of fact, "Ruy Blas" is a violent party pamphlet with a direct bearing on the French politics of the thirties. It is the decadent French nobility—vanquished in the revolution of 1830—that Hugo really attacks; and Ruy Blas himself is a representative Frenchman of the era of romanticism. Stendhal (Vol. VIII) was the first writer to study this new type of character—the young man of the lower middle classes, full of grandiose dreams and wild ambitions and strange weaknesses, who thought to arrive by intrigue at the high position which the great soldiers of the preceding generation had won on the battlefield. Balzac (Vol. I) elaborated the character in his "Human Comedy"; and Hugo, by ennobling and enlarging it, created the sombre, magnificent figure of Ruy Blas.

---

# The King Amuses Himself<sup>[L]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

FRANÇOIS I., *King of France*

TRIBOULET, *his jester*

BLANCHE, *Triboulet's daughter*

SALTABADIL, *an assassin*

MAGUELONNE, *his sister*

DAME BERARDE

*A woman; a man; a crowd of people*

## ACT I

SCENE.—TRIBOULET, *the ugly little hunchback jester to KING FRANÇOIS, has stolen from the Louvre to a secluded house in a remote part of Paris. He takes out the key to open the door, then stops and glances round uneasily.*

TRIBOULET: I thought I heard a footstep.  
Blanche must go  
Back to the country. In this wild, rough town  
My little lonely girl may come to harm.  
I was a fool to bring her here. A fool!  
Ah, if she learns what a vile part I play  
In this vile city—sees her father dressed  
In patchwork, using his deformities  
To make sport for a proud, vain, wicked king.  
Oh, how I hate the man who laughs at me!  
When I am sick and miserable, and creep  
Into some corner to bewail my lot,  
He kicks me out into the light, and cries,

"Amuse me, fool!" Some day I shall go mad,  
And kill——

[SALTABADIL, *who has been following him,*  
*comes forward and bows.*

SALTABADIL: Your servant, sir!

TRIBOULET (*startled*): What! Who are you?

SALTABADIL: Excuse me. I have watched you for a  
week  
Come to this house at evening. Every time  
You seem afraid some foe is following you.

TRIBOULET (*still more startled*): What do you want?  
Who are you? Go away!

SALTABADIL: I want to help you. Do you need a  
sword?  
I am an honest man, and at a price  
I'll rid you of your enemy.

TRIBOULET (*relieved by the bravo's air*): What price?

SALTABADIL: According to the job. If he is armed  
'Tis best to get my sister, Maguelonne,  
To help me. She will lure him to our house——

TRIBOULET: I understand.

SALTABADIL (*confidentially*): No noise, you see; no  
risk.  
Give me your custom, sir, and you will find  
I do the work better than any man  
In Paris.

TRIBOULET: But at present I've no need——

SALTABADIL: Well, think about it. I am Saltabadil.  
I wait for clients every day at noon  
By the Hôtel du Maine.

TRIBOULET: Good-night to you.

SALTABADIL: Believe me, I am honest. Times are bad;  
I have four children, and at least my trade  
Is better than mere beggary.

TRIBOULET: Of course.  
One must bring up one's children.

SALTABADIL: Thanks. Good-night.

*[He departs. TRIBOULET then opens the door leading into a courtyard, and knocks at an inner entrance. This is opened by a charming young girl, who throws herself into the jester's arms.]*

TRIBOULET: My daughter! When I see your sweet,  
bright face  
My grief and trouble vanish. Kiss me, Blanche;  
I am in need of love. Have you been out?

BLANCHE: Only to church. It is so dull in town  
That, were it not for you, dear, I should like  
To go back to Chinon.

TRIBOULET: It would be best;  
put now I could not live in solitude.  
My darling, I have no one in the world  
But you to love me!

*[Hiding his face in his hands, he weeps.]*

BLANCHE: Father, trust in me.  
Tell me your name and calling. Every night  
You come by stealth to see me; every day  
You disappear. Oh, how it troubles me  
To see you weep!

TRIBOULET: You would be troubled more  
If you could see me laugh! No, no, my child!  
Know me but as your father; let me be  
Something that you can venerate and love.

BLANCHE: My father!

TRIBOULET: But I cannot stay to-night;  
I only came to see if you were safe.  
Good-bye, my darling! Do not leave the house.

*[While he is speaking, KING FRANÇOIS glides into the courtyard, and hides behind a tree there. He is dressed like a student.]*

BLANCHE: Good-bye, my father!

THE KING: Father! Triboulet Her father! What a joke!

TRIBOULET: May God guard you!

*[He kisses her again and departs. BLANCHE stands at the door watching him, and DAME BERARDE, her housekeeper, joins her.]*

BLANCHE: I have not told him.

DAME BERARDE: What?

BLANCHE: That a young man  
Follows me when I come from church.

DAME BERARDE (*laughing*): You wish  
To chase this handsome man away?

BLANCHE: Ah, no!  
I think he loves me. Oh, when Sunday comes  
I shall be happy!

DAME BERARDE: I should think he was  
Some noble lord.

BLANCHE: No! Lords, my father says,  
Are men of little faith or honesty.  
I hope he is a poor young scholar, filled  
With noble thoughts rather than noble blood.  
How long it is to Sunday! Would he were  
Kneeling before me here. I then would say  
Be happy, for I——

*[The KING comes from behind the tree, and kneels before her.]*

THE KING: Love you! Say it sweet:  
I love you!

BLANCHE: If my father comes! Ah, go!

THE KING: Go? When my life is bound to yours?  
Sweet Blanche,  
There is one heavenly thing alone on earth,  
And that is love. Glory and wealth and power  
Are base and worthless when compared with it.  
Blanche, it is happiness your lover brings,  
Happiness, shyly waiting on your wish.  
Life is a flower, and love the honey of life.  
Come, let us taste it, mouth to mouth, my sweet.

*[Taking her in his arms, he kisses her.]*

BLANCHE: I do not know your name. Are you a lord?  
My father does not like them.

THE KING (*confused*): Yes.... My name—  
Gaucher Mahiet, a poor young scholar.

DAME BERARDE:           Look!  
Someone is coming.

*[It is TRIBOULET. Seeing his daughter in the arms of a man, he rushes forward with a terrible cry. KING FRANÇOIS leaves BLANCHE, and, brushing past the jester, who staggers as he catches a glimpse of his face, hastens away.]*

TRIBOULET: The King! Oh, God, the King!

*[Then, in a sort of madness, he mutters to himself.]*

That man that spoke to me ... Hôtel du Maine;  
At noon ... yes; in his house ... no noise, no risk ...  
Oh, King François, the grave is dug for you!

## ACT II

SCENE.—*A tumble-down inn on the outskirts of Paris by the edge of the Seine. The scene is represented on the stage in a sort of section, so that the spectator sees everything that goes on in the interior of the inn, as well as on the road outside. Besides this, the building is so cracked and ruined that any passer-by can see into the room through the holes in the wall. It is night. TRIBOULET and his daughter appear in the road. SALTABADIL is sitting in the inn.*

TRIBOULET: I will avenge you, Blanche.

BLANCHE: He cannot be  
False and untrue.

TRIBOULET (*whispering, as he leads her to a hole in the wall*):

Come. See with your own eyes,  
What kind of man our great King François is.

BLANCHE (*whispering, as she sees only SALTABADIL*):  
I only see a stranger.

TRIBOULET: Wait awhile.

[*As he whispers, KING FRANÇOIS enters the room by a little door leading from an inner chamber.*

BLANCHE: Father!

[*She trembles, and follows with angry eyes the movements of THE KING.*

TRIBOULET: This is the man you wish to save.

THE KING (*slapping SALTABADIL on the back*):  
Tell Maguelonne to bring me in some wine.

TRIBOULET: King by the grace of God he is, with all  
The wealth and splendour of the land of France

At his command; but to amuse himself  
He drinks himself asleep in thieves' kitchens.

THE KING (*singing while TRIBOULET talks outside*):  
Oh, woman is fickle, and man is a fool  
To trust in her word!  
She changes without any reason or rule,  
As her fancies are stirred.  
A weather-cock veering to every wind  
Is constant and true when compared to her mind.

>[*While he sings MAGUELONNE enters with a skin of wine. SALTABADIL goes out, and seeing TRIBOULET, approaches him with an air of mystery. BLANCHE continues to watch THE KING.*

SALTABADIL: We've caught our man! And now it rests  
with you  
To let him live or die.

TRIBOULET (*looking at BLANCHE*): Wait for a while.

THE KING (*to MAGUELONNE*):  
Life is a flower and love the honey of life;  
Come, let us taste it, mouth to mouth, my sweet.

[*He tries to kiss her, but she escapes.*

MAGUELONNE: You got that from a book.

THE KING: Your dark, sweet eyes  
Inspired me! It was only yesterday  
We met at the Hôtel du Maine, and yet  
I love you with as passionate a love  
As if we had been sweethearts all our lives.  
Come, let me kiss you!

MAGUELONNE (*sitting herself gaily on the table where he is drinking*): When you have drunk your wine.

[*THE KING empties the flagon of drugged liquor, and with a mocking laugh the girl*

*jumps down and sits on his knee.*

THE KING: Oh, you delicious, fascinating thing.  
What a wild dance you've led me! Feel my heart  
Seating with love for you!

MAGUELONNE: And for a score  
Of other women!

THE KING: No, for you alone!

*[BLANCHE cannot bear to look at them any longer. Pale and trembling, she turns away, and falls into her father's arms.]*

BLANCHE: Oh, God, how he deceived me! My heart  
breaks.

All that he said to me he now repeats  
To this low, shameless slut. He is a man  
Without a soul.

TRIBOULET (*in a whisper*): Hush, hush! or he will  
hear!  
You leave him in my hands then?

BLANCHE: What is it  
You mean to do?

TRIBOULET: Avenge you and myself!  
Run home and dress yourself in the boy's clothes  
Prepared for you. Take all the gold you find,  
And ride to Evreux, and there wait for me.

BLANCHE (*entreatingly*): Come with me, father!

TRIBOULET (*sternly*): I have work to do,  
Terrible work! Do not return for me,  
But ride your horse as fast as it will go.

BLANCHE: I am afraid.

TRIBOULET: Obey me, Blanche! Good-bye!

*[He kisses her, and she staggers away.]*  
TRIBOULET *then signs to* SALTABADIL, *who*

*comes running up, and gives him ten crowns  
in gold.*

TRIBOULET: Here is half of the sum. I'll bring the rest  
When you hand me the body in a sack.

SALTABADIL: It shall be done to-night.

TRIBOULET: At midnight, then.

*[He goes in. During this scene outside, the  
drowsy KING has been flirting with  
MAGUELONNE. She jumps off his knee as  
SALTABADIL enters. TRIBOULET departs.]*

SALTABADIL: What a wild night! The rain is pouring  
down  
In torrents.

THE KING (*sleepily*): You must find me a bed.

MAGUELONNE (*in a fierce whisper*): Go! Go!

THE KING: What? And be drowned? You are unkind,  
my sweet.

SALTABADIL (*Whispering to his sister*):  
Keep him here. We have twenty golden crowns  
To earn to-night. (*To KING FRANÇOIS*) Sir, you can have  
my room.

THE KING: Ah, you are kinder than your sister is!  
Show me the bed.

*[SALTABADIL takes the lamp and leads him  
upstairs.]*

SALTABADIL: This way.

MAGUELONNE (*in the darkness*): Poor, poor young  
man!

*[SALTABADIL returns with the lamp. He sits at  
the table in silence; his sister watches him.]*

MAGUELONNE (*fiercely*): You must not kill him!

SALTABADIL: Twenty golden crowns!  
Look, here are ten of them! The rest I get  
At midnight. Pest! There is no time to lose.  
Quick, sew this sack! My client will return  
In a few minutes.

*[Terrified by his look, she takes up the sack  
and begins to mend it. There is again a  
silence, and in the sinister and momentary  
radiance of the lightning the figure of  
BLANCHE is seen approaching the inn. She is  
dressed in a man's clothes, and booted and  
spurred.]*

BLANCHE: Terrible work to do! I cannot go.  
Father, I cannot! Oh, this horrible dream!  
Let me awake from it ere I go mad.  
This dream, this horrible dream!

*[Seeing the light from the window, she totters  
up to the hole in the wall and looks in again.]*

God! it

is true!

There they are! There!—the man with murderous looks,  
The girl with shameless eyes! Where is the king?

*[Her cries are drowned in the thunder.]*

MAGUELONNE: Brother!

SALTABADIL: Yes.

MAGUELONNE: Do not kill him.

SALTABADIL: Ten more crowns!

MAGUELONNE: He is worth more than that.  
Handsome and young,  
And noble too, I'll take my oath on it.  
Besides, he loves me.

SALTABADIL: Get on with the sack.

MAGUELONNE: You only want the money. Take and kill  
The little hunchback when he comes with it.

BLANCHE: My father!

SALTABADIL (*angrily*): What! Am I a common thief?  
Kill my own client? I will have you know,  
My sister, that I am an honest man.  
I do the work I'm paid for.

[*Drawing his dagger, he goes towards the stairs.*]

MAGUELONNE (*barring the way*): Stop, I say!  
Or I will go and rouse him.

BLANCHE: Good, brave girl!

SALTABADIL: Well, let us make a bargain,  
Maguelonne.  
If anyone comes knocking at our inn  
By midnight, he shall go into the sack.  
My client only wants to fling some corpse  
Into the river, and on this wild night  
He will not see what he is throwing in.

MAGUELONNE: It is just on the hour. No one will  
come.  
Cannot you ram this faggot in the sack?

SALTABADIL: Who would take that for a limp body?  
No!  
Either a traveller or the man upstairs.  
That is all! Will you take the chance?

MAGUELONNE (*weeping*): I must.

BLANCHE: Oh, God, I cannot! No! I am too young.  
He does not love me.

[*A church-bell begins to chime the hour.*]

SALTABADIL: Midnight!

MAGUELONNE: Hark, a knock!

BLANCHE (*stumbling to the door*):  
My father hates him.... Perhaps it will not hurt,  
If they strike hard and kill me at a blow.  
Oh, if he only loved me!

MAGUELONNE (*opening the door*): Who is there?

BLANCHE: Give me a shelter for the night.

MAGUELONNE: Come in.

[*She enters. As she crosses the threshold,  
SALTABADIL raises his dagger, and the  
curtain falls.*]

### ACT III

SCENE.—*The same; but when the curtain rises, only the outside  
of the inn is now seen. It is unlighted; everything is in  
darkness.*

TRIBOULET (*knocking at the door*): Make haste!

SALTABADIL (*bringing out a sack*): Here is your man.

TRIBOULET (*helping him carry it*): Give me a light.  
I want to see him—is he really dead?

SALTABADIL: We must not use a light. We might be  
seen.

Where is the money?

TRIBOULET (*giving him a bag*): Here. (*Looking at  
the sack*) I have you at last!

Long have I waited for this happy hour!

SALTABADIL: Come, throw it in the Seine!

TRIBOULET: I want no help.  
Your part is done. Leave me alone.

SALTABADIL: Quick, then!  
Somebody may come by. Is the man mad?

[TRIBOULET *has knelt down in the mud by the sack. The rain streams on him, and his face, convulsed with hideous joy, is illumined by the lightning.* SALTABADIL *enters the inn and shuts the door.*

TRIBOULET (*feeling the sack*): Yes! I can feel his spurs. It is the King!  
Now let the heavens break above my head,  
And the earth rock and open at my feet!  
The vengeance of a clown shakes the whole world!  
François, the pivot on which Europe turns,  
Is broken. German, Spaniard, and Turk  
Can make a slaughterhouse of Christendom.  
The King of France is dead!

[*Leaping up in a fury, he kicks the sack.*

François the First,  
Do you remember how you treated me?  
Who is the dog now, eh?—the dog to kick  
And tumble about to make the courtiers laugh?  
You liked my daughter, did you? A clown's brat  
Found favour with a king! You stooped too low.  
This is the road that you must take.

[*He drags the sack to the parapet. While he is doing so, MAGUELONNE opens the door of the inn and lets out THE KING, who goes off singing gaily in the opposite direction.*

TRIBOULET (*lifting the sack on the parapet, to push it over*): Go down!

THE KING: Oh, woman is fickle, and man is a fool  
To trust in her word!

TRIBOULET: Oh, God! Whose voice is that?

[*He pulls back the sack.*

THE KING (*now unseen in the darkness*): She changes  
without any reason or rule,  
As her fancies are stirred.

TRIBOULET: He has escaped! (*Running up to the  
inn*) Accursed villains, you have cheated me! (*He  
pulls at the door, but it will not open.*)

Who have they put in the sack?

[*He returns to it.*

Some innocent wayfarer? I must see.

[*He tears open the sack, and peers into it.*

It is too dark (*wildly*). Has no one got a light?

[*As he is dragging the body out of the sack  
the lightning irradiates it.*

My daughter! God! My daughter! No, Blanche, no!  
I sent you to Evreux. It is not her.

[*The lightning again flashes out, and clearly  
shows the pale face and closed eyes of the  
girl.*

Speak, for the love of God! Speak! Oh, the blood!  
Blanche, are you hurt? Speak to me! Blanche!

BLANCHE (*opening her eyes*): Where am I? Father!

[*She tries to rise, but falls back groaning.*

TRIBOULET *takes her in his arms.*

TRIBOULET: Blanche, have they struck you?  
It is too dark to see.

BLANCHE (*in a broken, gasping voice*):  
The dagger struck me ... but I ...  
Saved the king ...  
I love him. Father ... have they let him live?

TRIBOULET: I cannot understand.

BLANCHE: It was my fault ...  
Forgive me ... father, I——

*[She struggles, speechless, in the agony of death.]*

TRIBOULET (*shrieking*): Help! Help! Oh, help!

*[Rushing to the ferry-bell by the riverside, he rings it madly. The people in the cottages around come running out in wild alarm.]*

A WOMAN: What is it? Is she wounded?

A MAN: She is dead.

TRIBOULET (*taking the lifeless body in his arms and hugging it to his breast*): I have killed my child! I have killed my child!

## FOOTNOTES:

[L] Victor Hugo was a man with a remarkable aptitude for divining the real course of popular feeling and giving violent expression to it. It was this that made him one of the leaders of the modern republican movement in France. Precluded by his earlier works from attacking the monarchy openly, he set about discrediting it by a series of historical plays in which the French kings were depicted in a sinister light. In "Marion de Lorme" he holds up the weakest of the Bourbons to bitter contempt; in "The King Amuses Himself" ("Le roi s'amuse"), produced in 1832, he satirises the most brilliant of the Valois—François I. The portrait is a clever but one-sided piece of work; it is based on facts; but not on all the facts. It is true that François used to frequent low taverns and mix in disreputable company, but he was also the most chivalrous king of his age, and a man of fine tastes in art and letters. Nevertheless, the play is one of the best of Victor Hugo's by reason of the strange and terrible character of the king's jester, Triboulet. This ugly little hunchback is surely a memorable figure in literature. The horror and pity which he excites as he sits by the river in the storm and darkness, rejoicing in the consummation of his scheme of revenge, have something of that awfulness which is the note of veritable tragedy. The scene is a superb example of dramatic irony.

---

# The Legend of the Ages<sup>[M]</sup>

## *Conscience*

Cain, flying from the presence of the Lord,  
Came through the tempest to a mountain land;  
And being worn and weary with the flight,  
His wife and children cried to him, and said:  
"Here let us rest upon the earth and sleep."  
And, folded in the skin of beasts, they slept.  
But no sleep fell on Cain; he raised his head,  
And saw, amid the shadows of the night,  
An eye in heaven sternly fixed on him.  
"I am too near," he said, with trembling voice.  
Rousing his weary children and worn wife,  
He fled again along the wilderness.  
For thirty days and thirty nights he fled.  
Silent and pale, and shuddering at a sound,  
He walked with downcast eyes, and never  
turned  
To look behind him. On the thirtieth day  
He came unto the shore of a great sea.  
"Here we will live," he said. "Here we are safe.  
Here on the lonely frontier of the world!"  
And, sitting down, he gazed across the sea,  
And there, on the horizon, was the eye  
Still fixed on him. He leaped up, wild with fear,  
Crying, "Oh, hide me! Hide me!" to his sons.  
And Jabal, the tent-maker, sheltered him  
Within his tent, and fastened down with stones  
The flapping skins. But Cain still saw the eye  
Burning upon him through the leathern tent.  
And Enoch said, "Come, let us build with stone,  
A city with a wall and citadel,

And hide our father there, and close the gates."  
Then Tubalcain, the great artificer,  
Quarried the granite, and with iron bands  
Bound the huge blocks together, and he made  
A city, with a rampart like a hill  
Encircling it, and towers that threw a shade  
Longer than any mountain's on the plain.  
Deep in the highest and the strongest tower,  
Cain was enclosed. "Can the eye see you now?"  
His children asked him. "Yes, it is fixed on me,"  
He answered. And with haggard face he crept  
Out of the tower, and cried unto his sons,  
"I will go down into the earth, and live  
Alone, within a dark and silent tomb.  
No one shall ever see my face again,  
And I will never look at anything."

They made a vaulted tomb beneath the earth,  
And he was lowered into it; the hole  
Above his head was closed; but in the tomb  
Cain saw the eye still sternly fixed on him.

### *Eviradnus*

When John the Striker, lord of Lusace, died,  
Leaving his kingdom to his gentle niece,  
Mahaud, great joy there was in all the land;  
For she was beautiful, and sweet and young,  
Kind to the people, and beloved by them.  
But Sigismund, the German emperor,  
And Ladislas of Poland were not glad.  
Long had they coveted the wide domains  
Of John the Striker; and Eviradnus,  
The tall, white-haired Alastian warrior,  
Home from his battles in the Holy Land,

Heard, as he wandered through the castle  
grounds,  
Strange talk between two strangers—a lute-  
player  
And troubadour—who with their minstrelsy  
Had charmed the lovely lady of Lusace.  
And she was taking them with her that night  
To Corbus Castle—an old ruined keep  
From which her race was sprung. Ere she was  
crowned,  
An ancient custom of the land required  
Mahaud to pass the night in solitude  
At Corbus, where her ancestors reposed,  
Amid the silence of the wooded hills  
On which the stronghold stands. Being afraid  
Of the ordeal, Mahaud took with her  
The two strange minstrels, so that they might  
make  
Music and mirth until she fell asleep.  
An old priest, cunning in the use of herbs,  
Came with her to the border of the wood,  
And gave her a mysterious wine to drink  
To make her slumber till the break of day,  
When all the people of Lusace would come  
And wake her with their shouts, and lead her  
forth  
To the cathedral where she would be crowned.

---

To enter Corbus on this solemn night,  
Or linger in the woods encircling it,  
Was death to any man. Eviradnus  
Did not fear death. Opening the castle gate  
He strode into the chamber where Mahaud  
Would have to pass the night. Two long, dim  
lines  
Of armed and mounted warriors filled the hall,

Each with his lance couched ready for the  
    shock,  
And sternly silent. Empty panoplies  
They were, in which the lords of old Lusace  
Had lived and fought and died, since the red  
    days  
When Attila, from whom their race was sprung,  
Swept over Europe. Now, on effigies  
Of the great war-horses they loved and rode,  
Their armoured image sat; and eyeless holes  
Gaped in their visors, black and terrible.  
Seizing the leader of this spectral host,  
Eviradnus dragged his clanging body down,  
And hid it; and then leaped upon the horse.  
And with closed visor, motionless mail and  
    lance  
Clenched in his gauntlet, he appeared  
    transformed  
Into an iron statue, like the rest,  
As through the open window came the sound  
Of lute-playing and laughter, and a song  
Sung by the troubadour, rang righ and clear:

Come, and let us dream a dream!  
    Mount with me, and ride away,  
By the winding moonlight stream,  
    Through the shining gates of day!

Come, the stars are bright above!  
    All the world is in our scope.  
We have horses—joy and love!  
    We have riches—youth and hope!

Mount with me, and ride away,  
    Through the greenness and the dew;  
Through the shining gates of day,  
    To the land where dreams come true!

"Look!" cried Mahaud, as she came in the hall  
With the two minstrels. "It is terrible!  
Sooner would I have lost my crown than come  
Alone at midnight to this dreadful place."  
"Does this old iron," said the troubadour,  
Striking the armour of Eviradnus,  
"Frighten you?" "Leave my ancestors in peace!"  
Exclaimed Mahaud. "A little man like you  
Must not lay hands on them." The troubadour  
Grew pale with anger, but the tall lute-player  
Laughed, and his blue eyes flamed upon  
Mahaud.  
"Now I must sleep," she said, "the priest's  
strange wine  
Begins to make me drowsy. Stay with me!  
Stay and watch over me all night, my friends."  
"Far have we travelled," said the troubadour,  
"In hopes to be alone with you to-night."  
And his dark face lightened with a grim smile,  
When, as he spoke, Mahaud fell fast asleep.  
"I'll take the girl," he cried to the lute-player,  
"And you can have the land! Are you content?"  
"Yes," said the lute-player, "but love is sweet."  
"Revenge is sweeter!" cried the troubadour.  
"A little man like me!" Those were her words.  
Neither as queen nor empress shall she reign!  
I swore it when she flouted me. She dies!"  
"I cannot kill her," said the lute-player,  
"I love her." "So do I!" the other said.  
"I love her and hate her. If she lived,  
There would be war between us two. She dies!  
We love her; we must kill her." As he spoke  
The troubadour pulled at a ring, and raised  
A flagstone in the floor. "I know this place,"  
He said. "A lord of Lusace had this trap  
Made for his enemies. 'Twill serve our need!  
Help me to lift her. All the land is yours."

"Look!" screamed the lute-player. "Oh, God!  
Oh, God!"

The troubadour turned round, and his knees  
shook.

One of the iron images had leapt  
Down from its lifeless horse, and with drawn  
sword

And clank of armour, it now drove at them.

"King Ladislas and Emperor Sigismund!"

It shouted in a terrible voice that fell

Upon them like a judgment from on high.

They grovelled at its iron feet, and shrieked,

"Mercy! Oh, mercy!" And Eviradnus,

Doffing his helmet and cuirass, exclaimed,

"I am a man and not an iron ghost!

It sickens me to see such cowardice

In the two greatest conquerors of the age.

Look! I have taken all my armour off;

Meet me like men, and use what arms you will."

"'Tis only an old man," said Ladislas.

"Hold him in front, while I strike from behind."

Eviradnus laid down his sword, to loose

The last piece of his armour, and the Pole

Ran at him with a dagger; with one hand

The old man gripped the little king, and shook

The life out of him. Then, as Sigismund

Snatched up his sword, and left him still

unarmed,

Eviradnus stooped, and, seizing the dead king,

He whirled him by the feet, like a huge club.

Stricken with terror, Sigismund recoiled

Into the open trap. Eviradnus

Flung his strange weapon after him, and they

fell,

The living emperor, and the lifeless king,

Into the dark abyss. Closing the stone,

Eviradnus put on his mail, and set

The hall in order. And when he had placed  
The iron image on its horse, the dawn  
Gleamed through the windows, and the noise  
And murmur of the people of Lusace  
Coming with branches of green broom to greet  
Their lady, filled the air. Mahaud awoke.  
"Where is my troubadour and lute-player?"  
She said. Eviradnus bent over her,  
His old grey eyes shining with tenderness.  
"Lady," he said, "I hope that you slept well?"

### *The Temple of the Captives*

The high-priest said unto the King of Kings:  
"We need a temple to commemorate  
Your glorious victories." The King of Kings  
Called unto him the captives he had made,  
And bade them build the temple, and he asked:  
"Is there a man among you who can plan  
And raise this monument unto my fame?"  
"No," said they. "Kill a hundred of these  
slaves!"

The King of Kings exclaimed. And this was  
done.

One of the captives promised then to build  
A temple on the mountain looking down  
Upon the city of the King of Kings.  
Loaded with chains, the prisoners were dragged  
Along the streets and up the mountain track,  
And there they toiled with grim and angry eyes,  
Cutting a building in the solid rock.

"'Tis but a cavern!" said the King of Kings.

"We found a lion's lair," the captive said,

"And fashioned it into your monument.

Enter, O King of Kings, and see the work

Your slaves have built for you!" The conqueror

And captive entered. To a royal throne  
The King of Kings was led, that he might view  
The temple; and the builder flung himself  
Face downwards at his feet. Then, suddenly,  
The throne began to sink below the floor.  
"Where are we going?" said the King of Kings.  
"Down the deep pit into the inner hall!"  
The captive said. A sound like thunder rang  
Above them, and the King of Kings exclaimed:  
"What noise was that?" "The block of stone  
That covers in this pit," the captive said,  
"Has fallen in its place!" The King of Kings  
Groped in the darkness, and with trembling  
voice  
He asked: "Is there no way out of this pit?"  
"Surely," the captive said, "the King of Kings,  
Whose hands are swift like lightning, and whose  
feet  
Tread down all nations, can find out a way?"  
"There is no light, no sound, no breath of air!"  
Cried out the King of Kings. "Why is it dark  
And cold within the temple to my fame?"  
"Because," the captive said, "it is your tomb!"

### *Jean Chouan*

The work of pacifying Brittany  
Was going on; and children, women, men,  
Fled from the revolutionary troops  
In wild disorder. Over a bare plain  
And up a hill, swept by the guns of France,  
They ran, and reached the shelter of a wood.  
There they re-formed—the peasant royalists.  
And then Jean Chouan, who was leading them,  
Cried: "Is there any missing?" "No," they said,

Counting their numbers. "Scatter along the  
wood!"

Jean Chouan cried again. The women caught  
Their babies to their breasts, and the old men  
Tottered beside the children. Panic, fear  
Possessed the broken, flying peasantry.  
Only Jean Chouan stayed behind to watch  
The movements of the enemy. He stood  
Silent in prayer below the sheltering hill;  
A tall, wild figure, with his long, loose hair  
Streaming upon the wind. And suddenly,  
A cry rang shrill and keen above the roar  
Of the French guns. A woman's cry it was;  
And, looking from the hill, Jean Chouan saw  
A woman labouring, with bare, torn feet,  
And haggard, terror-stricken face, to reach  
A refuge in the forest. Up the hill,  
Swep by the French artillery, she toiled,  
And the shells burst around her. "She is lost!"  
Jean Chouan murmured. "She will be destroyed  
Before she reaches shelter. Oh, the brutes,  
To mass their fire upon a woman's head!"

---

Then on the height that overlooked the plain,  
Jean Chouan sprang, and stood against the sky,  
Fearless and proud, superb and motionless,  
And cried, "I am Jean Chouan!" The French  
troops

Gazed for a moment in astonishment  
At his tall figure. "Yes, it is the chief!"  
They said to one another, as they turned  
Their guns upon him. "Save yourself!" he cried,  
"My sister, save yourself!" as, mad with fright,  
The woman stumbled onward. Like a pine  
Too strongly rooted in the rock to bend  
Or break beneath the fury of the storm,

He towered amid the hurricane of death  
That roared and flamed around him. "I will wait  
Until you gain the forest!" he exclaimed.  
The woman hastened. Over the hill she crept,  
And staggered down the valley. "Is she safe?"  
Jean Chouan shouted, as a bullet passed  
Right through his body. Standing still erect,  
He waited, with a smile upon his lips,  
The answer. When some voices in the wood  
Cried, "Jeanne is safe. Return!" Jean Chouan  
said,  
"Ave Maria!" and then fell down dead.

### *Civil War*

"Kill him!" the mob yelled. "Kill him!" as they  
surged  
In fury round their prisoner. Unmoved  
And unafraid he stood: a constable  
Of Paris, captured by the Communards.  
His hands were black with gunpowder; his  
clothes  
Were red with blood. A simple, fearless man,  
Charged with the task of carrying out the law,  
He gave no quarter, and he asked for none.  
All the day he had fought against the mob  
That swept with sword and flame along the  
streets  
Of Paris, while the German conqueror  
Battered on France. A woman sprang at him,  
And shrieked, "You have been killing us!"  
"That's true,"  
The man replied. "Come, shoot him here!" she  
screamed.  
"No! Farther on! At the Bastille!" "No! Here!"  
And while the crowd disputed, the man said:

"Kill me just where you like; but kill me quick."

"Yes!" cried the woman, "shoot him where he stands.

He is a wolf!" "A wolf that has been caught,"

The prisoner said, "by a vile pack of curs!"

"The wretch insults us!" yelled the furious mob.

"Down with him! Death! Death! Death!" And  
with clenched fists

They struck him on the face. An angry flame

Gleamed in his eyes, but, silent and superb,

He marched along the street amid the howls

Of the ferocious, maddened multitude!

God! How they hated him! To shoot him seemed

Too light a sentence, as he calmly strode

Over the corpses of their comrades strewn

Along the street. "How many did you kill?"

They shrieked at him. "Murderer! Traitor! Spy!"

He did not answer; but the waiting mob

Heard a small voice cry: "Daddy!" and a child

Of six years' age ran from a house close by,

And struggled to remain and clasped his knees,

Saying, "He is my daddy. Don't hurt him!

He is my daddy—" "Down with the cursed spy!

Shoot him at once!" a hundred voices said;

"Then we can get on with our work!" Their  
yells,

The clangour of the tocsin, and the roar

Of cannon mingled. 'Mid the dreadful noise,

The child, still clinging to his father's knees,

Cried, "I tell you he's my daddy. Let him go!"

Pale, tearful, with one arm thrown out to shield

His father, and the other round his leg,

The child stood. "He is pretty!" said a girl.

"How old are you, my little one?" The child

Answered, "Don't kill my daddy!" Many men

Lowered their eyes, and the fierce hands that  
gripped

The prisoner began to loose their hold.  
"Send the kid to its mother!" one man cried,  
"And end this job!" "His mother died last  
month,"  
The prisoner said. "Do you know Catherine?"  
He asked his little boy. "Yes," said the child,  
"She lives next door to us." "Then go to her,"  
He said, in grave, calm, kindly tones. "No! No!  
I cannot go without you!" cried his son.  
"They're going to hurt you, daddy, all these  
men!"  
The father whispered to the Communards  
That held him. "Let me say good-bye to him,  
And you can shoot me round the corner-house;  
Or where you will!" They loosed their prisoner  
A moment, and he said unto his child:  
"You see, we're only playing. They are friends,  
And I am going for a walk with them.  
Be a good boy, my darling, and run home."  
Raising his face up to be kissed, the child  
Smiled through his tears, and skipped into the  
house.  
"Now," said his father to the silent mob,  
"Where would you like to shoot me; by this  
wall,  
Or round the corner?" Through the crowd of  
men,  
Mad with the lust for blood, a shudder passed,  
And with one voice they cried: "Go home! Go  
home!"

#### FOOTNOTES:

[M] English poetry of the last eighty years is fine in quality and great in volume, but it would be difficult to maintain that it is the finest and greatest poetry of the period. It was France that produced the master-singer, and with rare generosity both Tennyson and Swinburne acknowledged that Victor Hugo was their

superior. The range of power of the Frenchman was marvellous; he was a great novelist, a great playwright, a great political writer; but, above all, he was a poet. His immense force of imagination and narrative power is displayed at its best in "The Legend of the Ages" ("La Légende des Siècles"). The first part appeared in 1859, the second in 1877, and the last in 1883. It consists of a series of historical and philosophic poems, in which the story of the human race is depicted in the lightning flashes of a resplendent imagination. Some of the poems, given here for the first time in English, contain stories as fine as the masterpieces of the great novelists.

---

**HENRIK IBSEN**<sup>[N]</sup>

---

# The Master Builder

## *Persons in the Drama*

HALVARD SOLNESS, *the Master Builder*

ALINE SOLNESS, *his wife*

DR. HERDAL, *physician*

KNUT BROVIK, *formerly an architect, now in Solness's employment*

RAGNAR BROVIK, *his son*

KAIA FOSLI, *his niece, book-keeper*

HILDA WANGEL

## ACT I

SCENE.—*A plainly furnished work-room in the house of HALVARD SOLNESS. At the back, visible through an open door, is the draughtsman's office, where sit KNUT BROVIK and his son, RAGNAR, occupied with plans and calculations. At the desk in the outer office KAIA FOSLI is writing in the ledger. She is young, slight, and delicate-looking. She wears a green shade over her eyes. All three work for some time in silence.*

KNUT BROVIK (*rising as if in distress*): No, I can't bear it much longer!

KAIA: You're feeling very ill, aren't you, uncle?

BROVIK: Oh, I seem to get worse every day!

RAGNAR (*advancing*): You ought to go home, father.

BROVIK: Not till *he* comes! I'm determined to have it out—with the chief!

KAIA (*anxiously*): Oh, no, uncle! Wait awhile. Hush! I hear him on the stairs.

[*They go back to their work. HALVARD SOLNESS, mature, healthy, vigorous, comes in.*]

SOLNESS: Are they gone?

KAIA: No. [*She takes the shade off her eyes.*]

SOLNESS (*approaching her and whispering*): Kaia! Why do you always take off that shade when I come?

KAIA: I look so ugly with it on.

SOLNESS (*stroking her hair*): Poor, poor little Kaia

---

KAIA: Hush———

[*BROVIK comes into the front room.*]

BROVIK: May I have a few words with you?

SOLNESS: Certainly.

[*BROVIK sends KAIA out.*]

BROVIK: It will soon be all over with me. (SOLNESS *places him in an armchair.*) Thanks. Well, you see, it's about Ragnar. That weighs most upon me. What's to become of him?

SOLNESS: Your son will stay with me as long as ever he likes. BROVIK: But he wants to have a chance. He must do something on his own account.

SOLNESS: Well, but he has learnt nothing, except, of course, to draw.

BROVIK: You had learnt little enough when you were with me, and yet you cut me out. Now, how can you have the heart to let me go to my grave without having seen what Ragnar is fit for? And I'm anxious to see him and Kaia married—before I go.

SOLNESS: I can't drag commissions down from the moon for him.

BROVIK: He can have the building of that villa at Lövstrand, if you would only approve of his plans, and retire——

SOLNESS (*angrily*): Retire? I?

BROVIK: From the agreement, that is.

SOLNESS: So that's it, is it? Halvard Solness to make room for younger men! Never in the world!

BROVIK (*rising painfully*): Then I'm to die without any certainty, any gleam of happiness or trust in Ragnar?

SOLNESS: You must pass out of life as best you can.

[BROVIK *reels*. RAGNAR *enters and takes his father home*. SOLNESS *detains KAIA*.

SOLNESS: You want to marry Ragnar.

KAIA: I cared for him once—before I met you. I can't be separated from you——

SOLNESS: Marry him as much as you please. Make him stay here, and then I can keep *you*, too, my dear Kaia.

KAIA (*sinks down before him*): Oh, how unspeakably good you are to me!

SOLNESS: Get up! For goodness' sake get up! I think I hear someone.

[MRS. SOLNESS *enters*. *She is wasted with grief, but has once been beautiful*.

MRS. SOLNESS (*with a glance at KAIA*): Halvard! I'm afraid I'm disturbing you.

SOLNESS: Not in the least. What is it, Aline?

MRS. SOLNESS: Merely that Dr. Herdal is in the drawing-room.

SOLNESS: I'll come later on, dear—later on.

[*Exit* MRS. SOLNESS.]

KAIA: Oh, dear! Oh, dear! I'm sure Mrs. Solness thinks ill of me in some way!

SOLNESS: Oh, not in the least! You'd better go now, all the same, Kaia. And mind you get that matter about Ragnar settled for me. Please give me Ragnar's drawings before you go. I might glance over them.

KAIA (*happy*): Oh, yes, please do!

[MRS. SOLNESS *and* DR. HERDAL *enter*.]

MRS. SOLNESS: Halvard, I cannot keep the doctor any longer.

SOLNESS: Well, then, come in here.

KAIA: Good-night, Mrs. Solness.

[KAIA *goes out*.]

MRS. SOLNESS: She must be quite an acquisition to you, Halvard, this Miss Fosli.

SOLNESS: Yes, indeed. She's useful in all sorts of ways.

MRS. SOLNESS: So it seems.

[MRS. SOLNESS *goes out*.]

SOLNESS: Tell me, doctor, did you notice anything odd about Aline?

DR. HERDAL (*smiling*): Well, one couldn't help noticing that your wife—h'm——

SOLNESS: Well?

DR. HERDAL: That your wife isn't particularly fond of this Miss Fosli. There's nothing of any sort in the case, is there?

SOLNESS: Not on *my* side.

DR. HERDAL: On hers, then?

SOLNESS: Hardly a fair question! Still, you know she's engaged to Ragnar; but since she came here she seemed to drift quite away from *him*.

DR. HERDAL: She drifted over to you, then?

SOLNESS: Yes, entirely. She quivers when she comes near me.

DR. HERDAL: Why on earth don't you tell your wife the rights of it?

SOLNESS: Because I seem to find a sort of—of salutary self-sacrifice in allowing Aline to do me an injustice. It's like paying off a little bit of a huge, immeasurable debt I owe her. Oh, I know she thinks I'm ill—crazy. And, I think, so do you.

DR. HERDAL: And what then?

SOLNESS: Then I dare say you fancy I'm an extremely happy man—Solness, the master builder!

DR. HERDAL: You've certainly had luck on your side. First of all, the home of your wife's family was burnt down for you. A great grief to her—but *you* rose on the ruins. Yes, you've had luck.

SOLNESS: But luck must turn. The younger generation will come knocking at my door. Then there's an end of Halvard Solness, the master builder. (*A knock at the door. Starts.*) What's that?

DR. HERDAL: Someone is knocking at the door.

SOLNESS (*loudly*): Come in!

[HILDA WANGEL *enters. She is dressed in a tourist costume, skirt caught up for walking, and carries a knapsack and alpenstock.*

HILDA: You don't recognise me?

SOLNESS (*doubtfully*): No. I must admit that—just for the moment.

DR. HERDAL: But I recognise you, Miss Wangel.

SOLNESS: Wangel? You must be the doctor's daughter up at Lysanger?

HILDA: Yes. Who else's daughter should I be?

[SOLNESS *calls in his wife, an old friend of MISS WANGEL'S. HILDA asks leave to stay the night. MRS. SOLNESS consents amiably. She and the doctor go out. HILDA and SOLNESS alone.*

HILDA: Mr. Solness, have you a bad memory?

SOLNESS: Not that I'm aware of.

HILDA: Don't you remember what happened up at Lysanger?

SOLNESS: It was nothing much, was it?

HILDA: How can you say that? Don't you remember how you climbed the new church tower when it was finished, and hung a great wreath on the weather-cock; and how I stood with the other white-frosted schoolgirls and screamed, "Hurrah for Mr. Solness?" And you sang up there—like harps in the air! And afterwards you kissed me, kissed me and said in ten years I'd be *your* princess, and you'd come back and give me a castle in Spain—a kingdom—

SOLNESS (*open-mouthed*): I did?

HILDA: Yes, *you*. Well, the ten years are up to-day. I want my kingdom! Out with my kingdom, Mr. Solness! On the table!

SOLNESS: But, seriously, what do you want to do here?

HILDA: I don't want that stupid imaginary kingdom—I've set my heart upon quite a different one.

SOLNESS (*gazing at her*): I seem—it's strange—to have gone about all these years torturing myself with the effort to recover something—some experience which I seem to have forgotten. What a good thing it is that you have come to me now. I'd begun to be so afraid—so terribly afraid of the younger generation. One day they'll thunder at my door.

HILDA: Then I'd go out and open it. Let them come in to you on friendly terms, as it were.

SOLNESS: No, no, no! The younger generation—it means retribution.

HILDA (*with quivering lips*): Can *I* be of any use to you, Mr. Solness?

SOLNESS: Yes, you can. For you, too, come—under a new banner, it seems to me. Youth marshalled against youth! *You* are the very one I have most needed.

HILDA (*with happy, wondering eyes*): Oh, heavens, how lovely!

SOLNESS: What?

HILDA: Then I *have* my kingdom!

SOLNESS (*involuntarily*): Hilda!

HILDA (*with quivering lips*): *Almost*—I was going to say.

[*She goes out. SOLNESS follows her.*]

## ACT II

SCENE.—*A small drawing-room in the house of SOLNESS.*

SOLNESS *is examining* RAGNAR BROVIK's *drawings.*

MRS. SOLNESS *is attending to her flowers.*

SOLNESS: Is she still asleep?

MRS. SOLNESS (*looking at him*): Is it Miss Wangel you are sitting there thinking about? She was up long ago.

SOLNESS: Oh, was she? So we've found a use for one of our three nurseries, after all, Aline, now that Hilda occupies one of them.

MRS. SOLNESS: Yes, we have. Their emptiness is dreadful.

SOLNESS: We'll get on far better after this, Aline. Things will be easier.

MRS. SOLNESS: Because *she* has come?

SOLNESS (*checking himself*): I mean when once we've moved into our new house. It's for your sake I've built it.

MRS. SOLNESS: You do far too much for me.

SOLNESS: I can't bear to hear you say that. Stick to what I said. Things 'll be easier in the new place.

MRS. SOLNESS (*lamenting*): Oh heavens, easier! Halvard, you can never build up a real home again for *me*. *This* is no home; It will be just as desolate, as empty there as here.

[HILDA WANGEL *comes in*.

HILDA: Good-morning, Mr. Solness!

SOLNESS (*nods*): Slept well?

HILDA: Deliciously! As if in a cradle. Oh, I lay and stretched myself like—like a princess. But I dreamed I was falling over a precipice. It's tremendously thrilling when you fall and fall——

MRS. SOLNESS (*ready to go out*): I must go into town now, Halvard. (*To HILDA*) And I'll try to get one or two things that may be of use to you.

HILDA: Oh, you dear, sweet Mrs. Solness. You're frightfully kind——

MRS. SOLNESS: It's only my duty.

[MRS. SOLNESS *goes out*.

HILDA: What made her say that about her duty? Doesn't it sting you?

SOLNESS: H'm! Haven't thought much about it.

HILDA: Yes it does. Why should she talk in that way? She might have said something really warm and cordial, you understand.

SOLNESS: Is that how you'd like to have it?

HILDA: Yes, precisely. (*She wanders over to the table and looks over RAGNAR'S portfolio of drawings.*) Are all these drawings yours?

SOLNESS: No; they're drawn by a young man I employ.

HILDA (*sits down*): Then I suppose he's frightfully clever.

SOLNESS: Oh, he's not bad, for my purpose.

HILDA: I can't understand why you should be so stupid as to go about teaching people. No one but yourself should be allowed to build.

SOLNESS: I keep brooding on that very thought. (*Calling her to the window*) Look over there; that's my new house.

HILDA: It seems to have a tremendously high tower. Are there nurseries in *that* house, too?

SOLNESS: Three—as there are here. But there will never be any child in them. We have had children, Aline and I, but we didn't keep them long, our two little boys. The fright Aline got when our old house was burnt down

affected her health, and she failed to rear them. Yet that fire made me. I built no more churches; but cosy, comfortable homes for human beings. But my position as an artist has been paid for in Aline's happiness. I could have prevented that fire by seeing to a flue. But I didn't. And yet the flue didn't actually cause the fire. Yet it was my fault in a certain sense.

HILDA: I'm afraid you must be—ill.

SOLNESS: I don't think I'll ever be quite of sound mind on that point.

[RAGNAR *enters, and begs a few kind words about his drawings to cheer his father, who is dying. SOLNESS dismisses him almost brutally, and bids him never think of building on his own account.*

HILDA (*when RAGNAR has gone*): That was horribly ugly—and hard and bad and cruel as well.

SOLNESS: Oh, you don't understand my position, which I've paid so dear for. (*Confidentially*) Hilda, don't you agree with me that there exists special chosen people, who have the power of desiring, *craving* a thing, until at last it *has* to happen? And aren't there helpers and servers who must do their part too? But they never come of themselves. One has to call them very persistently, inwardly. So the fire happened conveniently for me; but the two little boys and Aline were sacrificed. She will never be the woman she longed to be.

HILDA: I believe you have a sickly conscience. I should like your conscience to be thoroughly robust.

SOLNESS: Is *yours* robust?

HILDA: I think it is.

SOLNESS: I think the Vikings had robust consciences. And the women they used to carry off had robust

consciences, too. They often wouldn't leave their captors on any account.

HILDA: These women I can understand exceedingly well.

SOLNESS: Could you come to love a man like that?

HILDA: One can't choose whom one's going to love.

SOLNESS: Hilda, there's something of the bird of prey in you!

HILDA: And why not? Why shouldn't I go a-hunting as well as the rest? Tell me, Mr. Solness, have you never called me to you—inwardly, you know?

SOLNESS (*softly*): I almost think I must have.

HILDA: What did you want with me?

SOLNESS: You are the younger generation, Hilda.

HILDA: Which you fear so much——

SOLNESS: Towards which, in my heart, I yearn so deeply.

*[In the next scene HILDA compels SOLNESS to write a few kind words on RAGNAR'S drawings, and send them to BROVIK. He entrusts the portfolio to KAIA, and thereupon dismisses her and RAGNAR from his service. MRS. SOLNESS re-enters.]*

MRS. SOLNESS: Are you really dismissing them, Halvard?

SOLNESS: Yes.

MRS. SOLNESS: Her as well?

SOLNESS: Wasn't that what you wished?

MRS. SOLNESS: But how can you get on without *her*——? Oh, no doubt you've someone else in reserve, Halvard.

HILDA (*playfully*): Well, *I* for one am not the person to stand at that desk.

SOLNESS: Never mind, never mind. It'll be all right, Aline. Now for moving into our new home—as quickly as we can. This evening we'll hang up the wreath—right on the pinnacle of the tower. What do you say to that, Hilda?

HILDA (*with sparkling eyes*): It'll be splendid to see you up so high once more. MRS. SOLNESS: For heaven's sake, don't, Miss Wangel. My husband!—when he always gets so dizzy.

HILDA: He—dizzy? I've seen him with my own eyes at the top of a high church tower.

MRS. SOLNESS: Impossible!

SOLNESS: True, all the same.

MRS. SOLNESS: You, who can't even go out on the second-floor balcony?

SOLNESS: You will see something different this evening.

MRS. SOLNESS: You're ill, you're ill! I'll write at once to the doctor. Oh, God, Oh, God!

[*She goes out.*]

HILDA: Don't tell me *my* master builder daren't, *cannot* climb as high as he builds. You promised me a kingdom, and then you went and—well! Don't tell me you can ever be dizzy!

SOLNESS: This evening, then, we'll hang up the wreath, Princess Hilda.

HILDA (*bitterly*): Over your new home—yes.

SOLNESS: Over the new house, which will never be a *home* for *me*.

HILDA (*looks straight in front of her with a far-away expression, and whispers to herself. The only words audible are*): Frightfully thrilling——

### ACT III

SCENE.—*A large, broad verandah attached to SOLNESS'S dwelling-house. A flight of steps leads down to the garden below. Far to the right, among the trees, is a glimpse of the new villa, with scaffolding round the tower. Evening sky, with sun-lit clouds.*

MRS. SOLNESS: Have you been round the garden, Miss Wangel?

HILDA: Yes, and I've found heaps of flowers.

MRS. SOLNESS: Are there, really? You see, I seldom go there. I don't feel that it is *mine* any longer. They've parcelled it out and built houses for strangers, who can look in upon me from their windows.

HILDA: Mrs. Solness—may I stay here with you a little?

MRS. SOLNESS: Yes, by all means, if you care to; but I thought you wanted to go in to my husband—to help him?

HILDA: No, thanks. Besides, he's not in. He's with the men over there. He looked so fierce, I didn't dare to talk to him.

MRS. SOLNESS: He's so kind and gentle in reality.

HILDA: *He*——

MRS. SOLNESS: You don't really know him yet, Miss Wangel.

HILDA: Are you pleased about the new house?

MRS. SOLNESS: It's what Halvard wants. It's simply my duty to submit myself to *him*.

HILDA: That must be difficult, indeed, when one has gone through so much as you have—the loss of your two little boys——

MRS. SOLNESS: One must bow to Providence and be thankful, too.

[DR. HERDAL *enters and goes in again with* MRS. SOLNESS. *She wishes to talk to him about her husband's mad scheme. As they go* SOLNESS *enters*.

SOLNESS: Poor Aline! I suppose she was talking about the two little boys? (HILDA *shudders*) Poor Aline, she will never get over it.

HILDA: I am going away.

SOLNESS: I won't allow you to. I wish you simply to *be* here, Hilda.

HILDA: Oh, thank you. You know it wouldn't end there. That's why I'm going. You have duties to *her*. Live for those duties.

SOLNESS: Too late! Those powers—devils, if you will!—and the troll within me as well, have drawn the life-blood out of her. I'm chained alive to a dead woman! —(*in wild anguish*) *I—I*, who cannot live without joy in life.

HILDA: What will you build next?

SOLNESS (*shaking his head*): Not much more.

HILDA (*with an outburst*): Oh, it seems all so foolish—not to be able to grasp your own happiness, merely because someone you know happens to stand in the way——

SOLNESS: If only one had the Viking spirit in life——

HILDA: And the other thing? What was that?

SOLNESS: A robust conscience.

HILDA (*radiant*): I know what you're going to build next.

SOLNESS: What?

HILDA: The castle—*my* castle. Build it for me this moment. The ten years are up. Out with my castle, Mr. Solness! It shall stand on a very great height, so that I can see far—far around. We shall build—we two together—the very loveliest thing in all the world!

SOLNESS: Hilda, tell me what it is.

HILDA: Builders are such very, very stupid people

---

SOLNESS: No doubt—but tell me what we two are to build together?

HILDA: Castles in the air! So easy to build (*scornfully*), especially for builders who have a—a dizzy conscience.

SOLNESS: We shall build one—with a firm foundation. (RAGNAR *enters with the wreath*) Have you brought the wreath, Ragnar? Then I suppose your father's better? Wasn't he cheered by what I wrote him?

RAGNAR: It came too late—he was unconscious. He had had a stroke.

SOLNESS: Go home to him. Give *me* the wreath.

RAGNAR: You don't mean that you yourself—no—I'll stop.

HILDA: Mr. Solness, I will stand here and look at you.

[SOLNESS *takes the wreath and goes down through the garden*. MRS. SOLNESS, *in an agony of apprehension, re-enters and sends*

RAGNAR *to fetch her husband back from the new building. She returns indoors.*

SOLNESS (*re-entering*): Oh, it's *you*, Hilda! I was afraid it was Aline or the doctor that wanted me.

HILDA: You're easily frightened. They say you're afraid to climb about scaffoldings. Is it true you're afraid?

SOLNESS: Not of death—but—of retribution.

HILDA: I don't understand that.

SOLNESS: Sit down, and I'll tell you something. You know I began by building churches. I'd been piously brought up. I thought it was the noblest task, pleasing to Him for Whom churches are built. Then up at Lysanger I understood that He meant me to have no love and happiness of my own, but just to be a master builder for Him all my life long. That was why He took my little children! Then, that day, I did the impossible. I was able to climb up to a great height. As I stood hanging the wreath on the vane, I cried, "O Mighty One, I will be a free builder—I, too, in my sphere as Thou in Thine. I will build no more churches for Thee—only homes for human beings." But *that* is not worth six-pence, Hilda.

HILDA: Then you will never build anything more?

SOLNESS: On the contrary, I'm just going to begin—the only possible dwelling-place for human happiness

---

HILDA: Our castles in the air.

SOLNESS: Our castles in the air—yes.

HILDA: Then let me see you stand free and high up (*passionately*). I will have you do it—just once more, Mr. Solness. Do the *impossible*, once again.

SOLNESS: If I do, I will talk to Him once again up there—"Mighty Lord, henceforth I will build nothing but the loveliest thing in the world."

HILDA (*carried away*): Yes—yes—yes! My lovely, lovely castle! My castle in the air!

[*The others go out upon the verandah. The band of the Masons' Union is heard. RAGNAR tells SOLNESS that the foreman is ready to go up with the wreath. SOLNESS goes out. The others watch eagerly.*]

DR. HERDAL: There goes the foreman up the ladder.

RAGNAR: Why, but it's——

HILDA (*jubilant*): It's the master builder himself.

MRS. SOLNESS: Oh, my God! Halvard, Halvard! I must go to him!

DR. HERDAL (*holding her*): Don't move, any of you. Not a sound.

RAGNAR: I feel as if I were looking at something utterly impossible.

HILDA (*ecstatically*): It is the *impossible* that he is doing now. Can you see anyone else up there with him? There is One he is striving with. I hear a song—a mighty song. He is waving to us. Oh, wave back. Hurrah for Master Builder Solness!

[*The shout is taken up. Then a shriek of horror. A human body, with planks and pieces of wood, is vaguely seen crashing down behind the trees.*]

HILDA: *My Master Builder!*

A VOICE: Mr. Solness is dead. He fell right into the quarry.

RAGNAR: So, after all, he could not do it.

HILDA: But he mounted right up to the top. And I heard harps in the air. (*Waves her shawl, and shrieks with wild intensity*) *My—my Master Builder!*

## FOOTNOTES:

[N] Henrik Ibsen, poet and the creator of a new type of drama, was born at Skien, in South Norway, on March 20, 1828. Apprenticed first to a chemist at Grimstad, he next entered Christiania University, but speedily wearied of regular academic studies. He then undertook journalistic work for two years, and afterwards became a theatrical manager at Bergen. In 1857 he was appointed director of the National Theatre at Christiania, and about this time wrote, at intervals, plays in the style of the ancient Norse sagas. "The Master Builder" ("Bygmester Solness") belongs to his later efforts, and was completed in 1892. In it many critics discern the highest attainments of Ibsen's genius, and its realism is strangely combined with romance. It is a plea for the freedom of the human spirit; and the terrible drama is wrought out in language of extraordinary symbolism. Hilda Wangel is the "superwoman," who will suffer nothing to stand between her and the realisation of herself. Had Solness been as strong a spirit, the end might have been different. But he has a "sickly conscience," unable to bear the heights of freedom. Here again Ibsen is unique in his estimate of mankind. Nevertheless, his characters are all actual personalities, and live vividly. Ibsen died on May 23, 1906.

---

# The Pillars of Society<sup>[O]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

CONSUL BERNICK

MRS. BERNICK

OLAF, *their son*

MARTHA BERNICK, *sister of the consul*

LONA HESSEL, *elder stepsister of Mrs. Bernick*

JOHAN TÖNNESEN, *her younger brother*

HILMAR TÖNNESEN, *Mrs. Bernick's brother*

RECTOR RÖRLUND

DINA DORF, *a young lady living at the consul's*

KRAP, *the consul's clerk*

SHIPBUILDER AUNE

MRS. RUMMEL *and other ladies, friends of the consul's family*

## ACT I

SCENE.—*A large garden-room in CONSUL BERNICK'S house. A number of ladies are seated in the room. AUNE, who has been sent for by the CONSUL, is addressed by KRAP at the door of the CONSUL'S room.*

KRAP: I am ordered by the consul to tell you that you must stop those Saturday talks to the workmen about the injury that our new machines will do to them. Your first duty is to this establishment. Now you know the will of the consul.

AUNE: The consul would have said it differently. But I know I have to thank for this the American that has put

in for repairs.

KRAP: That is enough. You know the consul's wishes. Pardon, ladies!

[KRAP bows to ladies, and he and AUNE go into the street. RECTOR RÖRLUND has been reading aloud, and now shuts the book and begins to converse with the ladies.]

RÖRLUND: This book forms a welcome contrast to the hollowness and rottenness we see every day in the papers and magazines, which reflect the condition of the whited sepulchres, the great communities to-day. Doubt, restlessness, and insecurity are undermining society.

DINA: But are not many great things being accomplished?

RÖRLUND: I do not understand what you mean by great things.

MRS. RUMMEL: Last year we narrowly escaped the introduction of a railroad.

MRS. BERNICK: My husband managed to block the scheme, but the papers, in consequence, said shameful things about him. But we are forgetting, dear rector, that we have to thank you for devoting so much time to us.

RÖRLUND: Do you not all make sacrifices in a good cause to save the lapsed and lost?

HILMAR TÖNNESEN (*coming in with a cigar in his mouth*): I have only looked in in passing. Good-morning, ladies! Well, you know Bernick has called a cabinet council about this railway nonsense again. When it is a question of money, then everything here ends in paltry material calculations.

MRS. BERNICK: But at any rate things are better than formerly, when everything ended in dissipation. MRS. RUMMEL: Only think of fifteen years ago. What a life,

with the dancing club and music club! I well remember the noisy gaiety among families.

MRS. LYNGE: There was a company of strolling players, who, I was told, played many pranks. What was the truth of the matter?

Mrs. Rummel, when Dina is out of the room, explains to the ladies that the girl is the daughter of a strolling player who years before had come to perform for a season in the town. Dorf, the actor, had deserted both wife and child, and the wife had to take to work to which she was unaccustomed, was seized with a pulmonary malady, and died. Then Dina had been adopted by the Bernicks.

Mrs. Rummel goes on to explain that at that season also Johan, Mrs. Bernick's brother, had run away to America. After his departure it was discovered that he had been playing tricks with the cash-box of the firm, of which his widowed mother had become the head. Karsten, now Consul, Bernick had just come home from Paris. He became engaged to Betty Tönnesen, now his wife, but when he entered her aunt's room, with the girl on his arm, to announce his betrothal, Lona Hessel rose from her chair and violently boxed his ear. Then she packed her box, and went off to America. Little had been heard of Lona, except that she had in America sung in taverns, and had given lectures, and had written a most sensational book.

## ACT II

SCENE.—*The same garden-room.* MRS. BERNICK. AUNE *enters and greets* CONSUL BERNICK.

BERNICK: I am not at all pleased, Aune, with the way things are going on in the yard. The repairs are slow. The *Palm Tree* should long since have been at sea. That American ship, the *Indian Girl*, has been lying here five weeks. You do not know how to use the new machines, or else you will not use them.

AUNE: Consul, the *Palm Tree* can go to sea in two days, but the *Indian Girl* is as rotten as matchwood in the bottom planking. Now, I am getting on for sixty, and I cannot take to new ways. I am afraid for the many folk whom the machinery will deprive of a livelihood.

BERNICK: I did not send for you to argue. Listen now. The *Indian Girl* must be got ready to sail in two days, at the same time as our own ship. There are reasons for this decision. The carping newspaper critics are pretending that we are giving all our attention to the *Palm Tree*. If you will not do what I order, I must look for somebody who will.

AUNE: You are asking impossibilities, consul. But surely you cannot think of dismissing me, whose father and grandfather worked here all their lives before me. Do you know what is meant by the dismissal of an old workman?

BERNICK: You are a stubborn fellow, Aune. You oppose me from perversity. I am sorry indeed if we must part, Aune.

AUNE: We will not part, consul. The *Indian Girl* shall be cleared in two days.

[AUNE *bows and retires*. HILMAR TÖNNESEN *comes through the garden gate*.

HILMAR: Good-day, Betty! Good-day, Bernick. Have you heard the new sensation? The two Americans are going about the streets in company with Dina Dorf. The town is all excitement about it.

BERNICK (*looking out into the street*): They are coming here. We must be sure to treat them well. They will soon be away again.

[JOHAN *and* LONA *enter*. *Presently all disperse into the garden, and* BERNICK *goes up to* JOHAN.

BERNICK: Now we are alone, Johan, I must thank you. For to you I owe home, happiness, position, and all that I have and am. Not one in ten thousand would have done all that you then did for me. I was the guilty one. On the night when that drunken wretch came home it

was for Betty's sake that I broke off the entanglement with Madame Dorf; but still, that you should act in such a noble spirit of self-sacrifice as to turn appearances against yourself, and go away, can never be forgotten by me.

JOHAN: Oh, well, we were both young and thoughtless. I was an orphan, alone and free, and was glad to get away from office drudgery. You had your old mother alive, and you had just engaged yourself to Betty, who was very fond of you. We agreed that you must be saved, and I was proud to be your friend. You had come back like a prince from abroad, and chose me for your closest friend. Now I know why. You were making love to Betty. But I was proud of it.

BERNICK: Are you going back to your American farm? Not soon, I hope.

JOHAN: As soon as possible. I only came over to please Lona. She felt homesick. You can never think what she has been to me. You never could tolerate her, but to me she has been a mother, singing, lecturing, writing to support me when I was ill and could not work. And I may as well tell you frankly that I have told her all. But do not fear her. She will say nothing. But who would have dreamt of your taking into your house that little creature who played angels in the theatre, and scampered about here? What became of her parents?

BERNICK: I wrote you all that happened. The drunken scoundrel, after leaving his wife, was killed in a drinking bout. After the wife died it was through Martha that we took little Dina in charge.

To the amazement of the Bernicks and some others, Johan makes it known that he has asked Dina to be his wife, and that she has consented. To their further astonishment and annoyance, Lona declares her profound approval of this engagement. Moreover, Lona now challenges Bernick to clear his soul of the lie on which he has stood for these fifteen years. It is a three-fold lie—the lie towards

Lona, then the lie towards Betty, then the lie towards Johan. But Bernick shrinks from the terrible shame that would come on him as one of the "pillars of society."

### ACT III

SCENE. CONSUL BERNICK'S *garden-room again*. KRAP *is speaking to the CONSUL*.

KRAP: The *Palm Tree* can sail to-morrow, but as for the *Indian Girl*, in my opinion she will not get far. I have been secretly examining the bottom of the ship, where the repairs have been pushed on very fast. The rotten place is patched up, and made to look like new, for Aune has been working himself all night at it. There is some villainy at work. I believe Aune wants, out of revenge for the use of the new machines, to send that ship to the bottom of the sea.

BERNICK: This is horrible. True, Aune is an agitator who is spreading discontent, but this is inconceivable.

[KRAP *goes out, and presently* LONA HESSEL *enters*.

BERNICK: Well, Lona, what do you think of me now?

LONA: Just what I thought before. A lie more or less

---

BERNICK: I can talk to you more confidentially than to others. I shall hide nothing from you. I had a part in spreading that rumour about Johan and the cash-box. But make allowance for me. Our house when I came home from my foreign tour was threatened with ruin, and one misfortune followed another. I was almost in despair, and in my distraction got into that difficulty which ended with the disappearance of Johan. Then after you and he left various reports were spread. Some folks declared that he had taken the money to America. I was in such difficulty that I did not say a word to contradict the rumours.

LONA: So a lie has made you one of the pillars of society.

JOHAN (*entering*): I have come to tell you that I intend not only to marry Dina Dorf, but to remain here and to defy all these liars. Yesterday I promised to keep silence, but now I need the truth. You must set me free by telling the truth, that I may win Dina.

BERNICK (*in great agitation*): But just reflect on my position. If you aim such a blow as this at me I am ruined irretrievably. The welfare of this community is also at stake. If my credit is not impaired, I shall soon be a millionaire, when certain company projects mature. Johan, go away, and I will share with you. I have staked all I possess on schemes now about to mature, but if my character is impaired, my utter ruin is inevitable.

To the surprise of Bernick, Johan announces that he will go to America, but will shortly return for Dina, and that accordingly he will sail next day in the *Indian Girl*, the captain having promised to take him. He will sell his farm and be back in two months, and then the guilty one must take the guilt on himself.

JOHAN: The wind is good, and in three weeks I shall be across the Atlantic unless the *Indian Girl* should go to the bottom.

BERNICK (*involuntarily starting*): Go to the bottom? Why should she?

JOHAN: Yes, indeed, why?

BERNICK (*very softly*): Go to the bottom?

They separate, and Aune enters, and anxiously asks if Bernick is positively determined that the American ship shall sail the next day, on pain of his dismissal. He replies that he supposes the repairs are properly finished, and therefore the *Indian Girl* must sail. A merchant steps in to say that the storm-signals have been hoisted, for a tempest is threatening. This gentleman says to Bernick that the *Palm Tree* ought to start all the same, for she is a splendidly-built craft, and she is only to cross the North Sea; but as for the *Indian Girl*, such an old hulk would be in great peril. But Bernick evades the remonstrance, and no alteration is made in the plans of procedure. The ship is to sail.

## ACT IV

SCENE.—*The same garden-room. It is a stormy afternoon and growing dark.*

Bernick is apprised that he is to be most honourably fêted by his fellow citizens who are about to form a procession, and to parade before his house with music. The proudest moment of his life is at hand. But the fact that the sea is running high outside the harbour is causing great agitation to the mind of Bernick. Lona looks in to say that she has been saying farewell to Johan. He has not changed his determination to sail. A strange incident happens. Little Olaf Bernick runs away from home to slip on board the ship and accompany his uncle to America.

LONA: So the great hour has arrived. The whole town is to be illuminated.

BERNICK (*pacing to and fro in agitation*): Yes. Lona, you despise me.

LONA: Not yet.

BERNICK: You have no right to despise me. For you little realise how lonely I stand in this narrow society. What have I accomplished, with all my efforts? We who are considered the pillars of society are but its tools after all. Since you came home from America I have been keenly feeling all this. All this show and deception gives me no satisfaction. But I work for my son, who will be able to found a truer state of things and to be happier than his father.

LONA: With a lie for its basis? Think what an heritage you are preparing for Olaf.

BERNICK: Why did you and Johan come home to crush me?

LONA: Let me just tell you that after all Johan will not come back to crush you. For he has gone for ever and Dina has gone also to become his wife.

BERNICK (*amazed*): Gone—in the *Indian Girl*?

LONA: They did not dare to risk their lives in that crazy tub. They are in the *Palm Tree*.

Bernick rushes to his office to order the *Indian Girl* to be stopped in the harbour, but he learns that she already is out at sea. But presently Hilmar comes to tell him that Olaf has run away in the *Indian Girl*. He cries out that the ship must be stopped at any cost. Krap says it is impossible. Music is heard, for the procession is approaching. Bernick, in an agony of soul, declares that he cannot receive anyone. The whole street blazes with the illuminations, and on a great transparency on the opposite house gleams the inscription, "Long live Karsten Bernick, the Pillar of our Society!"

BERNICK (*at the window, shrinking back*): I cannot look at all this. Away with all these mocking words! I shall never see Olaf again.

MRS. BERNICK: You will see him again, Karsten, all right. I have got him. Do you think a mother does not watch? I overheard a few words from our boy which set me on my guard. I and Aune went in the sailing boat from the yard and reached the *Indian Girl* when she was on the point of sailing, and he was soon discovered hiding away.

BERNICK: And is the ship under sail again?

MRS. BERNICK: No. The darkness came on more densely, the pilot was alarmed, and so Aune, in your name, took it on himself to order the ship to stay till tomorrow.

BERNICK: What an unspeakable blessing.

KRAP: The procession is coming through the garden gate, consul.

Rector Rörlund, at the head of the procession, makes a presentation to Bernick in the name of the committee, and expresses the public esteem and admiration for the consul's services to society. Bernick, to the astonishment of the audience, proceeds to make a full confession of the duplicity and deceit of which he has been guilty. He unreservedly places himself in the hands of the people, who quietly disperse. Bernick at once finds that, whatever the people may think, he has won the sympathy of all his own circle. Lona lays her hands on his shoulder with the words, "Brother-in-law, you have at last discovered that the spirit of Truth and the spirit of Freedom are the real Pillars of Society."

## **FOOTNOTES:**

[Q] "The Pillars of Society," published in 1877, is perhaps the most conspicuous of the series of psychological dramatic studies through which Ibsen has exercised untold influence on European drama. In it he deals with the problem of hypocrisy in a small commercial centre of industry, and pours scorn on contemporary humanity, while cherishing the highest hopes of human possibilities for the future.

---

**BEN JONSON**<sup>[P]</sup>

---

# **Every Man in His Humour**

*Persons in the Comedy*

OLD KNOWELL  
YOUNG KNOWELL, *in love with Bridget*  
BRAIN-WORM  
MASTER STEPHEN, *a country gull*  
MASTER MATTHEW, *a town gull*  
CAPTAIN BOBADILL  
DOWN-RIGHT  
WELL-BRED, *his half-brother*  
KITELY, *husband to Down-right's sister*  
COB,      CASH,      FORMAL  
JUSTICE CLEMENT  
DAME KITELY  
BRIDGET, *Kitely's sister*  
TIB, *Cob's wife*

## ACT I

SCENE I.—*In KNOWELL'S house. Enter KNOWELL, with a letter from WELL-BRED to YOUNG KNOWELL.*

KNOWELL: This letter is directed to my son.  
Yet I will break it open.  
What's here? What's this?

*(Reads)* "Why, Ned, I beseech thee, hast thou forsworn all thy friends i' the Old Jewry? Dost thou think us all Jews that inhabit there yet? If thou dost, come over and but see our frippery. Leave thy vigilant father alone, to number over his green apricots evening and morning, o' the north-west wall. Prythee, come over to me quickly this morning; I have such a present for thee! One is a rhymer, sir, o' your own batch, but doth think himself a poet-major of the town; the other, I will not venture his description till you come."

Why, what unhallowed ruffian would have writ  
In such a scurrilous manner to a friend!  
Why should he think I tell my apricots?

[*Enter* BRAIN-WORM.

Take you this letter, and deliver it my son,  
But with no notice I have opened it, on your life.

[*Exeunt. Then, enter* YOUNG KNOWELL, *with the letter, and* BRAIN-WORM.

YOUNG KNOWELL: Did he open it, say'st thou?

BRAIN-WORM: Yes, o' my word, sir, and read the contents. For he charged me on my life to tell nobody that he opened it, which unless he had done he would never fear to have it revealed.

[YOUNG KNOWELL *moves apart to read the letter. Enter* STEPHEN. KNOWELL *laughs.*

STEPHEN: 'Slid, I hope he laughs not at me; an he do

---

KNOWELL: Here was a letter, indeed, to be intercepted by a man's father! Well, if he read this with patience—— (*Seeing* STEPHEN) What, my wise cousin! Nay, then, I'll furnish our feast with one gull more. How now, Cousin Stephen—melancholy?

STEPHEN: Yes, a little. I thought you had laughed at me, cousin.

KNOWELL: Be satisfied, gentle coz, and, I pray you, let me entreat a courtesy of you. I am sent for this morning by a friend in the Old Jewry: will you bear me company?

STEPHEN: Sir, you shall command me twice as far.

KNOWELL: Now, if I can but hold him up to his height!

SCENE II.—BOBADILL'S room, a mean chamber, in COB'S house.

BOBADILL *lying on a bench. Enter MATTHEW, ushered in by TIB.*

MATTHEW: 'Save you, sir; 'save you, captain.

BOBADILL: Gentle Master Matthew! Sit down, I pray you. Master Matthew in any case, possess no gentlemen of our acquaintance with notice of my lodging. Not that I need to care who know it! But in regard I would not be too popular and generally visited, as some are.

MATTHEW: True, captain, I conceive you.

BOBADILL: For do you see, sir, by the heart of valour in me except it be to some peculiar and choice spirit like yourself—but what new book have you there?

MATTHEW: Indeed, here are a number of fine speeches in this book.

"O eyes, no eyes, but fountains fraught with tears"—

There's a conceit! Another:

"O life, no life but lively form of death!  
O world, no world but mass of public wrongs"—

O the Muses! Is't not excellent? But when will you come to see my study? Good faith I can show you some very good things I have done of late. But, captain, Master Well-bred's elder brother and I are fallen out exceedingly.

BOBADILL: Squire Down-right, the half-brother was't not? Hang him rook! Come hither; you shall chartel him. I'll show you a trick or two you shall kill him with, at pleasure, the first staccato, if you will, by this air. Come, put on your cloak, and we'll go to some private place

where you are acquainted, some tavern or so. What money ha' you about you?

MATTHEW: Faith, not past a two shillings or so.

BOBADILL: 'Tis somewhat with the least; but come, we will have a bunch of radish and salt to taste our wine, and after we'll call upon Young Well-bred.

*[Exeunt.]*

## ACT II

SCENE I.—KITELY'S *house*. KITELY *explains to* DOWN-RIGHT *that* WELL-BRED, *who lodges with him brings riotous companions to the house, which makes him much troubled for his pretty wife and sister.* BOBADILL *and* MATTHEW *calling in search of* WELL-BRED, *the former insults* DOWN-RIGHT, *and leaves him storming.*

SCENE II.—*Moorfields.* Enter BRAIN-WORM, *disguised as a maimed soldier.*

BRAIN-WORM: The truth is, my old master intends to follow my young master, dry-foot, over Moorfields to London this morning. Now I, knowing of this hunting match, or rather conspiracy, and to insinuate with my young master, have got me before in this disguise, determining here to lie in ambuscade. If I can but get his cloak, his purse, his hat, anything to stay his journey, I am made for ever, in faith. But here comes my young master and his cousin, as I am a true counterfeit man of war, and no soldier.

*[Enter* YOUNG KNOWELL *and* STEPHEN. BRAIN-WORM, *with a cock-and-bull tale of his services in the wars, persuades* STEPHEN *to buy his sword as a pure Toledo.* Exeunt.

*Presently, enter OLD KNOWELL, and BRAIN-WORM meets him.*

BRAIN-WORM (*aside*): My master! Nay, faith, have at you; I am fleshed now, I have sped so well. Worshipful sir, I beseech you, respect the estate of a poor soldier; I am ashamed of this base course of life, but extremity provokes me to it; what remedy?

KNOWELL: I have not for you now.

BRAIN-WORM: Good sir, by that hand, you may do the part of a kind gentleman, in lending a poor soldier the price of a can of beer; Heaven shall pay you, sweet worship!

KNOWELL: Art thou a man, and shamest not thou to beg? To practise such a servile kind of life? Either the wars might still supply thy wants, Or service of some virtuous gentleman.

BRAIN-WORM: Faith, sir, I would gladly find some other course—I know what I would say; but as for service—my name, sir? Please you, Fitzsword, sir.

KNOWELL: Say that a man should entertain thee now, Would'st thou be modest, humble, just, and true?

BRAIN-WORM: Sir, by the place and honour of a soldier.

KNOWELL: Nay, nay, I like not these affected oaths. But follow me; I'll prove thee.

*[Exit.*

BRAIN-WORM: Yes, sir, straight. 'Slid, was there ever a fox in years to betray himself thus! Now shall I be possessed of all his counsels, and by that conduit, my young master.

*[Follows KNOWELL.*

### ACT III

SCENE I.—*A room in the Windmill Tavern.* WELL-BRED, BOBADILL, MATTHEW. *Enter* YOUNG KNOWELL *with* STEPHEN.

WELL-BRED: Ned Knowell! By my soul, welcome!  
(*Lower*) Sirrah, there be the two I writ of. But what strange piece of silence is this? The sign of the Dumb Man?

KNOWELL: Oh, sir, a kinsman of mine; he has his humour, sir.

STEPHEN: My name is Master Stephen, sir; I am this gentleman's own cousin, sir; I am somewhat melancholy, but you shall command me.

MATTHEW: Oh, it's your only fine humour, sir. Your true melancholy breeds your perfect fine wit. I am melancholy myself, divers times, and then I do no more but take pen and paper presently, and overflow you half a score or a dozen of fine sonnets at a sitting.

WELL-BRED: Captain Bobadill, why muse you so?

KNOWELL: He is melancholy, too.

BOBADILL: Why, sir, I was thinking of a most honourable piece of service was performed at the beleaguering of Strigonium; the first but the best leaguer that ever I beheld with these eyes. Look you, sir, by St. George, I was the first man that entered the breach; and had I not effected it with resolution, I had been slain if I had had a million of lives. Observe me judicially, sweet sir. They had planted me three demiculvirins just in the mouth of the breach, but I, with these single arms, my poor rapier, ran violently upon the Moors, and put 'em pell-mell to the sword.

[Enter BRAIN-WORM, who discloses himself apart, to KNOWELL and WELL-BRED, and reports that OLD KNOWELL is awaiting his return at JUSTICE CLEMENT'S house. Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—At KITELY'S. KITELY has gone to JUSTICE CLEMENT'S; very anxious about his wife and sister, he has ordered CASH to send him a messenger if WELL-BRED comes home with any of his boon-companions. Enter to CASH, WELL-BRED, with the party as in the last scene.

WELL-BRED: Whither went your master, Thomas, canst thou tell?

CASH: I know not; to Justice Clement's, I think, sir.

[Exit.]

KNOWELL: Justice Clement! What's he?

WELL-BRED: Why, dost thou not know him? He is a city magistrate, a justice here, an excellent good lawyer and a great scholar; but the only mad merry old fellow in Europe.

[Enter CASH.]

BOBADILL: Master Kitley's man, pray thee vouchsafe us the lighting of this match. (CASH takes match, and exits) 'Tis your right, Trinidado. Did you never take any, Master Stephen?

STEPHEN: No, truly, sir, but I'll learn to take it now, since you commend it so.

BOBADILL: Sir, I have been in the Indies where this herb grows; where neither myself nor a dozen gentlemen more of my knowledge have received the taste of any other nutriment in the world for the space of one and twenty weeks, but the fume of this simple only. By Hercules, I do hold it, and will affirm it, before any

prince in Europe, to be the most sovereign and precious weed that ever the earth tendered to the use of man.

[*COB has entered meanwhile.*

COB: Mack, I marvel what pleasure they have in taking this roguish tobacco. It's good for nothing but to choke a man, and fill him full of smoke and embers. And there were no wiser men than I, I'd have it present whipping, man or woman, that should but deal with a tobacco pipe.

[*BOBADILL cudgels him. Enter CASH, who drags off the lamenting COB. While the rest are conversing, MATTHEW and BOBADILL slip out.*

WELL-BRED: Soft, where's Master Matthew? Gone?

BRAIN-WORM: No, sir, they went in here.

WELL-BRED: Oh, let's follow them. Master Matthew is gone to salute his mistress in verse. We shall have the happiness to hear some of his poetry now. He never comes impoverished.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.—JUSTICE CLEMENT'S. *COB finds KITELY and reports the arrival of WELL-BRED'S party. KITELY hurries home in a panic. Enter CLEMENT with OLD KNOWELL and FORMAL.*

CLEMENT (*to COB*): How now, sirrah? What make you here?

COB: A poor neighbour of your worship, come to crave the peace of your worship; a warrant for one that has wronged me, sir; an I die within a twelvemonth and a day, I may swear by the law of the land that he killed me.

CLEMENT: How, knave? What colour hast thou for that?

COB: Both black and blue, an't please your worship; colour enough, I warrant you. [*Baring his arm.*]

CLEMENT: How began the quarrel between you?

COB: Marry indeed, an't please your worship, only because I spake against their vagrant tobacco; for nothing else.

CLEMENT: Ha! You speak against tobacco. Your name?

COB: Cob, sir, Oliver Cob.

CLEMENT: Then, Oliver Cob, you shall go to jail.

COB: Oh, I beseech your worship, for heaven's sake, dear master justice!

CLEMENT: He shall not go; I did but fear the knave. Formal, give him his warrant. (*Exeunt FORMAL and COB*) How now, Master Knowell, in dumps? Your cares are nothing. What! Your son is old enough to govern himself; let him run his course.

#### ACT IV

SCENE I.—*At KITELY'S. DAME KITELY and DOWN-RIGHT, who, to his sister's great indignation, is reprovng her for admitting WELL-BRED'S companions. Enter BRIDGET, MATTHEW, and BOBADILL; WELL-BRED, STEPHEN, YOUNG KNOWELL, and BRAIN-WORM at the back.*

BRIDGET: Servant, in truth, you are too prodigal  
Of your wit's treasure thus to pour it forth  
Upon so mean a subject as my worth.  
What is this same, I pray you?

MATTHEW: Marry, an elegy, an elegy, an odd toy.  
I'll read it if you please.

[*Exit DOWN-RIGHT, disgusted. The rest listen to MATTHEW'S "elegy," consisting of scraps*]

*from Marlowe. As DOWN-RIGHT re-enters, fuming, WELL-BRED is beginning to chaff MATTHEW. DOWN-RIGHT interrupts with an attack on the whole company, and threatens to slit BOBADILL'S ears. Swords are drawn all round, and KNOWELL is endeavouring to calm the disturbance, when KITELY enters.*

WELL-BRED: Come, let's go. This is one of my brother's ancient humours, this.

STEPHEN: I am glad nobody was hurt by his "ancient humour."

*[Exeunt all but they of the house. BRIDGET and DAME KITELY praise the conduct of KNOWELL, whereupon KITELY conceives that he must be DAME KITELY'S lover.]*

SCENE II.—*The Old Jewry. WELL-BRED has agreed with KNOWELL to persuade BRIDGET to meet him at the Tower so that they may be married. BRAIN-WORM has been despatched to carry out other details of the plot. Meeting OLD KNOWELL with FORMAL he reports that (as FITZSWORD) his connection with OLD KNOWELL has been discovered; that he has escaped with difficulty from YOUNG KNOWELL, and that the father had better hasten to Cob's house to catch his son in flagrante delicto. He then goes off with FORMAL. Enter BOBADILL, YOUNG KNOWELL, MATTHEW, and STEPHEN.*

BOBADILL: I will tell you, sir, by way of private; were I known to her majesty, I would undertake to save three parts of her yearly charge in holding war. Thus, sir, I would select nineteen more gentlemen of good spirit; and I would teach the special rules, your punto, your reverso, your staccato, till they could all play very near as well as myself. We twenty would come into the field, and we would challenge twenty of the enemy; kill them, challenge twenty more; kill them, and thus kill every

man his twenty a day, that's twenty score; twenty score, that's two hundred; five days a thousand, two hundred days kills forty thousand.

*[Enter DOWN-RIGHT, who challenges BOBADILL to draw on the spot, and cudgels him while MATTHEW runs away, to KNOWELL'S enjoyment. Exeunt all. WELL-BRED makes the proposed arrangement with BRIDGET. BRAIN-WORM, who has stolen FORMAL'S clothes, tricks KITELY and DAME KITELY severally into hurrying off to COB'S house to catch each other in misdoing. Then, meeting BOBADILL and MATTHEW he engages to procure them a warrant against DOWN-RIGHT, and a sergeant to serve it. OLD KNOWELL, KITELY, and DAME KITELY attended by CASH, meet outside COB'S house, each with their own suspicions; there is a general altercation, while TIB refuses to admit any of them.]*

SCENE III.—*A street. BRAIN-WORM, who has exchanged FORMAL'S clothes for a sergeant's attire. Enter MATTHEW and BOBADILL.*

MATTHEW: 'Save you, friend. Are you not here by appointment of Justice Clement's man?

BRAIN-WORM: Yes, an't please you, sir; with a warrant to be served on one Down-right.

*[Enter STEPHEN, wearing DOWN-RIGHT'S cloak, which he had picked up in the scrimmage. As they are arresting him, DOWN-RIGHT enters. He submits to arrest, but has STEPHEN arrested for wearing his cloak. The whole party marches off to JUSTICE CLEMENT'S.]*

## ACT V

SCENE.—*Hall in JUSTICE CLEMENT'S.* CLEMENT, KITELY, OLD KNOWELL.

CLEMENT: Stay, stay, give me leave; my chair, sirrah. Master Knowell, you went to meet your son. Mistress Kately, you went to find your husband; you, Master Kately, to find your wife. And Well-bred told her first, and you after. You are gulled in this most grossly all.

[BOBADILL *and* MATTHEW *are ushered in; then* BRAIN-WORM, *with* DOWN-RIGHT *and* STEPHEN; *all make their charges.*

CLEMENT: You there (*to* BOBADILL), had you my warrant for this gentleman's apprehension?

BOBADILL: Ay, an't please your worship; I had it of your clerk.

CLEMENT: Officer (*to* BRAIN-WORM), have you the warrant?

BRAIN-WORM: No, sir; your worship's man, Master Formal, bid me do it.

*BRAIN-WORM, in fear of some worse penalty, discloses himself. As he reveals one after another of his devices, the delighted JUSTICE begs for him a readily granted pardon from OLD KNOWELL. Finally, he announces that by this time YOUNG KNOWELL and BRIDGET are married. CLEMENT despatches a servant to bring home the young couple to dinner "upon my warrant." Enter BRIDGET, YOUNG KNOWELL, and WELL-BRED.*

CLEMENT: Oh, the young company—welcome, welcome, give you joy. Nay, Mistress Bridget, blush not; Master Bridegroom, I have made your peace; give me your hand. So will I for all the rest, ere you forsake my roof. Come, put off all discontent; you, Master Down-right, your anger; you, Master Knowell, your cares; Master Kately and his wife, their jealousy.

KITELY: Sir, thus they go from me. Kiss me, sweetheart.

CLEMENT: 'Tis well, 'tis well. This night we'll dedicate to friendship, love, and laughter.

### **FOOTNOTES:**

[P] Ben Jonson was born at Westminster in 1573. He was brought up by his stepfather, a master bricklayer, and educated at Westminster School, where he got his learning under Camden. While still a youngster, he went a-fighting in the Low Countries, returning to London about 1592. In 1598 he emerged as a dramatic author with the play "Every Man in His Humour." This was the first of a series of comedies, tragedies, and masques, which rank highly. In human interest, however, none surpassed his first success. Unlike Shakespeare, with whom he consorted among the famous gatherings of wits at the Mermaid Tavern, Jonson regarded himself as the exponent of a theory of dramatic art. He was steeped in classical learning, which he is wont to display somewhat excessively. Besides his dramas, Jonson wrote many lyrical pieces, including some admirable songs, and produced sundry examples of other forms of versification. He died on August 6, 1637.

---

# JUVENAL<sup>[Q]</sup>



# Satires

## *I.—Of Satire and its Subjects*

Still shall I hear and never pay the score,  
Stunned with hoarse Codrus' "Theseid" o'er  
and o'er?  
Shall this man's elegies and the other's play  
Unpunished murder a long summer day?

The poet exclaims against the dreary commonplaces in contemporary poetry, and against recitations fit to crack the very statues and colonnades of the neighbourhood! But *he* also underwent his training in rhetoric.

So, since the world with writing is possessed,  
*I'll versify in spite, and do my best*  
To make as much wastepaper as the rest!

It may be asked, why write satire? The reason is to be found in the ubiquitous presence of offensive men and women. It would goad anyone into fury to note the social abuses, the mannish women, and the wealthy upstarts of the imperial city.

When the soft eunuch weds, and the bold fair  
Tilts at the Tuscan boar with bosom bare,  
When all our lords are by his wealth outvied  
Whose razor on my callow beard was tried,  
When I behold the spawn of conquered Nile,  
Crispinus, both in birth and manners vile,  
Pacing in pomp with cloak of purple dye—  
I cannot keep from satire, though I try!

There is an endless succession of figures to annoy: the too successful lawyer, the treacherous spy, the legacy-hunter. How one's anger blazes when a ward is driven to evil courses by the unscrupulous knavery of a guardian, or when a guilty governor gets a merely nominal sentence!

Marius, who pilled his province, 'scapes the  
laws,  
And keeps his money, though he lost his  
cause:  
His fine begged off, contemns his infamy,  
Can rise at twelve, and get him drunk ere  
three—  
Enjoys his exile, and, condemned in vain,  
Leaves thee, victorious province, to  
complain!  
Such villainies roused Horace into wrath,  
And 'tis more noble to pursue his path  
Than an old tale of Trojan brave to treat,  
Or Hercules, or Labyrinth of Crete.

It is no time to write fabulous epics when cuckolds connive at a wife's dishonour, and when horse-racing ne'er-do-wells expect commissions in the army. One is tempted to fill volumes in the open street about such figures as the forger carried by his slaves in a handsome litter, or about the wealthy widow acquainted with the mode of getting rid of a husband by poison.

Wouldst thou to honours and preferment  
climb?  
Be bold in mischief—dare some mighty  
crime,  
Which dungeons, death, or banishment  
deserves,  
For virtue is but drily praised—and starves.  
To crime men owe a mansion, park, and state,  
Their goblets richly chased and antique plate.  
Say, who can find a night's repose at need,  
When a son's wife is bribed to sin for greed,  
When brides are frail, and youths turn  
paramours?  
If nature can't, then wrath our verse ensures!  
Count from the time since old Deucalion's  
boat,  
Raised by the flood, did on Parnassus float:

Whatever since that golden age was done,  
What human kind desires, and what they  
    shun,  
Joy, sorrow, fear, love, hatred, transport, rage,  
Shall form the motley subject of my page.  
    And when could Satire boast so fair a  
    field?  
Say, when did vice a richer harvest yield?  
When did fell avarice so engross the mind?  
Or when the lust of play so curse mankind?  
O Gold, though Rome beholds no altar's  
    flame,  
No temples rise to thy pernicious name,  
Such as to Victory, Virtue, Faith are reared,  
Or Concord, where the clamorous stork is  
    heard,  
Yet is thy full divinity confessed,  
Thy shrine established here, in every breast.

After a vigorous outburst against the degrading scramble among impoverished clients for doles from their patrons, and a mordant onslaught upon the gluttony of the niggardly rich, Juvenal sees in his age the high-water mark of iniquity.

Nothing is left, nothing for future times,  
To add to the full catalogue of crimes:  
Vice has attained its zenith; then set sail,  
Spread all thy canvas, Satire, to the gale.

## *II.—A Satire on Rome*

This sharp indictment is put in the mouth of one Umbricius, who is represented as leaving his native city in disgust. Rome is no place for an honourable character, he exclaims.

Here, then, I bid my much-loved home  
    farewell.  
Ah, mine no more! There let Arturius dwell,

And Catulus; knaves, who, in truth's despite,  
Can white to black transform, and black to  
white.

Build temples, furnish funerals, auctions hold,  
Farm rivers, ports, and scour the drains for  
gold!

But why, my friend, should *I* at Rome  
remain?

*I* cannot teach my stubborn lips to feign;  
Nor when I hear a great man's verses, smile,  
And beg a copy, if I think them vile.

The worst feature is the predominance of crafty and cozening Greeks, who, by their versatility and diplomacy, can oust the Roman.

I cannot rule my spleen and calmly see  
A Grecian capital—in Italy!  
A flattering, cringing, treacherous artful race,  
Of torrent tongue, and never-blushing face;  
A Protean tribe, one knows not what to call,  
Which shifts to every form, and shines in all:  
Grammarian, painter, augur, rhetorician,  
Rope-dancer, conjurer, fiddler, and physician,  
All trades his own your hungry Greekling  
counts;  
And bid him mount the sky—the sky he  
mounts!

The insinuating flatteries of these aliens are so masterfully contrived that the blunt Roman has no chance against such a nation of actors.

Greece is a theatre where all are players.  
For, lo! their patron smiles—they burst with  
mirth;  
He weeps—they droop, the saddest souls on  
earth;  
He calls for fire—they court the mantle's heat;  
"Tis warm," he cries—the Greeks dissolve in  
sweat!

Besides, they are dangerously immoral. Their philosophers are perfidious. These sycophant foreigners can poison a patron against a poor Roman client. This leads to an outburst against poverty and its disadvantages.

The question is not put, how far extends  
One's piety, but what he yearly spends.  
The account is soon cast up: the judges rate  
Our credit in the court by our estate.  
Add that the rich have still a gibe in store,  
And will be monstrous witty on the poor.  
This mournful truth is everywhere confessed

—  
Slow rises worth by property depressed.  
At Rome 'tis worse; where house-rent by the  
year,  
And servants' bellies costs so devilish dear.

It is a city where appearance beyond one's means must be kept up; whereas, in the country one need never spend money even on a toga. Everything has its price in Rome. To interview a great man, his pampered lackeys must have a fee.

Then there are risks in a great capital unknown in country towns. There are tumble-down tenements with the buttresses ready to give; there are top garrets where you may lose your life in a fire. You could buy a nice rustic home for the price at which a dingy hovel is let in Rome. Besides, the din of the streets is killing. Rome is bad for the nerves. Folk die of insomnia. By day you get crushed, bumped, and caked with mud. A soldier drives his hobnails into your toe. You may be the victim of a street accident.

Heavens! should the axle crack, which bears a  
weight  
Of huge Ligurian stone, and pour the freight  
On the pale crowd beneath, what would  
remain,  
What joint, what bone, what atom of the  
slain?  
The body, with the soul, would vanish quite,  
Invisible, as air, to mortal sight!  
Meanwhile, unconscious of their master's  
fate,  
At home they heat the water, scour the plate,

Arrange the strigils, fill the cruse with oil,  
And ply their several tasks with fruitless toil.  
But he, the mangled victim, now a ghost,  
Sits pale and trembling on the Stygian coast,  
A stranger shivering at the novel scene,  
At Charon's threatening voice and scowling  
mien,  
Nor hopes a passage thus abruptly hurled,  
Without his farthing to the nether world.

In the dark there are equal perils.

Prepare for death if here at night you roam,  
And sign your will before you sup from  
home.

Lucky if people throw only dirty water from their windows! Be thankful to escape without a broken skull. A drunken bully may meet you.

There are who murder as an opiate take,  
And only when no brawls await them, wake.

And what chance have you, without attendants, against a street rough?  
Then there is the burglar; and the criminal classes are regularly increased in town whenever the authorities grow active enough to clear the main Italian roads of bandits.

The forge in fetters only is employed;  
Our iron-mines exhausted and destroyed  
In shackles; for these villains scarce allow  
Goads for our teams or ploughshares for the  
plough.  
Oh, happy ages of our ancestors,  
Beneath the kings and tribunician powers!  
One jail did all the criminals restrain,  
Whom now the walls of Rome can scarce  
contain.

### *III.—A Satire on the Vanity of Human Wishes*

Look round the habitable world; how few  
Know their own good; or, knowing it, pursue.  
To headlong ruin see whole houses driven,  
Cursed with their prayers, by too indulgent  
heaven.

The several passions and aspirations of mankind, successively examined in the light of legend and history, prove how hollow, if not pernicious, are the principal objects of pursuit. Wealth is one of the commonest aims.

But avarice spreads her deadly snare,  
And hoards amassed with too successful care.  
For wealth, in the black days, at Nero's word,  
The ruffian bands unsheathed the murderous  
sword.

Cut-throats commissioned by the government  
Are seldom to an empty garret sent.  
The traveller freighted with a little wealth,  
Sets forth at night, and wins his way by  
stealth:

Even then he fears the bludgeon and the blade

---

Starts in the moonlight at a rush's shade,  
While, void of care, the beggar trips along,  
And to the robber's face will troll his song.

What would the "weeping" and the "laughing" sages of ancient Greece have thought of the pageants of modern Rome? Consider the vanity of ambition. It is illustrated by the downfall of the powerful minister Sejanus. On his overthrow, the fickle mob turned savagely upon his statues.

What think the people? They!  
They follow fortune, as of old, and hate  
With all their soul the victim of the state.  
Yet in this very hour that self-same crowd  
Had hailed Sejanus with a shout as loud,  
If his designs (by fortune's favour blessed)

Had prospered, and the aged prince  
    oppressed;  
For since our votes have been no longer  
    bought,  
All public care has vanished from our  
    thought.  
Romans, who once with unresisted sway,  
Gave armies, empire, everything, away,  
For two poor claims have long renounced the  
    whole  
And only ask—the circus and a dole.

Would you rather be an instance of fallen greatness, or enjoy some safe post in an obscure Italian town? What ruined a Crassus? Or a Pompey? Or a victorious Cæsar? Why, the realisation of their own soaring desires.

Another vain aspiration covets fame in eloquence. But the gift of oratory overthrew the two greatest orators of Greece and Rome—Demosthenes and Cicero. If Cicero had only stuck to his bad verses, he would never have earned Antony's deadly hatred by his "Second Philippic" (see Vol. IX, p. 155).

"I do congratulate the Roman state  
Which my great consulate did recreate!"  
If he had always used such jingling words  
He might have scorned Mark Antony's  
    swords.

A different passion is for renown in war. What is the end of it all? Only an epitaph on a tombstone, and tombstones themselves perish; for even a tree may split them!

Produce the urn that Hannibal contains,  
And weigh the paltry dust which yet remains.  
AND IS THIS ALL? Yet THIS was once the bold,  
The aspiring chief, whom Afric could not  
    hold.  
Spain conquered, o'er the Pyrenees he  
    bounds;  
Nature opposed her everlasting mounds,

Her Alps and snows. O'er these with torrent  
     force  
 He pours, and rends through rocks his  
     dreadful course.  
 Already at his feet Italia lies.  
 Yet, thundering on, "Think nothing done," he  
     cries,  
 "Till Rome, proud Rome, beneath my fury  
     falls,  
 And Afric's standards float without her  
     walls!"  
 But what ensued? Illusive glory, say.  
 Subdued on Zama's memorable day,  
 He flies in exile to a petty state,  
 With headlong haste; and, at a despot's gate,  
 Sits, mighty suppliant, of his life in doubt,  
 Till the Bithynian monarch's nap be out!  
 Nor swords, nor spears, nor stones from  
     engines hurled,  
 Shall quell the man whose frown alarmed the  
     world:  
 The vengeance due to Cannæ's fatal field,  
 And floods of gore, a poisoned ring shall  
     yield!  
 Fly, madman, fly! At toil and danger mock,  
 Pierce the deep snow, and scale the eternal  
     rock,  
 To please the rhetoricians, and become  
 A declamation—for the boys of Rome!

Consider next the yearning after long life.

Pernicious prayer! for mark what ills attend  
 Still on the old, as to the grave they bend:  
 A ghastly visage, to themselves unknown;  
 For a smooth skin, a hide with scurf  
     o'ergrown;  
 And such a cheek, as many a grandam ape

In Tabraca's thick woods is seen to scrape.

The old man rouses feelings of impatient loathing in those around him; his physical strength and faculties for enjoyment are gone. Even if he remain hale, he may suffer harrowing bereavements. Nestor, Peleus, and Priam had to lament the death of heroic sons; and in Roman history Marius and Pompey outlived their good fortune.

Campania, prescient of her Pompey's fate,  
Sent a kind fever to arrest his date:

When lo! a thousand suppliant altars rise,  
And public prayers obtain him of the skies.  
The city's fate and his conspired to save  
His head, to perish near the Egyptian wave.

Again, there is the frequent prayer for good looks. But beauty is a danger. If linked with unchastity, it leads to evil courses. Even if linked with chastity, it may draw on its possessor the tragic fate of a Lucretia, a Virginia, a Hippolytus, or a Bellerophon. What is a Roman knight to do if an empress sets her heart on him?

Amid all such vanities, then, is there nothing left for which men may reasonably pray?

Say, then, shall man, deprived all power of  
choice,  
Ne'er raise to Heaven the supplicating voice?  
Not so; but to the gods his fortunes trust.  
*Their* thoughts are wise, *their* dispensations  
just.

What best may profit or delight they know,  
And real good for fancied bliss bestow;  
With eyes of pity they our frailties scan;  
More dear to them than to himself is man.  
By blind desire, by headlong passion driven,  
For wife and heirs we daily weary Heaven;  
Yet still 'tis Heaven's prerogative to know,  
If heirs, or wife, will bring us weal or woe.  
But (for 'tis good our humble hope to  
prove),

That thou mayst still ask something from  
above,  
Thy pious offerings to the temple bear,  
And, while the altars blaze, be this thy prayer:  
O THOU, who know'st the wants of human  
kind,  
Vouchsafe me health of body, health of mind;  
A soul prepared to meet the frown of fate,  
And look undaunted on a future state;  
That reckons death a blessing, yet can bear  
Existence nobly, with its weight of care;  
That anger and desire alike restrains,  
And counts Alcides' toils, and cruel pains,  
Superior far to banquets, wanton nights,  
And all the Assyrian monarch's soft delights!

Here bound, at length, thy wishes. I but  
teach  
What blessings man, by his own powers, may  
reach.  
THE PATH TO PEACE IS VIRTUE. We should see,  
If wise, O Fortune, nought divine in thee:  
But *we* have deified a name alone,  
And fixed in heaven thy visionary throne!

## FOOTNOTES:

[Q] Juvenal was born, it is usually believed, at Aquinum, about 55 A.D. He lived to an advanced age, but the year of his death is unknown. Rome he evidently knew well, and from long experience. But there is great obscurity about his career. His "Satires," in declamatory indignation, form a powerful contrast to the genial mockery of Horace (p. 91): where Horace may be said to have a Chaucerian smile for human weakness, Juvenal displays the wrath of a Langland. Juvenal denounces abuses at Rome in unmeasured terms. Frequently Zolaesque in his methods of exposing vice, he contrives by his realism to produce a loathing for the objects of his attack. Dryden rendered into free and vigorous English several of the satires; and Gifford wrote a complete translation, often of great merit. The translation here has, with adaptations, been drawn from both, and a few lines have been incorporated from Johnson, whose two best-

known poems, "London" and "The Vanity of Human Wishes," were paraphrases from Juvenal.

---

# FRIEDRICH KLOPSTOCK<sup>[R]</sup>

---

# The Messiah

## *I.—The Mount of Olives*

Rejoice, ye sons of earth, in the honour bestowed on man. He who was before all worlds, by Whom all things in this visible creation were made, descended to our earth as your Redeemer. Near Jerusalem, once the city where God displayed His grace, the Divine Redeemer withdrew from the multitude and sought retirement. On the side where the sun first gilds the city with its beams rises a mountain, whose summit He had oft honoured with His presence when during the solitary night He spent the hours in fervent prayer.

Gabriel, descending, stands between two perfumed cedars and addresses Jesus.

Wilt Thou, Lord, here devote the night to  
prayer,  
Or weary, dost thou seek a short repose?  
Permit that I for Thine immortal head  
A yielding couch prepare. Behold the shrubs  
And saplings of the cedar, far and near,  
Their balmy foliage already show.  
Among the tombs in which Thy prophets rest  
The cooling earth yields unmolested moss.

Jesus answered not, but regarded Gabriel with a look of divine complacency. He went up to the summit, where were the confines of heaven, and there prayed. Earth rejoiced at the renewal of her beauty as His voice resounded and penetrated the gates of the deep, but only He and the Eternal Father knew the whole meaning of the divine petition. As Jesus arose from prayer, in His face shone sublimity, love, and resignation.

Now He and the Eternal Father entered on discourse mysterious and profound, obscure even to immortals; discourse of things which in future ages should display to man the love of God. A seraph entered the borders of the celestial world, whose whole extent is surrounded by suns. No dark planet approaches the refulgent blaze.

There, central of the circumvolving suns,

Heaven, archetype of every blissful sphere,  
Orbicular in blazing glory, swims,  
And circumfuges through infinitude  
In copious streams, the splendour of the  
spheres.

Harmonious sounds of its revolving motion  
Are wafted on the pinions of the winds  
To circumambient suns. The potent songs  
Of voice and harp celestial intermingle  
And seem the animation of the whole.

Up to this sacred way Gabriel ascended, approaching heaven, which, in the very centre of the assemblage of suns, rises into a vast dome. When the Eternal walks forth, the harmonic choirs, borne on the wings of the wind to the borders of the sunny arch, chant His praise, joining the melody of their golden harps. During the hymn the seraph, as messenger of the Mediator, stood on one of the suns nearest heaven. The Eternal Father rewarded the choirs with a look of benignity and then beheld the Chief Seraph, whose name with God is *The Chosen*, and by the heavenly host is called *Eloah*.

The awful thunder seven times rolled forth,  
The sacred gloom dispelling, and the Voice  
Divine gently descended: "God is Love.  
E'er beings gently emanated I was Love.

Creating worlds, I ever was the same,  
And such I am in the accomplishment  
Of my profoundest, most mysterious deed.  
But in the death of the Eternal Son  
Ye learn to know Me wholly—God, the Judge  
Of every world. New adoration then  
Ye will to the Supreme of heaven address."

The seraph having descended to the altar of the earth, Adam, filled with eager expectation, hastened to him. A lucid, ethereal body was the radiant mansion of his blessed spirit, and his form was as lovely as the bright image in the Creator's mind when meditating on the form of man in the blooming fields of Paradise. Adam approached with a radiant smile, which suffused over his countenance an air of ineffable and sweetest dignity, and thus with impassioned accents he spoke.

Hail, blessed seraph, messenger of peace!  
 Thy voice, resounding of thy message high,  
 Has filled our souls with rapture. Son of God,  
 Messiah, O that Thee I could behold,  
 Behold Thee in the beauty of Thy manhood,  
 E'en as this seraph sees Thee in the form  
 Which Thy compassion prompted Thee to  
     take  
 My wretched progeny from death to save.  
 Point out to me, O seraph, show to me,  
 Where my Redeemer walked, my loving  
     Lord;  
 Only from far I will His step attend.

Gabriel descends again to earth, the stars silently saluting him with a universal morn. He finds Jesus placidly sleeping on a bare rock, and after long contemplation, apostrophises all nature to be silent, for her Creator sleeps.

## *II.—Of Satan Warring, and the Council of the Sanhedrim*

The morn descends over the forest of waving cedars, and Jesus awakes. The spirits of the patriarchs see Him with joy from their solar mansion. Raphael, John's guardian angel, tells Jesus that this disciple is viewing a demoniac among the sepulchres on the Mount of Olives. He goes thither, and puts Satan to flight, who, returning to hell, gives an account of what he knows of Jesus, and determines that He shall be put to death. Satan is opposed by Abaddon. Another grim fiend speaks.

Then Moloch fierce approached, a martial  
     spirit.  
 From mountains and entrenchments huge he  
     came,  
 Which still he forms, thus the domains of hell  
 To fence, in case the Thundering Warrior e'er  
 (He thus the dread Eternal nominates)  
 From heaven descending, should th' abyss  
     molest.  
 All before Moloch with respect retired.  
 In sable armour clad, which to his pace

Resounded, he advanced as does a storm  
Amid dark lowering clouds. The mountains  
shook  
Before him, and behind, a trembling rock  
In shattered fragments sunk. Thus he  
advanced  
And soon attained the first revolter's throne.

After the council of fiends, all hell approves Satan's determination. Satan and Adramelech return to earth to execute their design. Abaddon, following them at a distance, sees at the gate of hell Abdiel, the seraph who was once his friend, whom he addresses. But Abdiel ignoring him, he presses forward, bewails the loss of his glory, despairs of finding grace, and after vainly endeavouring to destroy himself, descends to earth. Satan and Adramelech also advance to earth and alight on Mount Olivet.

They both advanced and stormed against the  
Mount  
Of Olives, the Redeemer there to find  
Assembled with His confidential friends.  
Thus down into the vale destructive cars  
Of battle roll, against th' intrepid chief  
Of the advancing and undaunted host.  
Now brazen warriors throng from every point.  
The thundering crash of the encounter, clash  
Of sword and shield, a sullen iron din  
O'er distant rocks resounds tow'rd heaven  
aloft,  
And in the valley scatters death around.

Caiaphas assembles the Sanhedrim, and relates a vision which has terrified him. He declares that Jesus must die, but counsels caution as to the manner of the execution. Philo, a dreaded priest and Pharisee, steps forward, and with great vehemence pronounces the dream of Caiaphas a mere empty fiction, yet joins in counselling the death of Jesus. He declares Caiaphas a disgrace to the priesthood of God, but that Jesus would abolish the priesthood altogether.

So saying, Philo, with uplifted arms,  
Advanced in the assembly and exclaimed:  
"Spirit of Moses, reigning now in bliss,

Whether in thy celestial robes thou art,  
Or whether thy yet mortal children now  
In council met beneath a humble roof,  
Thou deign'st to visit. Solemnly  
I swear to thee, by yon dread covenant,  
Which thou to us hast brought out of the  
storm  
From God, to thee on Sinai revealed:  
I will not rest till this thine adversary,  
Who hates thy laws and thee, be from this  
earth  
Exterminated."

The evil counsel is warmly opposed by Gamaliel and Nicodemus. Judas has a private conference with Caiaphas. The Messiah sends Peter and John into Jerusalem to prepare the Passover. Jesus, going to Jerusalem, is met by Judas. Jesus institutes a memorial of His death. Judas goes out from the supper. Then Jesus prays for His disciples, and returns to the Mount of Olives.

### *III.—Eloah Sings the Redeemer's Glory*

God descends towards the earth to judge the Mediator, and rests on Tabor. The Almighty sends the seraph Eloah to comfort Jesus in Gethsemane by singing a triumphant song on His future glory.

He soared on golden clouds and sang aloud:  
"Hail me, I was found worthy after Thee  
To feel what Thou dost feel, and to behold  
At humble distance the Messiah's thoughts,  
Which in the fearful and most dreadful hour  
Of His humiliation, fill His mind.  
No finite being ever saw God's thoughts:  
Yet I have been found worthy from afar,  
From an obscure dimension of created  
And but finite understanding, to extend  
My view into Divine Infinitude!  
O with what feelings of creation new,  
Divine Messiah, those redeemed by Thee—

With what surpassing transport they will see  
Thee on Thy everlasting throne of glory!  
How they will then behold those radiant  
    wounds,  
The splendid testimonies of Thy love  
To Adam's race! How they will shout Thy  
    praise  
In never-ceasing songs and alleluias!  
Ah, then the angel Death's tremendous trump  
Will nevermore be heard, nor thunders, then,  
O'er Thy redeemed from the Throne will roll,  
The depths will bow before Thee, and the  
    heights  
To Thee, the Judge, will folded hands uplift.  
The last of days will evanescent die  
Before the throne, lost in eternity.  
And Thou wilt gather all the righteous souls  
Around Thee, that they, face to face, may see  
Thy glory and behold Thee as Thou art."

Now the Messiah from the crimsoned dust  
Rose victor, and the heavens sang aloud—  
The third heaven, of the great Messiah's most  
Transcendent sufferings which brought  
    endless life  
To precious souls, as now gone over Him.  
So sang the heavens.

#### ***IV.—Pilate's Wife Bewails the Saviour's Sufferings***

The Messiah is seized and bound. The assembled priests are seized with consternation, but their fears are removed by the arrival of successive messengers. Jesus being taken before Annas, Philo goes thither and brings Him to Caiaphas. Portia, Pilate's wife, comes to see Jesus. She approaches from the Procurator's palace near the hall of assembly, by an arcade lit by lamps.

Impelled by curiosity at last  
The great and wondrous Prophet to behold,  
She to the high-priest's palace came in haste,  
Only few attendants being with her.  
And Portia saw Him Who awoke the dead,  
And Who serenely bore the hellish rage  
And malice of indignant priests, and now,  
With wondrous magnanimity stood forth  
Resolved to act with greatness, unadmired,  
To beings so degenerate still unknown.  
With fervid expectation and with joy  
She stood and gazed upon the Holy Man,  
And saw how He, sublime with dignified  
Serenity, His base accusers faced.

On false evidence of suborned witnesses Jesus is condemned. Eloah and Gabriel discourse on the Saviour's sufferings.

GABRIEL: Eloah! He at whose command the  
dead  
Of the renewed creation shall arise,  
The tempest of the resurrection shaking  
The earth around, that she with bearing throes  
Will yield the dust at His almighty call.  
He then with thunders and attendant hosts  
Of angels and in terrors clad, that stars  
Before Him sink, will judge that sinful world.

ELOAH: He said, Let there be light! And there  
was light.  
Thou, Gabriel, sawest how at His command  
Effulgent beams rushed forth! With thought  
profound  
He still advanced: and lo, at His right hand  
Ten thousand times ten thousand beings bright  
Collected, and an animating storm  
Advanced before Him. Then the suns  
Rolled in their orbits! Then the harmony

Of morning spheres resounded round the poles.  
And then the heavens appeared!

GABRIEL: And at His word  
Eternal night sank far below the heavens!  
Thou sawest, Eloah, how He stood on high  
O'er the Profound. He spake again, and, lo,  
A hideous mass inanimate appeared  
And lay before Him, seeming ruins vast  
Of broken suns, or of a hundred worlds  
To chaos crushed. He summoned then the flame,  
And the nocturnal blaze rushed in the fields  
Of everlasting death. Then misery  
Existed, which from the depths ascended  
In cries of anguish and despondency.  
Then was created the infernal gulf!

Thus they communed. Portia no longer could  
The Blessed Saviour's sufferings behold,  
And lone ascended to the palace roof.  
She stood and wrung her hands, her weeping eyes  
To heaven uplifted, while she thus express'd  
The agitated feelings of her heart:  
"O Thou, the First of Gods, who didst create  
This world from night of darkness, and who gav'st  
A heart to man! Whatever be Thy name—  
God, Jupiter, Jehovah, Romulus?  
Or Abraham's God? Not of chosen few,  
Thou art the Judge and Father of us all!  
May I before Thee, Lord, with tears display  
The feelings of my heart, and rend my soul?  
What is the crime of this most peaceful man?  
Why should He thus be barbarously used  
And persecuted even unto death  
By these inhuman and relentless men?  
Dost Thou delight from Thine Olympus, Lord,  
To look on suffering virtue? Is to Thee  
The object sacred? To the heart of men,

That is not of humanity devoid,  
It is most awful, wondrous, and endearing;  
But He who formed the stars, can He admire  
And wonder? No, far too sublime is He  
To admiration ever scope to give!  
Yet th' object must e'en to the God of Gods  
Be sacred, else He never could permit  
That thus the good and guiltless be oppress'd.  
My tears of pity and compassion flow,  
But thou discernest suffering virtue's tears  
That flow in secret and to Thee appeal.  
Great God of Gods, reward and if Thou canst,  
Admire the magnanimity He shows."

Peter, in deep distress, tells John he has denied his Master, then departs and deplores his guilt.

### *V.—The Day of Oblation*

Eloah welcomes the returning morn with a hymn, and hails the Day of the Atonement, precious, fair day of oblation, sent by Love Divine.

The Messiah is led to Pilate, and is accused by Caiaphas and Philo. Judas, in despair, destroys himself. Jesus is sent to Herod, who, expecting to see a miracle, is disappointed. After being treated with derision, Jesus is sent back to Pilate, who seeks to save Him, but is persuaded to release Barabbas. Jesus is scourged, arrayed in a purple robe, crowned with thorns, and delivered to the priests, who cause Him to be led to crucifixion. Eloah descends from the throne and proclaims that the Redeemer is led to death, on which the angels of the earth form a circle round Mount Calvary. Jesus is nailed to the cross. One of the two thieves crucified with Him is converted. Uriel places a planet before the sun to obscure the dreadful scene on Calvary, and then conducts to earth the souls of all future generations of mankind.

The Angel of Death descends to address Jesus, Who dies. The earth shakes, the veil of the Temple is rent, the Old Testament saints are raised. The converted thief dies. Joseph of Arimathea begs the body of Jesus, and he and Nicodemus wrap it in spices and perform the interment. Mary and some devout women meet in John's house, to which Nicodemus brings the crown of thorns taken from the body at burial. The interment is solemnised by choirs of risen saints and angels.

FOOTNOTES:

[R] Friedrich Gottlieb Klopstock, who was born at Quedlinburg on July 2, 1724, and died on March 14, 1803, was one of Germany's most famous eighteenth century poets. While studying theology at Jena University, he conceived the idea of a great spiritual epic, and actually planned in prose the first three cantos of "The Messiah," which he afterwards finished at Leipzig. These were published anonymously in the *Bremische Beiträge* in 1748, the remaining five appearing in 1773. Although the poem perhaps lacks in unity of conception and precision of style, it contains many noble passages that are admitted by critics to mark a very high order of lyrical genius. One of the chief distinctions of Klopstock was that he was the real inaugurator of the emancipation of the German intellect from the superficialism of French literary ascendancy. This distinction was generously acknowledged by Goethe, who rejoiced at Klopstock's success in first striking the keynote of intellectual freedom in the Fatherland. Various odes, Biblical dramas, tragedies, and hymns constitute his other works. The "Messiah" was translated into both English prose and verse by G. Egerstorff, his work being published at Hamburg in 1821.

---

# GOTTHOLD EPHRAIM LESSING<sup>[S]</sup>

---

# Nathan the Wise

## *Persons in the Drama*

SALADIN, *the Sultan*

SITTAH, *his sister*

NATHAN, *a rich Jew*

HAFI, *a Dervish*

RECHA, *Nathan's adopted daughter*

DAYA, *a Christian woman, companion to Recha*

CONRADE, *a young Templar*

ATHANASIOS, *Patriarch of Palestine*

BONAFIDES, *a friar*

## ACT I

SCENE I.—*Jerusalem. A hall in NATHAN'S house. NATHAN, in travelling dress. DAYA meeting him.*

DAYA: 'Tis he, 'tis Nathan, thanks to God, returned,  
At last!

NATHAN: Yes, Daya, thanks; but why "at last"?  
'Tis far to Babylon, and gathering in  
One's debts makes tardy journeying.

DAYA: Oh, Nathan! How near you came to misery;  
when afar,  
The house took fire, and Recha, 'mid the flames,  
Had all but perished.

NATHAN: Recha, O my Recha!

DAYA: Your Recha, *yours*? My conscience bids me  
speak——

NATHAN: See what a charming silk I bought for you  
In Babylon, and these Damascus jewels.

DAYA: I shall be silent.

NATHAN: Say, does Recha know  
I am arrived?

DAYA: This morn of you she dreamed;  
Her thoughts have only been with you and him  
Who saved her from the fire.

NATHAN: Ah, who is he?

DAYA: A young knight Templar lately captive ta'en,  
But pardoned by the sultan. He it was  
Who burst through flame and smoke; and she believes  
Him but a transient inmate of the earth—  
A guardian angel! Stay, your daughter comes!

[*Enter RECHA.*

RECHA: My very father's self! Oh, how I feared  
Perils of flood for thee, until the fire  
Came nigh me. Now, I think it must be balm  
To die by water! But you are not drowned:  
I am not burned! We'll praise the God Who bade  
My angel *visibly* on his white wing  
Athwart the roaring flame——

NATHAN (*aside*): White wing? Oh, ay.  
The broad white fluttering mantle of the Templar.

RECHA: Yes, visibly he bore me through the fire  
O'ershadowed by his pinions—face to face  
I've seen an angel, father, my own angel!

NATHAN: A man had seemed an angel in such case!

RECHA: He was no real knight; no captive Templar  
Appears alive in wide Jerusalem.

DAYA: Yet Saladin granted this youth his life,  
For his great likeness to a dear dead brother.

NATHAN: Why need you, then, call angels into play?

DAYA: But then he wanted nothing, nothing sought;  
Was in himself sufficient, like an angel.

RECHA: And when at last he vanished——

NATHAN: Vanished! Have you not sought him?  
What if he—  
That is, a Frank, unused to this fierce sun—  
Now languish on a sick-bed, friendless, poor?

RECHA: Alas, my father!

NATHAN:           What if he, unfriended,  
Lies ill and unrelieved; the hapless prey  
Of agony and death; consoled alone  
In death by the remembrance of this deed.

DAYA: You kill her!

NATHAN:        You kill him.

RECHA:           Not dead, not dead!

NATHAN: Dead, surely not, for God rewards the good  
E'en here below. But ah, remember well  
That rapt devotion is an easier thing  
Than one good action. Ha! What Mussulman  
Numbers my camels yonder? Why, for sure,  
It's my old chess companion, my old Dervish,  
Al Hafi!

DAYA:    Treasurer now to Saladin.

*[Enter HAFI.]*

Ay, lift thine eyes and wonder!

NATHAN:           Is it you?  
A Dervish so magnificent?

HAFI:            Why not?  
Is Dervish, then, so hopeless? Rather ask  
What had been made of me. I'm treasurer

To Saladin, whose coffers ever ebb  
Ere sunset; such his bounty to the poor!  
It brings me little, truly; but to thee  
'Twas great advantage, for when money's low  
Thou couldst unlock thy sluices; ay, and charge  
Interest o'er interest!

NATHAN: Till my capital  
Becomes all interest?

HAFI: Nay, but that's unworthy,  
My friend; write *finis* to our book of friendship  
If that's thy view. I count on thee for aid  
To quit me of my office worthily.  
Grant me but open chest with thee. What, no?

NATHAN: To Hafi, yes; but to the treasurer  
Of Saladin, Al Hafi, nay!

HAFI: These twain  
Shall soon be parted: by the Ganges strand  
I'll with my Dervish teachers wander barefoot,  
Or play at chess with them once more!

NATHAN: Al Hafi,  
Go to your desert quickly. Among men  
I fear you'll soon unlearn to be a man. [*Goes out.*]  
What? Gone? I could have wished to question him  
About our Templar. Doubtless he will know him.

DAYA (*bursting in*): Nathan, the Templar's yonder,  
'neath the palms.  
Recha hath spied him, and she conjures you  
To follow him most punctually. Haste!

NATHAN: Take him my invitation.

DAYA: All in vain.  
He will not visit Jews.

NATHAN: Then hold him there  
Till I rejoin you. I shall not be long.

SCENE II.—*A place of palms. Enter the* TEMPLAR, *followed by a*  
FRIAR.

TEMPLAR: This fellow does not follow me for  
pastime.

FRIAR: I'm from the Patriarch: he is fain to learn  
Why you alone were spared by Saladin.

TEMPLAR: My neck was ready for the blow, when he  
Had me unbound. How all this hangs together  
Thy Patriarch may unravel.

FRIAR: He concludes  
That you are spared to do some mighty deed.

TEMPLAR: To save a Jewish maid?

FRIAR: A weightier office!  
He'd have you learn the strengths and weaknesses  
Of Saladin's new bulwark!

TEMPLAR: Play the spy!  
Not for *me*, brother!

FRIAR: Nay, but there is more.  
It were not hard to seize the Sultan's person,  
And make an end of all!

TEMPLAR: And make of me  
A graceless scoundrel! Brother, go away;  
Stir not my anger!

FRIAR: I obey, and go.

[*Exit. Enter* DAYA.]

DAYA: Nathan the Wise would see you; he is fain  
To load you with rewards. Do see him—try him!

TEMPLAR: Good woman, you torment me. From this  
day  
Pray know me not; and do not send the father!  
A Jew's a Jew, and I am rude and bearish.

I have forgot the maiden; do not make  
These palm-trees odious where I love to walk!

DAYA: Then farewell, bear. But I must track the  
savage.

*[Exeunt.]*

## ACT II

SCENE I.—*The palace. SALADIN and his sister SITTAH, playing chess.*

SITTAH: Check!

SALADIN: And checkmate!

SITTAH: Nay, nay; advance your knight.

SALADIN: The game is yours. Al Hafi pays the stake.

*[Enter HAFI, who examines the board.]*

HAFI: The game's not over yet; why, Saladin,  
Your queen can move——

SITTAH: Hush, hush! There, go, Al Hafi!  
I'll send to fetch my money.

HAFI: She hath never  
Claimed aught of what you lose; it lies with me.  
While we wait the treasure out of Egypt,  
Your sister hath maintained the state alone.

SALADIN: Was there none else could lend me, save  
my sister?

HAFI: I know none such.

SITTAH: What of thy friend, the Jew?  
The town is ringing with the news of gems  
And costly stuffs he hath brought home with him.

HAFI: He would not lend to Saladin. Ah, Prince,  
He's envious of your generosity.

That is the Jew! I'll knock at other doors.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE II.—*The place of palms.* DAYA and RECHA with NATHAN.

DAYA: He's still beneath the palms.

RECHA: Just one peep more.

NATHAN: Don't let him see you with me. Best go in.

[*Exeunt* DAYA and RECHA. *Enter* the  
TEMPLAR.

Forgive me, noble Frank.

TEMPLAR: Well, Jew; your will?

NATHAN: I'm Nathan, father to the maid you saved.  
In what can I be useful? I am rich. Command me.

TEMPLAR: Nay, your wealth is naught to me.  
Yet, this, a coin or cloth for a new mantle,  
When this is done. Don't quake; it's strong and good  
To last awhile; but here it's singed with flame.

NATHAN: This brand. Oh, I could kiss it! Would you  
send  
This mantle to my daughter that her lips  
May cling to this dear speck?

TEMPLAR: Remember, Jew,  
My vows, my Order, and my Christian faith!

NATHAN: All lands produce good men. Are we our  
nation's?  
Were Jews and Christians such ere they were men?  
And I have found in thee one more who stands  
A man confest.

TEMPLAR: Nathan, thy hand; I blush  
To have mistaken thee. We will be friends.  
Hark you, the maid, your daughter, whom I saved,

Makes me forget that I am partly monk.  
How say you; may I hope?

NATHAN:           Your suit, young man,  
Must be considered calmly. Give me time  
To know your lineage and your character.  
A parent must be careful of his child.

[*Enter DAYA.*

DAYA: The sultan sends for thee in haste.

NATHAN:           I'll go.  
Knight, take it not amiss.

TEMPLAR:         I'll quit you first.  
Farewell! [*Exit.*

NATHAN: 'Tis not alone my Leonard's walk,  
But even his stature and his very voice.  
Filnek and Stauffen—I will soon know more.

SCENE III.—*A room in NATHAN'S house. RECHA and DAYA. A slave shows in the* TEMPLAR.

RECHA: 'Tis he, my saviour! Ah!

TEMPLAR:         Thou best of beings,  
How is my soul 'twixt eye and ear divided.

RECHA: Well, knight, why thus refuse to look at me?

TEMPLAR: Because I wish to hear you.

RECHA:           Nay, because  
You would not have me notice that you smile  
At my simplicity.

TEMPLAR:         Ah, no; ah, no.  
How truly said thy father, "Do but know her."  
Yet now I must attend him. There is danger.

SCENE IV.—*SALADIN'S audience chamber. SALADIN and*  
NATHAN.

SALADIN: Draw nearer, Jew. Your name is Nathan?

NATHAN: Yea.

SALADIN: Nathan the Wise?

NATHAN: Ah, no.

SALADIN: Of modesty

Enough, your words and bearing prove you wise.  
Now, since you are so wise, tell me which law  
Appears to you the better.

NATHAN: Once on a time, eastward, there dwelt a man  
Who prized a ring, set with a wondrous opal  
That made the owner loved of God and man.  
This ring he willed should ever more remain  
The heirloom of his house; and to the son  
He loved the best bequeathed it, binding him  
To leave it also to his best beloved,  
And forward so. At length the ring descended  
To one who had three sons he loved alike.  
To each in turn the doting father promised  
The ring, and on his death-bed, sorely grieving  
To disappoint two heirs, he had two rings  
Made like the first, so close that none could tell  
The model from the copies. These he gave  
To his three sons in secret, and so passed.  
The sequel may be guessed, the strifes, complaints—  
For the true ring no more could be distinguished  
Than now can—the true faith. Each to the judge  
Swore that he had the bauble from his father,  
And called his brother forger. Quoth the judge:  
"Which of you do his brothers love the best?  
You're silent all. You're all deceived deceivers!  
None of your rings is true, the true is gone.  
Your father sought to end its tyranny.  
Let each believe his own the real ring  
And vie with others to display its virtue.  
And if its power a thousand thousand years

Endure in your descendants, let them then  
Before a wiser judge than I appear,  
And he'll decide the cause."

SALADIN: Even God Himself!

NATHAN: Art thou, O Saladin, this wiser judge?

SALADIN: Not yet have sped the thousand thousand  
years.

His judgment seat's not mine. Go, go, but love me.

NATHAN: Hath Saladin no further need of me?  
Perchance my stores might furnish forth thy wars.

SALADIN: Is this Al Hafi's hint? I'll not disown  
My object was to ask——

NATHAN: Thou shouldst have all  
But that I owe a weighty debt to one—  
The Templar thou didst spare.

SALADIN: I had forgot him.

NATHAN: He saved my daughter from the flames.

SALADIN: Ah, so? He looked a hero. Bring him hither;  
Sittah must see our brother's counterfeit.

NATHAN: I'll fetch him. For the rest, we are agreed.

SCENE V.—*The Place of Palms.* DAYA and the TEMPLAR.

DAYA: Knight, swear to me that you will make her  
yours;  
Make both her present and eternal welfare.  
Listen. She is a Christian, and no child  
Of Nathan's.

TEMPLAR: Are you sure of what you say?

DAYA: It cost me tears of blood. She does not know  
She is a Christian born.

TEMPLAR:           And Nathan reared  
Her in this error, and persists in it?  
Oh, it confounds me—go; and let me think.

*[Exeunt.]*

### ACT III

SCENE I.—*The cloisters of a convent. ATHANASIOS the Patriarch, and the TEMPLAR.*

ATHANASIOS: Heaven keep you in your valour, good  
Sir Knight!  
You seek my counsel? It is yours; say on.

TEMPLAR: Suppose, my reverend father, that a Jew  
Brought up a Christian child, in ignorance  
Of her own faith and lineage, as his daughter,  
What then?

ATHANASIOS: Is this mere supposition, sir?  
If in our diocese such impious act  
Were done in truth, the Jew should die by fire.  
You will not name the man? I'll to the sultan,  
Who will support us.

TEMPLAR:           I'll to Saladin,  
And will announce your visit.

ATHANASIOS:       Was it then  
A problem merely? Nay, this is a job  
For Brother Bonafides. Here, my son!

*[Exit ATHANASIOS, talking with the friar.]*

SCENE II.—*A room at the palace of SALADIN. Slaves bring in money-bags to SALADIN and SITTAH.*

SALADIN (*to Sittah*): Here, pay yourself with that.  
And look, I found  
This portrait 'midst the heap of plate and jewels.

It is our brother Assad. I'll compare  
The likeness with our Templar. Ah, who's there?  
The Templar? Bid him enter.

[*Enter the* TEMPLAR.]

TEMPLAR: Saladin,  
Thy captive, sire, who's life is at thy service!

SALADIN: Ah, brave young man, I'm not deceived in  
thee.

Thou art indeed, in soul and body, Assad!  
Came Nathan with thee?

TEMPLAR: Who?

SALADIN: Who? Nathan

TEMPLAR (*coldly*): No.

SALADIN: Why so cold?

TEMPLAR: I've nothing against Nathan,  
But I am angry with myself alone  
For dreaming that a Jew could be no Jew.  
He was so cautious of my suit that I,  
In swift resentment, though unwitting, gave  
Him over to the Patriarch's bloody rage.  
Sultan, the maiden is no child of his;  
She is a Christian whom the Jew hath reared  
In ignorance of her faith. The Patriarch  
Foredooms him to the stake.

SALADIN: Go to, go to.  
The case is scarcely hopeless. Summon Nathan,  
And I shall reconcile you. If indeed  
You're earnest for the maid, she shall be thine.

SCENE III.—*The hall in* NATHAN'S *house.* NATHAN *and the friar,*  
BONAFIDES.

BONAFIDES: The Patriarch hath ever work for me,  
And some I like not. Listen. He hath heard

That hereabouts there dwells a certain Jew  
Who hath brought up a Christian as his child.

NATHAN: How?

BONAFIDES: Hear me out. I fear me that I gave  
Occasion for this sin, when I, a squire,  
Brought you, full eighteen years ago, the babe,  
The orphan babe of Leonard, Lord of Filnek.  
He fell at Askalon.

NATHAN: Ay so; and I,  
Bereft by Christians of my wife and sons,  
Received the infant as a gift from Heaven,  
And made it mine. And now, belike, I suffer  
For this my charity. But tell me now,  
Was not the mother sister to a Templar,  
Conrade of Stauffen?

BONAFIDES: Let me fetch a book,  
In Arabic, I had from my dead lord.  
'Tis said to tell the lineage of the babe.

NATHAN: Go, fetch it quickly.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—*A place of palms.* NATHAN *and the* TEMPLAR.

NATHAN: Who hath betrayed me to the Patriarch?

TEMPLAR: Alas! 'twas I. You took my suit so coldly  
That when from Daya I had learned your secret,  
I fancied you had little mind to give  
A Christian what from Christians you had taken.  
I thought to use my knowledge as a lever,  
And so, not having you, I put the matter  
In problem-wise before the Patriarch.  
Suppose he find you out. What then? He cannot  
Seize Recha, if she be no longer yours.  
Ah! give her then, to me, and let him come.

NATHAN: Too late! You are too late, for I have found  
Her kinsfolk. Hark you, Recha has a brother.

TEMPLAR: Well, he's the man to fit her with a  
husband.  
Of thee and me she'll have no longer need.

SCENE V.—SALADIN'S *palace*. SALADIN *and his sister*, SITTAH,  
*are talking with* RECHA.

SITTAH: Ah! I guessed it.

RECHA: Gessed it? What? that I  
Am Christian and not Nathan's daughter?

[*She swoons.*]

SALADIN: What!  
Whose cruelty hath sown this sharp suspicion  
In thy fond heart? Ah! if there be two fathers  
At strife for thee, quit both, and take a third.  
Take Saladin for father! I'll be kind.

SITTAH: Brother, you make her blush.

SALADIN: In a good hour. Blushing becomes the fair.  
But see, our Nathan's coming, with another.  
Canst guess, sweet girl? Ay, when he comes, blush  
crimson.

[*Enter* NATHAN *and the* TEMPLAR.]

Come, stickle not for niceties with him.  
Make him thy offer, doing for him more,  
Far more, than he for thee, for what was that  
But make himself a little sooty. Come!

[*Seeks to lead her to the* TEMPLAR.]

NATHAN (*solemnly*): Hold, Saladin; hold, Sittah!  
There's another  
Whom I must speak with first—the maiden's brother.

TEMPLAR (*bitterly*): He has imposed a father on her,  
NOW

He'll shark her up a brother! Where's the man?

NATHAN: Patience sir.

SALADIN: Christian, such words as yours had never  
passed  
My Assad's lips.

NATHAN: Forgive him, Saladin.  
Oh! Christian, you have hid from me your name.  
Conrade of Stauffen is no name of yours,  
But Guy of Filnek—mark. I tax you not  
With falsehood; for your mother was a Stauffen.  
Her brother's name was Conrade. He perchance  
Adopted you?

TEMPLAR: Even so the matter stands.

NATHAN: Your father was my friend. He called  
himself  
Leonard of Filnek, but no German he.  
He had espoused a German.

TEMPLAR: Ah! no more,  
I beg, but tell me who is Recha's brother.

NATHAN: Thou art the man!

TEMPLAR: What, I? I Recha's brother?

RECHA: My brother—he?

SITTAH: So near akin—

RECHA (*offering to embrace him*): My brother!

TEMPLAR: (*withdrawing*): Brother to her!

RECHA (*to NATHAN*): It cannot be. His heart  
Knows nothing of it.

SALADIN: What! not acknowledge  
A sister such as she? Go!

TEMPLAR: Saladin!  
Mistake not my amazement. Thy Assad

At such a moment, had done likewise.  
Oh, Nathan, you have taken, you have given—  
Yes, infinitely more—my sister—sister!

[*Embraces RECHA.*]

NATHAN: Blanda of Filnek! Guy! My children both!

SITTAH: Oh! I am deeply moved.

SALADIN:               And I half tremble  
At thought of the emotion still to be.  
Nathan, you say her father was no German.  
What was he, then?

NATHAN:            He never told me that.  
But ah! he loved the Persian speech and owned  
He was no Frank.

SALADIN: The Persian! Need I more? Twas my  
Assad!

NATHAN: Look in this book!

SALADIN:            Ay! 'tis his hand, even his.  
Oh, Sittah, Sittah, they're my brother's children.

[*He rushes to embrace them. SITTAH also embraces the pair.*]

Now, now, proud boy, thou canst not choose but love me.  
(*To RECHA*) And I to thee am all I sought to be,  
With or without thy leave.

TEMPLAR: I of thy blood? Then all the tales I heard  
In infancy were more than idle dreams.

[*Falls at SALADIN's feet.*]

SALADIN (*raising him*): There's malice for you!  
Knew it all the time,  
And yet he would have let me murder him.  
Boy, boy! [*They embrace in silence.*]

## FOOTNOTES:

[S] Gotthold Ephraim Lessing, one of the greatest names in German literature, was born January 22, 1729, at Kamenz, in Saxon Upper Lusatia, where his father was a clergyman of the most orthodox Lutheran school. After working very hard for five years at a school in Meissen, he proceeded to the University of Leipzig, in 1746, with the intention of studying theology, but he soon began to occupy himself with other matters, made the acquaintance of actors, and acquired a great fondness for dramatic entertainment. This sort of life, however, pained his strict relatives, who pronounced it "sinful," and for a short time Lessing went home. Later he proceeded to Berlin, and while there, formed many valuable literary friendships, and established the best literary journal of his time. "Nathan the Wise" ("Nathan der Weise") arose out of a bitter theological controversy in which Lessing had been engaged. It was written during the winter of 1778-79, and expresses ideas and theories its author had already largely developed in prose. Primarily the play is a strong plea for tolerance, the governing conception being that noble character belongs to no particular creed, but to all creeds, as set forth herein in the parable of the wonderful ring. And thus it follows that there is no sufficient reason why people holding one set of religious opinions should not tolerate others who maintain totally different doctrines. Purely as a drama the play may be disappointing, but regarded as a poem it ranks with the noblest dramatic literature of the eighteenth century. The characters abound in vitality, and some of the passages rise to heights of great splendour. Lessing died on February 15, 1781 (see also Vol. XX, p. 239).

---

**HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW**<sup>[T]</sup>

# Evangeline, A Tale of Acadie

## *I.—The Betrothal and the Exile*

On the night when Evangeline, the beautiful daughter of Benedict Bellefontaine, the richest farmer of Grand-Pré, was to be betrothed to Gabriel, the son of Basil Lajeunesse the blacksmith, the two fathers were engaged in discussing the reason of the presence of several English war vessels which were riding at anchor at the mouth of the Gaspereau. Basil was inclined to take a gloomy view, and Benedict a hopeful one, when the arrival of the notary put an end to his discussion.

Then Evangeline lighted the brazen lamp on the table,  
Filled, till it overflowed, the pewter tankard with  
    brown ale,  
While from his pocket the notary drew his papers and  
    ink-horn,  
Wrote with a steady hand the date and the age of the  
    parties,  
And the great seal of the law was set like a sun on the  
    margin.  
Then the notary, rising and blessing the bride and  
    bridegroom,  
Lifted aloft the tankard of ale, and drank to their  
    welfare.  
Wiping the foam from his lips, he solemnly bowed  
    and departed,  
While in silence the others sat and mused by the  
    fireside,  
Till Evangeline brought the draught board out of its  
    corner.  
Soon was the game begun. In friendly contention the  
    old men  
Laughed at each lucky hit, or unsuccessful manoeuvre.  
Meanwhile, apart, in the twilight gloom of a window's  
    embrasure,

Sat the lovers, and whispered together, beholding the  
moon rise  
Over the pallid sea, and the silvery mists of the  
meadows.

Pleasantly rose next morn. And lo! with a summons  
sonorous,  
Sounded the bell from its tower, and over the  
meadows a drum beat.  
Thronged ere long was the church with men. Without,  
in the churchyard,  
Waited the women. They stood by the graves, and  
hung on the headstones  
Garlands of autumn leaves and evergreens fresh from  
the forest.  
Then came the guards from the ships, and entered the  
sacred portal.  
Straight uprose their commander, and spake from the  
steps of the altar.

"You are convened this day," he said, "by his majesty's  
orders.  
Painful the task is I do, which to you I know must be  
grievous.  
Yet must I bow and obey, and deliver the will of our  
monarch;  
Namely, that all your lands, and dwellings, and cattle  
of all kinds,  
Forfeited be to the crown; and that you yourselves  
from the province  
Be transported to other lands. God grant you may  
dwell there  
Ever as faithful subjects, a happy and peaceable  
people!"  
In the midst of the tumult and angry contention that  
broke out,

Lo! the door of the chancel opened, and Father  
Felician  
Entered with solemn mien, and ascended the steps of  
the altar.  
Raising his hand, with a gesture he awed the throng  
into silence.  
"What is this that ye do?" he said. "What madness has  
seized you?  
Forty years of my life have I laboured among you and  
taught you,  
Not in word alone, but in deed, to love one another!  
Is this the fruit of my toils, of my vigils and prayers  
and privations?  
Have you so soon forgotten all lessons of love and  
forgiveness?"  
Few were his words of rebuke, but deep in the hearts  
of his people  
Sank they, and sobs of contrition succeeded the  
passionate outbreak,  
While they repeated his prayer, and said, "O Father,  
forgive them!"

Four times the sun had risen and set; and now on the  
fifth day  
Cheerily called the cock to the sleeping maids of the  
farmhouse.  
Soon o'er the yellow fields, in silent and mournful  
procession,  
Came from the neighbouring hamlets and farms the  
Acadian women,  
Driving in ponderous wains their household goods to  
the seashore,  
Pausing and looking back to gaze once more on their  
dwellings,  
Ere they were shut from sight by the winding road and  
the woodland.

Close at their sides their children ran, and urged on the  
    oxen,  
While in their little hands they clasped some  
    fragments of playthings.  
Thus to the Gaspereau's mouth they hurried; and there  
    on the sea-beach,  
Piled in confusion, lay the household goods of the  
    peasants.  
Great disorder prevailed, and the tumult and stir of  
    embarking  
Busily plied the freighted boats; and in the confusion  
Wives were torn from their husbands, and mothers,  
    too late, saw their children  
Left on the land, extending their arms, with wildest  
    entreaties.  
So unto separate ships were Basil and Gabriel carried,  
While in despair on the shore Evangeline stood with  
    her father.

Suddenly rose from the south a light, as in autumn the  
    blood-red  
Moon climbs the crystal wall of heaven, and o'er the  
    horizon,  
Titan-like, stretches its hundred hands upon the  
    mountain and meadow,  
Seizing the rocks and the rivers, and piling huge  
    shadows together.  
Broader and ever broader it gleamed on the roofs of  
    the village,  
Gleamed on the sky and sea, and the ships that lay in  
    the roadstead.  
Columns of shining smoke uprose, and flashes of  
    flame were  
Thrust through their folds and withdrawn, like the  
    quivering hands of a martyr.  
Then as the wind seized the gleeds and the burning  
    thatch, and, uplifting,

Whirled them aloft through the air, at once from a  
hundred housetops  
Started the sheeted smoke with flashes of flame  
intermingled.  
Overwhelmed with the sight, yet speechless, the priest  
and the maidens  
Gazed on the scene of terror that reddened and  
widened before them;  
And as they turned at length to speak to their silent  
companion,  
Lo! from his seat he had fallen, and stretched abroad  
on the seashore,  
Motionless lay his form, from which the soul had  
departed.

With the first dawn of the day, the tide came hurrying  
landward.  
Then recommenced once more the stir and noise of  
embarking;  
And with the ebb of the tide the ships sailed out of the  
harbour,  
Leaving behind them the dead on the shore, and the  
village in ruins.

## *II.—The Quest and the Finding*

The exiles from Acadie landed some on one coast, some on another; and the lovers were separated from one another. Evangeline sought everywhere for Gabriel, in towns and in the country, in churchyards and on the prairies, in the camps and battlefields of the army, and among missions of Jesuits and Moravians. But all in vain. She heard far and distant news of him, but never came upon him. And so the years went by, and she grew old in her search.

In that delightful land which is washed by the  
Delaware waters,  
Guarding in sylvan shades the name of Penn, the  
apostle,

Stands on the banks of its beautiful stream the city he  
founded.  
There all the air is balm, and the peach is the emblem  
of beauty,  
And the streets still re-echo the names of the trees of  
the forest,  
As if they fain would appease the Dryads whose  
haunts they molested.  
There from the troubled sea had Evangeline landed, an  
exile,  
Finding among the children of Penn a home and a  
country.  
Gabriel was not forgotten. Within her heart was his  
image,  
Clothed in the beauty of love and youth, as last she  
beheld him.  
Over him years had no power; he was not changed,  
but transfigured;  
He had become to her heart as one who is dead, and  
not absent.  
Patience and abnegation of self, and devotion to others

—  
This was the lesson a life of trial and sorrow had  
taught her.  
Other hope had she none, nor wish in life, but to  
follow  
Meekly, with reverent steps, the sacred feet of her  
Saviour.  
Thus many years she lived as a Sister of Mercy;  
frequenting  
Lonely and wretched roofs in the crowded lanes of the  
city,  
Where disease and sorrow in garrets languished  
neglected.

Then it came to pass that a pestilence fell on the city.

Wealth had no power to bribe, nor beauty to charm the  
oppressor;  
But all perished alike beneath the scourge of his anger

---

Only, alas! the poor, who had neither friends nor  
attendants,  
Crept away to die in the almshouse, home of the  
homeless.  
Thither, by night and day, came the Sister of Mercy.  
The dying  
Looked up into her face, and thought, indeed, to  
behold there  
Gleams of celestial light encircle her forehead with  
splendour,  
Such as the artist paints o'er the brows of saints and  
apostles,  
Or such as hangs by night o'er a city seen at a distance.  
Unto their eyes it seemed the lamps of the city  
celestial,  
Into whose shining gates ere long their spirits would  
enter.

Thus on a Sabbath morn, through the streets, deserted  
and silent,  
Wending her quiet way, she entered the door of the  
almshouse.  
Sweet on the summer air was the odour of flowers in  
the garden;  
And she paused on her way to gather the fairest  
among them,  
That the dying once more might rejoice in their  
fragrance and beauty.  
And with light in her looks, she entered the chamber  
of sickness.  
Many a languid head, upraised as Evangeline entered,  
Turned on its pillow of pain to gaze while she passed,  
for her presence

Fell on their hearts like a ray of the sun on the walls of  
a prison.

And, as she looked around, she saw how Death, the  
consoler,

Laying his hand on many a heart, had healed it  
forever.

Suddenly, as if arrested by fear or a feeling of wonder,  
Still she stood, with her colourless lips apart, while a  
shudder

Ran through her frame, and, forgotten, the flowerets  
dropped from her fingers,

And from her eyes and cheeks the light and bloom of  
the morning.

Then there escaped from her lips a cry of such terrible  
anguish

That the dying heard it, and started up from their  
pillows.

On the pallet before her was stretched the form of an  
old man.

Long and thin and grey were the locks that shaded his  
temples;

But, as he lay in the morning light, his face for a  
moment

Seemed to assume once more the forms of its earlier  
manhood.

Motionless, senseless, dying, he lay, and his spirit,  
exhausted,

Seemed to be sinking down through infinite depths in  
the darkness—

Darkness of slumber and death, forever sinking and  
sinking.

Then through those realms of shade, in multiplied  
reverberations,

Heard he that cry of pain, and through the hush that  
succeeded

Whispered a gentle voice, in accents tender and saint-  
like,  
"Gabriel! O my beloved!" and died away into silence.  
Then he beheld, in a dream, once more the home of  
his childhood;  
Green Acadian meadows, with sylvan rivers among  
them,  
Village, and mountain, and woodlands; and walking  
under their shadow,  
As in the days of her youth, Evangeline rose in his  
vision.  
Tears came into his eyes; and as slowly he lifted his  
eyelids  
Vanished the vision away, but Evangeline knelt by his  
bed-side.  
Vainly he strove to whisper her name, for the accents  
unuttered,  
Died on his lips, and their motion revealed what his  
tongue would have spoken.  
Vainly he strove to rise; and Evangeline, kneeling  
beside him,  
Kissed his dying lips, and laid his head on her bosom.  
Sweet was the light of his eyes; but it suddenly sank  
into darkness,  
As when a lamp is blown out by a gust of wind at a  
casement.  
All was ended now—the hope, and the fear, and the  
sorrow,  
All the aching of heart, the restless, unsatisfied  
longing,  
All the dull, deep pain, and constant anguish of  
patience;  
And, as she pressed once more the lifeless head to her  
bosom,  
Meekly she bowed her own, and murmured, "Father, I  
thank Thee!"

## FOOTNOTES:

[T] Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, the best-known and best-beloved of American poets, was born at Portland, Maine, on February 27, 1807. The son of a lawyer, he graduated at Bowdoin College at the age of eighteen, and then entered his father's office, not, however, with any intention of adopting the law as a profession. Shortly afterwards, the college trustees sent him on a European tour to qualify himself for the chair of foreign languages, one result of which was a number of translations and his book "Outre Mer." "Voices of the Night," his first volume of original verse, appeared in 1839, and created a favourable impression, which was deepened on the publication in 1841 of *Ballads, and Other Poems*, containing such moving pieces as "The Wreck of the Hesperus," "The Village Blacksmith," and "Excelsior." From that moment Longfellow's reputation as poet was established—he became a singer whose charm and simplicity not only appealed to his own countrymen, but to English-speaking people the world over. In 1847 he produced what many regard as the greatest of his works, namely, "Evangeline, a Tale of Acadie." The story is founded on the compulsory expatriation by the British of the people of Acadia (Nova Scotia), in 1713, on the charge of having assisted the French (from whom they were descended) at a siege of the war then in progress. The poem is told with infinite pathos and rare narrative power. Longfellow died on March 24, 1882.

---

# The Song of Hiawatha<sup>[U]</sup>

## *I.—Of Hiawatha and His Battle with Mudjekeewis*

Hiawatha was sent by Gitche Manito, the Master of Life, as a prophet to guide and to teach the tribes of men, and to toil and suffer with them. If they listened to his counsels they would multiply and prosper, but if they paid no heed they would fade away and perish. His father was Mudjekeewis, the West Wind; his mother was Wenonah, the first-born daughter of Nokomis, who was the daughter of the Moon. Wenonah died in her anguish deserted by the West Wind, and Hiawatha was brought up and taught by the old Nokomis. He soon learned the language of every bird and every beast; and Iagoo, the great boaster and story-teller, made him a bow with which he shot the red deer. When he grew into manhood he put many questions concerning his mother to the old Nokomis, and having learned her story, resolved, despite all warnings, to take vengeance on Mudjekeewis.

Forth he strode into the forest,  
Crossed the rushing Esconaba,  
Crossed the mighty Mississippi,  
Passed the Mountains of the Prairie,  
Passed the dwellings of the Blackfeet,  
Came unto the Rocky Mountains,  
To the kingdom of the West Wind,  
Where upon the gusty summits  
Sat the ancient Mudjekeewis,  
Ruler of the winds of Heaven.  
Filled with awe was Hiawatha  
At the aspect of his father.  
Filled with joy was Mudjekeewis  
When he looked on Hiawatha.  
"Welcome," said he, "Hiawatha,  
To the kingdom of the West Wind!  
Long have I been waiting for you.  
Youth is lovely, age is lonely;  
You bring back the days departed,  
You bring back my youth of passion,

And the beautiful Wenonah!"

Many days they talked together,  
Questioned, listened, waited, answered;  
Much the mighty Mudjekeewis  
Boasted of his ancient prowess.  
Patiently sat Hiawatha  
Listening to his father's boasting.  
Then he said: "O Mudjekeewis,  
Is there nothing that can harm you?"  
And the mighty Mudjekeewis  
Answered, saying, "There is nothing,  
Nothing but the black rock yonder,  
Nothing but the fatal Wawbeek!"  
And he looked at Hiawatha  
With a wise look and benignant,  
Saying, "O my Hiawatha!  
Is there anything can harm you?"  
But the wary Hiawatha  
Paused awhile as if uncertain,  
And then answered, "There is nothing,  
Nothing but the great Apukwa!"  
Then they talked of other matters;  
First of Hiawatha's brothers,  
First of Wabun, of the East Wind.  
Of the South Wind, Shawondasee,  
Of the north, Kabibonokka;  
Then of Hiawatha's mother,  
Of the beautiful Wenonah,  
Of her birth upon the meadow,  
Of her death, as old Nokomis  
Had remembered and related.

Then up started Hiawatha,  
Laid his hand upon the black rock.  
With his mittens, Minjekahwun,  
Rent the jutting crag asunder,  
Smote and crushed it into fragments  
Which he hurled against his father,

The remorseful Mudjekeewis,  
For his heart was hot within him,  
Like a living coal his heart was.

But the ruler of the West Wind  
Blew the fragments backward from him,  
Blew them back at his assailant;  
Seized the bulrush, the Apukwa,  
Dragged it with its roots and fibres  
From the margin of the meadow.  
Long and loud laughed Hiawatha.  
Like a tall tree in the tempest  
Bent and lashed the giant bulrush;  
And in masses huge and heavy  
Crashing fell the fatal Wawbeek;  
Till the earth shook with the tumult  
And confusion of the battle.  
Back retreated Mudjekeewis,  
Rushing westward o'er the mountains,  
Stumbling westward down the mountains,  
Three whole days retreated fighting,  
Still pursued by Hiawatha  
To the doorways of the West Wind,  
To the earth's remotest border.

"Hold!" at length called Mudjekeewis,  
"Tis impossible to kill me.  
For you cannot kill the immortal.  
I have put you to this trial  
But to know and prove your courage.  
Now receive the prize of valour!  
Go back to your home and people,  
Live among them, toil among them,  
Cleans the earth from all that harms it.  
And at last when Death draws near you,  
When the awful eyes of Pauguk  
Glare upon you in the darkness,  
I will share my kingdom with you;  
Ruler shall you be thenceforward

Of the North-west Wind, Keewaydin,  
Of the home wind, the Keewaydin."

## *II.—Of Hiawatha's Friends and of His Fight with Pearl-Feather*

The first exertion which Hiawatha made for the profit of his people was to fast for seven days in order to procure for them the blessing of Mondamin, the friend of man. At sunset of the fourth, fifth, and sixth days Hiawatha wrestled with the youth Mondamin, and on the evening of the seventh day Mondamin, having fallen lifeless in the combat, was stripped of his green and yellow garments and laid in the earth. From his grave shot up the maize in all its beauty, the new gift of the Great Spirit; and for a time Hiawatha rested from his labours, taking counsel for furthering the prosperity of his people with his two good friends—Chibiabos, the great singer and musician; and Kwasind, the very strong man. But he was not long inactive. He built the first birch canoe, and, with the help of Kwasind, cleared the river of its sunken logs and sand-bars; and when he and his canoe were swallowed by the monstrous sturgeon Mishe-Nahma, he killed it by smiting fiercely on its heart. Not long afterwards his grandmother, Nokomis, incited him to kill the great Pearl-Feather, Megissogwon, the magician who had slain her father. Pearl-Feather was the sender of white fog, of pestilential vapours, of fever and of poisonous exhalations, and, although he was guarded by the Kenabeek, the great fiery serpents, Hiawatha sailed readily in his birch canoe to encounter him.

Soon he reached the fiery serpents,  
The Kenabeek, the great serpents,  
Lying huge upon the water,  
Sparkling, rippling in the water,  
Lying coiled across the passage,  
With their blazing crests uplifted,  
Breathing fiery fogs and vapours,  
So that none could pass beyond them.  
Then he raised his bow of ash-tree,  
Seized his arrows, jasper-headed,  
Shot them fast among the serpents;  
Every twanging of the bow-string  
Was a war-cry and a death-cry,  
Every whizzing of an arrow  
Was a death-song of Kenabeek.  
Then he took the oil of Nahma,

Mishe-Nahma, the great sturgeon,  
And the bows and sides anointed,  
Smear'd them well with oil, that swiftly  
He might pass the black pitch-water.

All night long he sailed upon it,  
Sailed upon that sluggish water,  
Covered with its mold of ages,  
Black with rotting water-rushes,  
Rank with flags and leaves of lilies,  
Stagnant, lifeless, dreary, dismal,  
Lighted by the shimmering moonlight,  
And by will-o'-wisps illumined,  
Fires by ghosts of dead men kindled,  
In their weary night encampments.

Westward thus fared Hiawatha,  
Toward the realm of Megissogwon,  
Toward the land of the Pearl-Feather,  
Till the level moon stared at him,  
In his face stared pale and haggard,  
Till the sun was hot behind him,  
Till it burned upon his shoulders,  
And before him on the upland  
He could see the shining wigwam  
Of the Manito of Wampum,  
Of the mightiest of magicians.

Straightway from the shining wigwam  
Came the mighty Megissogwon,  
Tall of stature, broad of shoulder,  
Dark and terrible in aspect,  
Clad from head to foot in wampum,  
Armed with all his warlike weapons,  
Painted like the sky of morning,  
Crested with great eagle feathers,  
Streaming upward, streaming outward.  
Then began the greatest battle  
That the sun had ever looked on.  
All a summer's day it lasted;

For the shafts of Hiawatha  
Harmless hit the shirt of wampum;  
Harmless were his magic mittens,  
Harmless fell the heavy war-club;  
It could dash the rocks asunder,  
But it could not break the meshes  
Of that magic shirt of wampum.  
Till at sunset, Hiawatha,  
Leaning on his bow of ash-tree,  
Wounded, weary, and desponding,  
With his mighty war-club broken,  
With his mittens torn and tattered,  
And three useless arrows only,  
Paused to rest beneath a pine-tree.

Suddenly, from the boughs above him  
Sang the Mama, the woodpecker:  
"Aim your arrow, Hiawatha,  
At the head of Megissogwon,  
Strike the tuft of hair upon it,  
At their roots the long black tresses;  
There alone can he be wounded!"

Winged with feathers, tipped with  
jasper,  
Swift flew Hiawatha's arrow,  
Just as Megissogwon, stooping  
Raised a heavy stone to throw it.  
Full upon the crown it struck him,  
And he reeled and staggered forward.  
Swifter flew the second arrow,  
Wounding sorer than the other;  
And the knees of Megissogwon  
Bent and trembled like the rushes.  
But the third and latest arrow  
Swiftest flew, and wounded sorest,  
And the mighty Megissogwon  
Saw the fiery eyes of Pauguk,  
Saw the eyes of Death glare at him;

At the feet of Hiawatha  
Lifeless lay the great Pearl-Feather.  
Then the grateful Hiawatha  
Called the Mama, the woodpecker,  
From his perch among the branches,  
And in honour of his service,  
Stained with blood the tuft of feathers  
On the little head of Mama;  
Even to this day he wears it,  
Wears the tuft of crimson feathers,  
As a symbol of his service.

### *III.—Hiawatha's Life with His People and His Departing Westward*

When Hiawatha was returning from his battle with Mudjekeewis he had stopped at the wigwam of the ancient Arrow-maker to purchase heads of arrows, and there and then he had noticed the beauty of the Arrow-maker's daughter, Minnehaha, Laughing Water. Her he now took to wife, and celebrated his nuptials by a wedding-feast at which Chibiabos sang, and the handsome mischief-maker, Pau-Puk-Keewis, danced. Minnehaha proved another blessing to the people. In the darkness of the night, covered by her long hair only, she walked all round the fields of maize, making them fruitful, and drawing a magic circle round them which neither blight nor mildew, neither worm nor insect, could invade. About this same time, too, to prevent the memory of men and things fading, Hiawatha invented picture-writing, and taught it to his people. But soon misfortunes came upon him. The evil spirits, the Manitos of mischief, broke the ice beneath his friend Chibiabos, and drowned him; Pau-Puk-Keewis put insult upon him, and had to be hunted down; and the envious Little People, the mischievous Puk-Wudjies, conspired against Kwasind, and murdered him. After this ghosts paid a visit to Hiawatha's wigwam, and famine came upon the land.

Oh, the long and dreary winter!  
Oh, the cold and cruel winter!  
Ever thicker, thicker, thicker  
Froze the ice on lake and river;  
Ever deeper, deeper, deeper  
Fell the snow o'er all the landscape,  
Fell the covering snow, and drifted

Through the forest, round the village.

All the earth was sick and famished;  
Hungry was the air around them,  
Hungry was the sky above them,  
And the hungry stars in heaven  
Like the eyes of wolves glared at them!

Into Hiawatha's wigwam  
Came two other guests, as silent  
As the ghosts were, and as gloomy.  
Looked with haggard eyes and hollow  
At the face of Laughing Water.  
And the foremost said, "Behold me!  
I am Famine, Buckadawin!"  
And the other said, "Behold me!  
I am Fever, Ahkosewin!"

And the lovely Minnehaha  
Shuddered as they looked upon her,  
Shuddered at the words they uttered;  
Lay down on her bed in silence.

Forth into the empty forest  
Rushed the maddened Hiawatha;  
In his heart was deadly sorrow,  
In his face a stony firmness;  
On his brow the sweat of anguish  
Started, but it froze and fell not.  
"Gitche Manito, the Mighty!"  
Cried he with his face uplifted  
In that bitter hour of anguish,  
"Give your children food, O father!  
Give me food for Minnehaha—  
For my dying Minnehaha!"

All day long roved Hiawatha  
In that melancholy forest,  
Through the shadow of whose thickets,  
In the pleasant days of summer,  
Of that ne'er-forgotten summer,  
He had brought his young wife homeward

From the land of the Dacotahs.

In the wigwam with Nokomis,  
With those gloomy guests that watched  
her,

She was lying, the beloved,  
She, the dying Minnehaha.  
"Hark!" she said; "I hear a rushing,  
Hear the falls of Minnehaha  
Coming to me from a distance!"

"No, my child!" said old Nokomis,  
"'Tis the night-wind in the pine-trees!"

"Look!" she said; "I see my father  
Beckoning, lonely, from his wigwam  
In the land of the Dacotahs!"

"No, my child!" said old Nokomis.  
"'Tis the smoke that waves and beckons!"

"Ah!" said she, "the eyes of Pauguk  
Glare upon me in the darkness;  
I can feel his icy fingers  
Clasping mine amid the darkness!  
Hiawatha! Hiawatha!"

And the desolate Hiawatha,  
Miles away among the mountains,  
Heard that sudden cry of anguish,  
Heard the voice of Minnehaha  
Calling to him in the darkness.  
Over snowfields waste and pathless,  
Under snow-encumbered branches,  
Homeward hurried Hiawatha,  
Empty-handed, heavy-hearted;  
Heard Nokomis moaning, wailing,  
"Would that I had perished for you,  
Would that I were dead as you are!"  
And he rushed into the wigwam,  
Saw the old Nokomis slowly  
Rocking to and fro and moaning,  
Saw his lovely Minnehaha

Lying dead and cold before him;  
And his bursting heart within him  
Uttered such a cry of anguish  
That the very stars in heaven  
Shook and trembled with his anguish.

Then he sat down, still and speechless,  
On the bed of Minnehaha.

Seven long days and nights he sat there,  
As if in a swoon he sat there.

Then they buried Minnehaha;  
In the snow a grave they made her,  
In the forest deep and darksome.

"Farewell!" said he. "Minnehaha!  
Farewell, O my Laughing Water!  
All my heart is buried with you,  
All my thoughts go onward with you!  
Come not back again to labour,  
Come not back again to suffer.  
Soon my task will be completed,  
Soon your footsteps I shall follow  
To the Islands of the Blessed,  
To the Kingdom of Ponemah,  
To the Land of the Hereafter!"

Hiawatha indeed remained not much longer with his people, for after welcoming the Black-Robe chief, who told the elders of the nations of the Virgin Mary and her blessed Son and Saviour, he launched his birch canoe from the shores of Big-Sea-Water, and, departing westward,

Sailed into the fiery sunset,  
Sailed into the purple vapours,  
Sailed into the dusk of evening.

## FOOTNOTES:

[U] In 1854 Longfellow resigned his professorship at Harvard. "Evangeline" had been followed by "Kavanagh," a novel of no particular merit, a cluster of minor poems, and in 1851 by the "Golden Legend," a singularly beautiful lyric drama, based on Hartmann van Aue's story "Der arme Heinrichs." Leaving the dim twilight of mediæval Germany, the poet brought his imagination to bear upon the Red Indian and his store of legend. The result was the "Song of Hiawatha," in 1855. Both in subject and in metre the poem is a conscious imitation of the Finnish "Kalevala." It was immensely popular on its appearance, Emerson declaring it "sweet and wholesome as maize." If the poem lacks veracity as an account of savage life, it nevertheless overflows with the beauty of the author's own nature, and is typical of those elements in his poetry which have endeared his name to the English-speaking world. With the exception of "Evangeline," it is the most popular of Longfellow's works.

---

# LUCRETIUS<sup>[VI]</sup>



# On the Nature of Things

## *I.—The Invocation and the Theme*

Mother of Romans, joy of men and gods,  
Kind Venus, who 'neath gliding signs of  
    heaven  
Dost haunt the main where sail our argosies,  
Dost haunt the land that yieldeth crops of  
    grain,  
Since 'tis of thee that every kind of breath  
Is born and riseth to behold the light;  
Before Thee, Lady, flit the winds; and clouds  
Part at thine advent, and deft-fingered earth  
Yields Thee sweet blooms; for Thee the sea  
    hath smiles,  
And heaven at peace doth gleam with floods  
    of light.  
Soon as the fair spring face of day is shown  
And zephyr kind to birth is loosed in strength;  
First do the fowls of air give sign of Thee,  
Lady, and of Thy entrance, smit at heart  
By power of Thine. Then o'er the pastures  
    glad  
The wild herds bound, and swim the rapid  
    streams.  
Thy glamour captures them, and yearningly  
They follow where Thou willest to lead on.  
Yea, over seas and hills and sweeping floods,  
And leafy homes of birds and grassy leas,  
Striking fond love into the heart of all,  
Thou mak'st each race desire to breed its  
    kind.

Since Thou dost rule alone o'er nature's  
    realm,  
Since without Thee naught wins the hallowed  
    shores  
Of light, and naught is glad, and naught is  
    fair,  
Fain would I crave Thine aid for poesy  
Which seeks to grasp the essence of the  
    world.  
On the high system of the heavens and gods  
I will essay to speak, and primal germs  
Reveal, whence nature giveth birth to all,  
And growth and nourishment, and unto which  
Nature resolves them back when quite  
    outworn.  
These, when we treat their system, we are  
    wont  
To view as "matter," "bodies which produce,"  
And name them "seeds of things," "first  
    bodies" too,  
Since from them at the first all things do  
    come.

## **THE TYRANNY OF RELIGION AND THE REVOLT OF EPICURUS**

When human life lay foully on the earth  
Before all eyes, 'neath Superstition crushed,  
Who from the heavenly quarters showed her  
    head  
And with appalling aspect lowered on men,  
Then did a Greek dare first lift eyes to hers—  
First brave her face to face. Him neither myth  
Of gods, nor thunderbolt; nor sky with roar  
And threat could quell; nay, chafed with more  
    resolve

His valiant soul that he should yearn to be  
First man to burst the bars of nature's gates.  
So vivid verve of mind prevailed. He fared  
Far o'er the flaming ramparts of the world,  
And traversed the immeasurable All  
In mind and soul: and thence a conqueror  
Returns to tell what can, what cannot rise,  
And on what principle each thing, in brief,  
Hath powers defined and deep-set boundary.  
Religion, then, is cast to earth in turn  
And trampled. Triumph matches man with  
heaven.

The profoundest speculations on the nature of things are not impious. Let not the reader feel that in such an inquiry he is on guilty ground. It is, rather, true that religion has caused foul crimes. An instance is the agonising sacrifice of sweet Iphigenia, slain at the altar to appease divine wrath.

"Religion could such wickedness suggest." Tales of eternal punishment frighten only those ignorant of the real nature of the soul. This ignorance can be dispelled by inquiring into the phenomena of heaven and earth, and stating the laws of nature.

## ***II.—First Principles and a Theory of the Universe***

Of these the first is that nothing is made of nothing; the second, that nothing is reduced to nothing. This indestructibility of matter may be illustrated by the joyous and constantly renewed growth that is in nature. There are two fundamental postulates required to explain nature—atoms and void. These constitute the universe. There is no *tertium quid*. All other things are but properties and accidents of these two. Atoms are solid, "without void"; they are indestructible, "eternal"; they are indivisible. To appreciate the physical theory of Epicurus, it is necessary to note the erroneous speculations of other Greek thinkers, whether, like Heraclitus, they deduced all things from one such fundamental element as fire, or whether they postulated four elements. From a criticism of the theories of Empedocles and Anaxagoras, the poet, return to the main subject.

## **A HARD TASK AND THREEFOLD TITLE TO FAME**

How dark my theme, I know within my mind;  
Yet hath high hope of praise with thyrsus  
    keen  
Smitten my heart and struck into my breast  
Sweet passion for the Muses, stung  
    wherewith  
In lively thought I traverse pathless haunts  
Pierian, untrodden yet by man.  
I love to visit those untasted springs  
And quaff; I love to cull fresh blooms, and  
    whence  
The Muses never veiled the brows of man  
To seek a wreath of honour for my head:  
First, for that lofty is the lore I teach;  
Then, cramping knots of priestcraft I would  
    loose;  
And next because of mysteries I sing clear,  
Decking my poems with the Muses' charm.

This sweetening of verse with: "the honey of the Muses" is like disguising unpalatable medicine for children. The mind must be engaged by attractive means till it perceives the nature of the world.

As to the existing universe, it is bounded in none of its dimensions; matter and space are infinite. All things are in continual motion in every direction, and there is an endless supply of material bodies from infinite space. These ultimate atoms buffet each other ceaselessly; they unite or disunite. But there is no such thing as design in their unions. All is fortuitous concourse; so there are innumerable blind experiments and failures in nature, due to resultless encounters of the atoms.

## **CALM OF MIND IN RELATION TO A TRUE THEORY OF THE UNIVERSE**

When tempests rack the mighty ocean's face,  
How sweet on land to watch the seaman's toil

—

Not that we joy in neighbour's jeopardy,  
But sweet it is to know what ills we 'scape.

How sweet to see war's mighty rivalries  
Ranged on the plains—without thy share of  
risk.

Naught sweeter than to hold the tranquil  
realms

On high, well fortified by sages' lore,  
Whence to look down on others wide astray

—  
Lost wanderers questing for the way of life—  
See strife of genius, rivalry of rank,  
See night and day men strain with wondrous  
toil

To rise to utmost power and grasp the world.

Man feels an imperious craving to shun bodily pain and secure mental pleasure. But the glitter of luxury at the banquets of the rich cannot satisfy this craving: there are the simpler joys of the open country in spring. But the fact is, no magnificence can save the body from pain or the mind from apprehensions. The genuine remedy lies in knowledge alone.

Not by the sunbeams nor clear shafts of day,  
Needs then dispel this dread, this gloom of  
soul,  
But by the face of nature and its plan.

## **PROPERTIES OF ATOMS**

Particles are constantly being transferred from one thing to another, though the sum total remains constant. In the light hereof may be understood the uninterrupted waxing and waning of things, and the perpetual succession of existence.

Full soon the broods of living creatures  
change,  
Like runners handing on the lamp of life.

Greater or less solidity depends on the resilience of atoms. Their ceaseless motion is illustrated by the turmoil of motes in a stream of sunlight let into a dark room. As to their velocity, it greatly exceeds

that of the sun's rays. This welter of atoms is the product of chance; the very blemishes of the world forbid one to regard it as divine. But the atoms do not rain through space in rigidly parallel lines. A minute swerve in their motion is essential to account for clashings and production; and in the ethical sphere it is this swerve which saves the mind from "Necessity" and makes free will possible. Though the universe appears to be at rest, this is a fallacy of the senses, due to the fact that the motions of "first bodies" are not cognisable by our eyes; indeed, a similar phenomenon is the apparent vanishing of motion due to distance; for a white spot on a far-off hill may really be a frolicsome lamb.

Oft on a hillside, cropping herbage rich,  
The woolly flocks creep on whitherso'er  
The grass bejewelled with fresh dew invites,  
And full-fed lambs disport and butt in play—  
All this to eyes at distance looks a blur;  
On the green hill the white spot seems at rest.

The shapes of atoms vary; and so differences of species, and differences within the same species, arise. This variety in shape accounts, too, for the varying action and effects of atoms. Atoms in hard bodies, for example, are mainly hooked; but in liquids mainly smooth. In each thing, however, there are several kinds, which furnish that particular thing with a variety of properties. Furthermore, atoms are colourless, for in themselves they are invisible; they never come into the light, whereas colour needs light—witness the changing hues of the down on a pigeon's neck, or of a peacock's tail. Atoms are themselves without senses, though they produce things possessed of senses. To grasp the origin of species and development of animate nature, one must realise the momentous importance of the arrangement and interconnection of atoms. Wood and other rotting bodies will bring forth worms, because material particles undergo, under altered conditions, fresh permutations and combinations. One may ask, what of man? He can laugh and weep, he can discuss the composition of all things, and even inquire into the nature of those very atoms! It is true that he springs from them. Yet a man may laugh without being made of laughing atoms, and a man may reason without being made of reasonable atoms!

## EPICURUS AND THE GODS

O thou that from gross darkness first didst lift  
A torch to light the path to happiness,

I follow thee, thou glory of the Greeks!  
And in thy footsteps firmly plant my steps,  
Not bent so much to rival as for love  
To copy. Why should swallow vie with swan?  
Thou, father, art discoverer of things,  
Enriching us with all a father's lore;  
And, famous master, from thy written page,  
As bees in flowery dells sip every bloom,  
So hold we feast on all thy golden words—  
Golden, most worthy, aye, of lasting life.  
Soon as thy reasoning, sprung from mind  
    inspired,  
Hath loud proclaimed the mystery of things,  
The mind's fears flee, the bulwarks of the  
    world  
Part, and I see things work throughout the  
    void.  
Then Godhead is revealed in homes of calm,  
Which neither tempests shake nor clouds with  
    rain  
Obscure, nor snow by piercing frost  
    congealed  
Mars with white fall, but ever cloudless air  
Wraps in a smile of generous radiancy.  
There nature, too, supplieth every want,  
And nothing ever lessens peace of mind.

### *III.—Of Mind and Soul and Death*

Mind and soul are portions of the body. While mind is the ruling element, they are both of the nature of the body—only they are composed of exceedingly minute and subtle atoms capable of marvellous speed. Therefore, when death deprives the body of mind, it does not make the body appreciably lighter.

It is as if a wine had lost its scent,

Or breath of some sweet perfume had  
escaped.

Mind and soul consist of spirit, air, heat, and an elusive fourth constituent, the nimblest and subtlest of essences, the very "soul of the soul." It follows that mind and soul are mortal. Among many proofs may be adduced their close interconnection with the body, as seen in cases of drunkenness and epilepsy; their curability by medicine; their inability to recall a state prior to their incarnation; their liability to be influenced by heredity like corporeal seeds. Besides, why should an immortal soul need to quit the body at death? Decay surely could not hurt immortality! Then, again, imagine souls contending for homes in a body about to be born! Consequently, the soul being mortal, death has no sting.

To us, then, death is nothing—matters naught,  
Since mortal is the nature of the mind,  
E'en as in bygone time we felt no grief  
When Punic conflict hemmed all Rome  
around.

When, rent by war's dread turbulence, the  
world  
Shuddered and quaked beneath the heaven's  
high realm,  
So when we are no more, when soul and  
frame  
Of which we are compact, have been  
divorced,  
Be sure, to us, who then shall be no more,  
Naught can occur or ever make us feel,  
Not e'en though earth were blent with sea and  
sky.

Men in general forget that death, in ending life's pleasures, also ends the need and the desire for them.

"Soon shall thy home greet thee in joy no  
more,  
Nor faithful wife nor darling children run  
To snatch first kiss, and stir within thy heart

Sweet thoughts too deep for words. Thou  
canst no more  
Win wealth by working or defend thine own.

The pity of it! One fell hour," they say,  
"Hath robbed thee of thine every prize in  
life."  
Hereat they add not this: "And now thou  
art  
Beset with yearning for such things no more."

The dead are to be envied, not lamented. The wise will exclaim:  
"Thou, O dead, art free from pain: we who survive are full of tears."

"What is so passing bitter," we should ask,  
"If life be rounded by a rest and sleep,  
That one should pine in never-ending grief?"

Universal nature has a rebuke for the coward that is afraid to die.  
There are no punishments beyond. Hell and hell's tortures are in this  
life. It is the victim of passion or of gnawing cares that is the real  
victim of torment.

#### *IV—The World's Origin and Its Growth*

Not by design did primal elements  
Find each their place as 'twere with  
forethought keen,  
Nor bargained what their movements were to  
be;  
But since the atom host in many ways  
Smitten by blows for infinite ages back,  
And by their weight impelled, have coursed  
along,  
Have joined all ways, and made full test of all  
The types which mutual unions could create,  
Therefore it is that through great time  
dispersed,

With every kind of blend and motion tried,  
They meet at length in momentary groups  
Which oft prove rudiments of mighty things

—  
Of earth, and sea, and sky, and living breeds.

Amidst this primeval medley of warring atoms there was no sun-disk to be discerned climbing the vault, no stars, or sea, or sky, or earth, or air—nothing, in fact, like what now exists. The next stage came when the several parts began to fly asunder, and like to join with like, so that the parts of the world were gradually differentiated. Heavier bodies combined in central chaos and forced out lighter elements to make ether. Thus earth was formed by a long process of condensation.

Daily, as ever more the ether-fires  
And sun-rays all around close pressed the  
earth  
With frequent blows upon its outer crust,  
Each impact concentrating it perforce,  
So was a briny sweat squeezed out the more  
With ooze to swell the sea and floating plains.

### **PRIMEVAL FERTILITY OF THE EARTH**

At first the earth produced all kinds of herbs  
And verdant sheen o'er every hill and plain;  
The flowery meadows gleamed in hues of  
green,  
And soon the trees were gifted with desire  
To race unbridled in the lists of growth;  
As plumage, hair, and bristles are produced  
On limbs of quadrupeds or frame of birds,  
So the fresh earth then first put forth the grass  
And shrubs, and next gave birth to mortal  
breeds,  
Thick springing multiform in divers ways.  
The name of "Mother," then, earth justly won,  
Since from the earth all living creatures came.

Full many monsters earth essayed to raise,  
Uprising strange of look and strange of limb,  
Hermaphrodites distinct from either sex,  
Some robbed of feet, and others void of  
    hands,  
Or mouthless mutes, or destitute of eyes,  
Or bound by close adhesion of their limbs  
So that they could do naught nor move at all,  
Nor shun an ill, nor take what need required.  
All other kinds of portents earth did yield—  
In vain, since nature drove increase away,  
They could not reach the longed-for bloom of  
    life,  
Nor find support, nor link themselves in love.

## **SURVIVAL OF THE FITTEST IN THE STRUGGLE FOR EXISTENCE**

All things you see that draw the breath of life,  
Have been protected and preserved by craft,  
  
Or speed, or courage, from their early years;  
And many beasts, which usefulness  
    commends,  
Abide domesticated in our care.

The protective quality in such animals as lions is ferocity; in foxes, cunning; in stags, swiftness. Creatures without such natural endowments of defence or utility tend to be the prey of others, and so become extinct.

## **PRIMITIVE MAN**

Primeval man was hardier in the fields,  
As fitted those that hardy earth produced,

Built on a frame of larger, tougher bones  
And knit with powerful sinews in his flesh;  
Not likely to be hurt by heat or cold,  
Or change of food, or wasting pestilence.  
While many lustres of the sun revolved  
Men led a life of roving like the beasts.  
What sun or rain might give, or soil might  
yield  
Unforced, was boon enough to sate the heart.  
Oft 'neath the acorn-bearing oaks they found  
Their food; and arbute-berries, which you  
now  
In winter see turn ripe with scarlet hue,  
Of old grew greater in luxuriance.  
Through well known woodland haunts of  
nymphs they roamed,  
Wherefrom they saw the gliding water brook  
Bathe with a generous splash the dripping  
rocks—  
Those dripping rocks that trickled o'er green  
moss.

As yet mankind did not know how to handle fire, or to clothe themselves with the spoils of the chase; but dwelt in woods, or caves, or other random shelter found in stress of weather. Each man lived for himself, and might was right. The stone or club was used in hunting; but the cave-dwellers were in frequent danger of being devoured by beasts of prey. Still, savage mortality was no greater than that of modern times.

## **THE EVOLVING OF CIVILISATION**

When men had got them huts and skins and  
fire,  
And woman joined with man to make a  
home,  
And when they saw an offspring born from  
them,

Then first began the softening of the race.  
Fire left them less inured with shivering  
frames  
To bear the cold 'neath heaven's canopy.  
Then neighbours turned to compacts mutual,  
Desirous nor to do nor suffer harm.  
They claimed for child and woman  
tenderness,  
Declaring by their signs and stammering cries  
That pity for the weak becometh all.

The rudiments of humane sentiments sprang, therefore, in prehistoric family life. Language was the gradual outcome of natural cries, not an arbitrary invention. The uses of fire were learned from the lightning-flash and from conflagrations due to spontaneous combustion or chance friction. In time this opened out the possibility of many arts, such as metal-working; for forest fires caused streams of silver, gold, copper, or lead to run into hollows, and early man observed that when cooled, the glittering lumps retained the mould of the cavities. Nature also was the model for sowing and grafting. Those who excelled in mental endowment invented new modes of life. Towns and strongholds were founded as places of defence; and possessions were secured by personal beauty, strength, or cleverness. But the access of riches often ousted the claims of both beauty and strength.

For men, though strong and fair to look upon,  
Oft follow in the retinue of wealth.

Religious feelings were fostered by visions and dreams; marvellous shapes to which savage man ascribed supernatural powers. Recurrent appearances of such shapes induced a belief in their continuous existence: so arose the notion of gods that live for ever.

Our navigation, tillage, walls, and laws,  
Our armour, roads, and dress, and such-like  
boons,  
And every elegance of modern life,  
Poems and pictures, statues deftly wrought,  
All these men learned with slow advancing  
steps  
From practice and the knowledge won by wit.  
So by degrees time brings each thing to sight,

And reason raiseth it to realms of day.  
In arts must one thing, then another, shine,  
Until they win their full development.

## FOOTNOTES:

[V] To the Roman poet Titus Corus Lucretius (99-55 B.C.) belongs the distinction of having made Epicureanism epic. Possessed by a desire to free his fellow men from the trammels of superstition and the dread of death, he composed his poem, "On the Nature of Things." His reasonings were based on the atomic theory, which the Greek Epicurus had taken as the physical side of his system. In natural law Lucretius found the true antidote to superstition, and from a materialistic hypothesis of atoms and void he deduced everything. Against the futilities of myth-religion he protested with the fervour of an evangelist. On the ethical side, he accepted from Epicurus the conception that the ideal lies in pleasure—not wild, sensual pleasure, but that calm of mind which comes from temperate and refined enjoyment, subdual of extravagant passion, and avoidance of political entanglements. It is appropriate that the life of this apostle of scientific quietism should be involved in obscurity. The story of his insanity, so beautifully treated by Tennyson, may or may not be true. It is hardly credible that a work so closely reasoned was, as a whole, composed in lucid intervals between fits of madness; but, on the other hand, there are signs of flagging in the later portions, and the work comes to a sudden conclusion. The translations are specially made by Prof. J. Wight Duff, and include a few extracts from his "Literary History of Rome."

---

# **JAMES MACPHERSON**

---

# Ossian<sup>[W]</sup>

## *I.—Carthon*

A tale of the times of old—the deeds of days of other years.

Who comes from the land of strangers, with his thousands around him? The sunbeam pours its bright stream before him; his hair meets the wind of his hills. His face is settled from war. He is calm as the evening beam that looks, from the cloud of the west, on Cona's silent vale. Who is it but Fingal, the king of mighty deeds! The feast is spread around; the night passed away in joy.

"Tell," said the mighty Fingal to Clessammor, "the tale of thy youthful days. Let us hear the sorrow of thy youth, and the darkness of thy days."

"It was in the days of peace," replied the great Clessammor. "I came in my bounding ship to Balclutha's walls of towers. Three days I remained in Reuthamir's halls, and saw his daughter—that beam of light. Her eyes were like the stars of night. My love for Moina was great; my heart poured forth in joy.

"The son of a stranger came—a chief who loved the white-bosomed Moina. The strength of his pride arose. We fought; he fell beneath my sword. The banks of Clutha heard his fall, a thousand spears glittered around. I fought; the strangers prevailed. I plunged into the stream of Clutha. My white sails rose over the waves, and I bounded on the dark-blue sea. Moina came to the shore, her loose hair flew on the wind, and I heard her mournful, distant cries. Often did I turn my ship, but the winds of the east prevailed. Nor Clutha ever since have I seen, nor Moina of the dark-brown hair. She fell in Balclutha, for I have seen her ghost. I knew her as she came through the dusky night, along the murmur of Lora. She was like the new moon seen through the gathered mist, when the sky pours down its flaky snow and the world is silent and dark."

"Raise, ye bards," said the mighty Fingal, "the praise of unhappy Moina."

The night passed away in song; morning returned in joy. The mountains showed their grey heads; the blue face of ocean smiled. But as the sun rose on the sea Fingal and his heroes beheld a distant fleet. Like a mist on the ocean came the strange ships, and discharged their youth upon the coast. Carthon, their chief, was among them, like the stag in the midst of the herd. He was a king of spears, and as he moved towards Selma his thousands moved behind him.

"Go, with a song of peace," said Fingal. "Go, Ullin, to the king of spears. Tell him that the ghosts of our foes are many; but renowned are they who have feasted in my halls!"

When Ullin came to the mighty Carthon, he raised the song of peace.

"Come to the feast of Fingal, Carthon, from the rolling sea! Partake of the feast of the king, or lift the spear of war. Behold that field, O Carthon. Many a green hill rises there, with mossy stones and rustling grass. These are the tombs of Fingal's foes, the sons of the rolling sea!"

"Dost thou speak to the weak in arms," said Carthon, "bard of the woody Morven? Have not I seen the fallen Balclutha? And shall I feast with Fingal, the son of Comhal, who threw his fire in the midst of my father's hall? I was young, and knew not the cause why the virgins wept. But when the years of my youth came on, I beheld the moss of my fallen walls; my sigh arose with the morning, and my tears descended with night. Shall I not fight, I said to my soul, against the children of my foes? And I will fight, O bard! I feel the strength of my soul."

His people gathered round the hero, and drew their shining swords. The spear trembled in his hand. Bending forward, he seemed to threaten the king.

"Who of my chiefs," said Fingal, "will meet the son of the rolling sea? Many are his warriors on the coast, and strong is his ashen spear."

Cathul rose, in his strength, the son of the mighty Lormar. Three hundred youths attend the chief, the race of his native streams. Feeble was his arm against Carthon; he fell, and his heroes fled. Connal resumed the battle, but he broke his heavy spear; he lay bound on the field; Carthon pursued his people.

"Clessammor," said the king of Morven, "where is the spear of my strength? Wilt thou behold Connal bound?"

Clessammor rose in the strength of his steel, shaking his grizzly locks. He fitted the shield to his side; he rushed, in the pride of valour.

Carthon saw the hero rushing on, and loved the dreadful joy of his face; his strength, in the locks of age!

"Stately are his steps of age," he said. "Lovely the remnant of his years! Perhaps it is the husband of Moina, the father of car-borne Carthon. Often have I heard that he dwelt at the echoing stream of Lora."

Such were his words, when Clessammor came, and lifted high his spear. The youth received it on his shield, and spoke the words of peace.

"Warrior of the aged locks! Hast thou no son to raise the shield before his father to meet the arm of youth? What will be the fame of my sword shouldst thou fall?"

"It will be great, thou son of pride!" began the tall Clessammor. "I have been renowned in battle, but I never told my name to a foe. Yield to me, son of the wave; then shalt thou know that the mark of my sword is in many a field."

"I never yield, king of spears!" replied the noble pride of Carthon. "Retire among thy friends! Let younger heroes fight."

"Why dost thou wound my soul?" replied Clessammor, with a tear. "Age does not tremble on my hand; I still can lift the sword. Shall I fly in Fingal's sight, in the sight of him I love? Son of the sea, I never fled! Exalt thy pointed spear!"

They fought, like two contending winds that strive to roll the wave. Carthon bade his spear to err; he still thought that the foe was the spouse of Moina. He broke Clessammor's beamy spear in twain; he seized his shining sword. But as Carthon was binding the chief, the chief drew the dagger of his fathers. He saw the foe's uncovered side, and opened there a wound.

Fingal saw Clessammor low; he moved in the sound of his steel. The host stood silent in his presence; they turned their eyes to the king. He came, like the sullen noise of a storm before the winds arise. Carthon stood in his place; the blood is rushing down his side; he saw the coming down of the

king. Pale was his cheek; his hair flew loose, his helmet shook on high. The force of Carthon failed, but his soul was strong.

"King of Morven," Carthon said, "I fall in the midst of my course. But raise my remembrance on the banks of Lora, where my father dwelt. Perhaps the husband of Moina will mourn over his fallen Carthon."

His words reached Clessammor. He fell, in silence, on his son. The host stood darkened around; no voice is on the plain. Night came; the moon from the east looked on the mournful field; but still they stood, like a silent grove that lifts its head on Gormal, when the loud winds are laid, and dark autumn is on the plain; and then they died.

Fingal was sad for Carthon; he commanded his bards to sing the hero's praise. Ossian joined them, and this was his song: "My soul has been mournful for Carthon; he fell in the days of his youth. And thou, O Clessammor, where is thy dwelling in the wind? Has the youth forgot his wound? Flies he, on clouds, with thee? Perhaps they may come to my dreams. I think I hear a feeble voice! The beam of heaven delights to shine on the grave of Carthon. I feel it warm around.

"O thou that rollest above, round as the shield of my fathers! Whence are thy beams, O sun, thy everlasting light? Thou comest forth in thy awful beauty; the stars hide themselves in the sky; the moon, cold and pale, sinks in the western wave. But thou thyself movest alone. Who can be a companion of thy course? The oaks of the mountains fall; the mountains themselves decay with years; the ocean shrinks and grows again; the moon herself is lost in heaven; but thou art for ever the same, rejoicing in the brightness of thy course.

"When the world is dark with tempests; when thunder rolls, and lightning flies, thou lookest in thy beauty from the clouds, and laughest at the storm. But to Ossian thou lookest in vain, for he beholds thy beams no more; whether thy yellow hair flows on the eastern clouds, or thou tremblest at the gates of the west. But thou art perhaps, like me, for a season; thy years will have an end. Thou shalt sleep in thy clouds; careless of the voice of the morning. Exult thee, O sun, in the strength of thy youth! Age is dark and unlovely. It is like the glimmering light of the moon when it shines through broken clouds and the mist is on the hills; the blast of north is on the plain; the traveller shrinks in the midst of his journey."

## *II.—Darthula*

Daughter of heaven, fair art thou! The silence of thy face is pleasant! Thou comest forth in loveliness. The stars attend thy blue course in the east. The clouds rejoice in thy presence, O moon! Look from thy gates in the sky. Burst the cloud, O wind, that the daughter of night may look forth, that the shaggy mountains may brighten, and the ocean roll its white waves in light!

Nathos is on the deep, and Althos, that beam of youth. Ardan is near his brothers. They move in the gloom of their course. The sons of Usnoth move in darkness, from the wrath of Cairbar of Erin. Who is that, dim, by their side? The night has covered her beauty! Who is it but Dartthula, the first of Erin's maids? She has fled from the love of Caribar, with blue-shielded Nathos. But the winds deceive thee, O Dartthula! They deny the woody Etha to thy sails. These are not the mountains of Nathos; nor is that the roar of his climbing waves. The halls of Cairbar are near; the towers of the foe lift their heads! Erin stretches its green head into the sea. Tura's bay receives the ship. Where have ye been, ye southern winds, when the sons of my love were deceived? But ye have been sporting on plains, pursuing the thistle's beard. Oh that ye had been rustling in the sails of Nathos till the hills of Etha arose; till they arose in their clouds, and saw their returning chief!

Long hast thou been absent, Nathos—the day of thy return is past! Lovely thou wast in the eyes of Dartthula. Thy soul was generous and mild, like the hour of the setting sun. But when the rage of battle rose, thou wast a sea in a storm. The clang of thy arms was terrible; the host vanished at the sound of thy coarse. It was then Dartthula beheld thee from the top of her mossy tower; from the tower of Selama, where her fathers dwelt.

"Lovely art thou, O stranger!" she said, for her trembling soul arose. "Fair art thou in thy battles, friend of the fallen Cormac! Why dost thou rush on in thy valour, youth of the ruddy look? Few are thy hands in fight against the dark-browed Cairbar! Oh that I might be freed from his love—that I might rejoice in the presence of Nathos!"

Such were thy words, Dartthula, in Selama's mossy towers. But now the night is around thee. The winds have deceived thy sails, Dartthula! Cease a little while, O north wind! Let me hear the voice of the lovely. Thy voice is lovely, Dartthula, between the rustling blasts!

"Are these the rocks of Nathos?" she said. "This the roar of his mountain streams? Comes that beam of light from Usnoth's mighty hall? The mist spreads around; the beam is feeble and distant far. But the light of Darthula's soul dwells in the chief of Etha! Son of the generous Usnoth, why that broken sigh? Are we in the land of strangers, chief of echoing Etha?"

"These are not the rocks of Nathos," he replied, "nor this the roar of his streams. We are in the land of strangers, in the land of cruel Cairbar. The winds have deceived us, Darthula. Erin lifts here her hills. Go towards the north, Althos; be thy steps, Ardan, along the coast; that the foe may not come in darkness, and our hopes of Etha fail. I will go towards that mossy tower to see who dwells about the beam."

He went. She sat alone; she heard the rolling of the wave. The big tear is in her eye. She looks for returning Nathos.

He returned, but his face was dark.

"Why art thou sad, O Nathos?" said the lovely daughter of Colla.

"We are in the land of foes," replied the hero. "The winds have deceived us, Darthula. The strength of our friends is not near, nor the mountains of Etha. Where shall I find thy peace, daughter of mighty Colla? The brothers of Nathos are brave, and his own sword has shone in fight! But what are the sons of Usnoth to the host of dark-browed Cairbar? Oh that the winds had brought thy sails, Oscar, king of men! Thou didst promise to come to the battles of fallen Cormac! Cairbar would tremble in his halls, and peace dwell round the lovely Darthula. But why dost thou fall, my soul? The sons of Usnoth may prevail!"

"And they will prevail, O Nathos!" said the rising soul of the maid. "Never shall Darthula behold the halls of gloomy Cairbar. Give me those arms of brass, that glitter to the passing meteor. I see them dimly in the dark-bosomed ship. Darthula will enter the battle of steel."

Joy rose in the face of Nathos when he heard the white-bosomed maid. He looks towards the coming of Cairbar. The wind is rustling in his hair. Darthula is silent at his side. Her look is fixed on the chief. She strives to hide the rising sigh.

Morning rose with its beams. The sons of Erin appear, like grey rocks, with all their trees; they spread along the coast. Cairbar stood in the midst. He grimly smiled when he saw the foe. Nathos rushed forward, in his strength; nor could Darthula stay behind. She came with the hero, lifting her shining spear.

"Come," said Nathos to Cairbar—"come, chief of high Temora! Let our battle be on the coast, for the white-bosomed maid. His people are not with Nathos; they are behind these rolling seas. Why dost thou bring thy thousands against the chief of Etha?"

"Youth of the heart of pride," replied Cairbar, "shall Erin's king fight with thee? Thy fathers were not among the renowned, and Cairbar does not fight with feeble men!"

The tear started from car-borne Nathos. He turned his eyes to his brothers. Their spears flew at once. Three heroes lay on earth. Then the light of their swords gleamed on high. The ranks of Erin yield, as a ridge of dark clouds before a blast of wind! Then Cairbar ordered his people, and they drew a thousand bows. A thousand arrows flew. The sons of Usnoth fell in blood. They fell like three young oaks, which stood alone on the hill. The traveller saw the lovely trees, and wondered how they grew so lonely; the blast of the desert came by night, and laid their green heads low; next day he returned, but they were withered, and the heath was bare!

Darthula stood in silent grief, and beheld their fall! Pale was her cheek. Her trembling lips broke short a half-formed word. Her breast of snow appeared. It appeared; but it was stained with blood. An arrow was fixed in her side. She fell on the fallen Nathos, like a wreath of snow! Her hair spreads wide on his face. Their blood is mixing round!

"Daughter of Colla—thou art low!" said Cairbar's hundred bards. "When wilt thou rise in thy beauty, first of Erin's maids? Thy sleep is long in the tomb. The sun shall not come to thy bed and say, 'Awake, Darthula! Awake thou first of women! The wind of spring is abroad. The flowers shake their heads on the green hills. The winds wave their growing leaves.' Retire, O sun, the daughter of Colla is asleep! She will not come forth in her beauty. She will not move in the steps of her loveliness!"

Such was the song of the bards when they raised the tomb. I, too, sang over the grave when the king of Morven came to green Erin to fight with the car-borne Cairbar!

## FOOTNOTES:

[W] No ancient or modern work in the history of literature has excited such wild admiration and such profound contempt as the "Ossian" of James Macpherson. It was Napoleon's favourite work; he carried it with him to Egypt and took it to St. Helena. Byron and Goethe and Chateaubriand were also touched to enthusiasm by it. Its author—or, as some still think, its editor—was a Scottish schoolmaster, James Macpherson, born at Ruthven, in Inverness-shire on October 27, 1736. The first part of the work, entitled "Fragments of Ancient Poetry, Collected in the Highlands of Scotland, and Translated from the Gaelic, or Erse, Language," was published in 1760; "Fingal" appeared in 1762, and "Temora" in the following year. Doctor Johnson said of Macpherson: "He has found names, and stories, and phrases, nay, passages in old songs, and with them has blended his own compositions, and so made what he gives to the world as the translation of an ancient poem"; and this verdict is now confirmed by the best authorities. Nevertheless, "Ossian" is a work of considerable merit and great historic interest. It contains some fine passages of real poetry, such as the invocation to the sun with which "Carthon" concludes, and it has served to attract universal attention to the magnificent Celtic traditions of Scotland and Ireland. Macpherson died in Inverness-shire on February 17, 1796.

---

**CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE** [\[X\]](#)

---

# The Tragical History of Dr. Faustus

## *Persons in the Play*

DOCTOR FAUSTUS

WAGNER, *his servant*

MEPHISTOPHILIS

LUCIFER

THE EMPEROR

BENVOLIO, MARTINO, FREDERICK, *gentlemen of the emperor's court*

BRUNO

THE POPE

THREE SCHOLARS, CARDINALS, LORDS, DEVILS,  
PHANTOMS, GOOD *and* EVIL ANGELS, *etc.*, CHORUS.

## ACT I

SCENE I.—FAUSTUS *in his study, reading a volume on necromancy.*

FAUSTUS: All things that move between the quiet  
poles  
Shall be at my command: emperors and kings  
Are but obeyed in their several provinces;  
But his dominion that excels in this  
Stretches as far as does the mind of man.  
A sound magician is a demi-god.

[*Enter GOOD and EVIL ANGELS.*

GOOD ANGEL: O Faustus, lay that damned book aside  
And gaze not on it, lest it tempt thy soul,  
And heap God's heavy wrath upon thy head!  
Read, read the Scriptures—that is blasphemy.

EVIL ANGEL: Go forward, Faustus, in that famous art  
Wherein all nature's treasure is contained;  
Be thou on earth as Jove is in the sky,  
Lord and commander of these elements.

[*Exeunt* ANGELS.

FAUSTUS: How am I glutt'd with conceit of this!  
Faustus, begin thine incantations,  
And try if devils will obey thy hest.

[*Thunder.* FAUSTUS *pronounces the*  
*incantation.* Enter MEPHISTOPHILIS.

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Now, Faustus, what wouldst thou  
have me do?

FAUSTUS: I charge thee, wait upon me while I live,  
To do whatever Faustus shall command.

MEPHISTOPHILIS: I am a servant to great Lucifer,  
And may not follow thee without his leave.

FAUSTUS: Tell me, what is that Lucifer, thy lord?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Arch-regent and commander of all  
spirits.

FAUSTUS: Was not that Lucifer an angel once?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Yes, Faustus, and most dearly loved  
of God.

FAUSTUS: How comes it, then, that he is prince of  
devils?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Oh, by aspiring pride and insolence,  
For which God threw him out from the face of heaven.

FAUSTUS: And what are you that live with Lucifer?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Unhappy spirits that fell with  
Lucifer,  
Conspired against our God with Lucifer,  
And are forever damned with Lucifer.

FAUSTUS: Where are you damned?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: In hell.

FAUSTUS: How comes it, then, that you are out of hell?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Why, this is hell, nor am I out of it. Think'st thou that I, that saw the face of God, And tasted the eternal joys of heaven, Am not tormented with ten thousand hells In being deprived of everlasting bliss?

FAUSTUS: Go, bear these tidings to great Lucifer: Seeing Faustus hath incurred eternal death By desperate thoughts against God's deity, Say he surrenders up to him his soul, So he will spare him four-and-twenty years, Having thee ever to attend on me. Then meet me in my study at midnight, And then resolve me of thy master's mind. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*The same. Midnight.* FAUSTUS. *Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

FAUSTUS: Now tell me what saith Lucifer, thy lord?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: That I shall wait on Faustus while he lives, So he will buy my service with his soul, And write a deed of gift with his own blood.

[*FAUSTUS stabs his own arm, and writes. At the summons of MEPHISTOPHILIS enter DEVILS, who present FAUSTUS with crowns and rich apparel. Exeunt DEVILS. FAUSTUS reads the deed, by which MEPHISTOPHILIS is to be at his service for twenty-four years, at the end of which LUCIFER may claim his soul.*]

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Now, Faustus, ask me what thou wilt.

FAUSTUS: Tell me where is the place that men call hell?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscribed  
In one self place; but where we are is hell,  
And where hell is, there must we ever be;  
And, to be short, when all the world dissolves,  
And every creature shall be purified,  
All places shall be hell that are not heaven.

FAUSTUS: I think hell's a fable.

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Aye, think so still, till experience change thy mind.

*[Exit.*

FAUSTUS: If heaven was made for man, 'twas made for me.

I will renounce this magic and repent.

*[Enter the GOOD and EVIL ANGELS.*

GOOD ANGEL: Faustus, repent! Yet God will pity thee.

EVIL ANGEL: Thou art a spirit; God cannot pity thee.

FAUSTUS: My heart is hardened; I cannot repent.

EVIL ANGEL: Too late.

GOOD ANGEL: Never too late, if Faustus will repent.

*[Exeunt ANGELS.*

FAUSTUS: O Christ, my Saviour, my Saviour,  
Help to save distressed Faustus' soul.

*[Enter LUCIFER.*

LUCIFER: Christ cannot save thy soul, for He is just;

Thou call'st on Christ, contrary to thy promise;  
Thou shouldst not think on God; think on the Devil.

FAUSTUS: Nor will Faustus henceforth; pardon him  
for this,  
And Faustus vows never to look to Heaven.

## ACT II

SCENE I.—*Rome. Enter CHORUS.*

CHORUS: Learned Faustus,  
To find the secrets of astronomy  
Graven in the book of Jove's high firmament,  
Did mount him up to scale Olympus' top;  
Where, sitting in a chariot burning bright,  
Drawn by the strength of yokéd dragons' necks,  
He views the clouds, the planets, and the stars.  
From east to west his dragons swiftly glide,  
And in eight days did bring him home again.  
Now, mounted new upon a dragon's back,  
He, as I guess, will first arrive at Rome  
To see the Pope and manner of his court,  
And take some part of holy Peter's feast,  
The which this day is highly solemnised.

*[Exit. Enter FAUSTUS and MEPHISTOPHILIS.]*

FAUSTUS: Hast thou, as erst I did command,  
Conducted me within the walls of Rome?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: This is the goodly palace of the  
Pope.

FAUSTUS: Sweet Mephistophilis, thou pleasest me.  
Whilst I am here on earth, let me be cloy'd  
With all things that delight the heart of man.  
My four-and-twenty years of liberty  
I'll spend in pleasure and in dalliance.  
Now in this show let me an actor be,  
That this proud Pope may Faustus' cunning see.

*[Enter POPE and others in procession; BRUNO, nominated pope in opposition by the EMPEROR, in chains. FAUSTUS and MEPHISTOPHILIS, impersonating two cardinals, are given charge of the condemned BRUNO, whom they liberate and dispatch magically to the EMPEROR. Subsequently, both being rendered invisible, they amuse themselves at the expense of the POPE and his guests at a banquet; and then depart to the EMPEROR'S court.]*

SCENE II.—*Before the EMPEROR'S palace. BENVOLIO at a window. Enter the EMPEROR with his train, including FAUSTUS, MEPHISTOPHILIS, BRUNO.*

EMPEROR: Wonder of men, renowned magician,  
Thrice-learned Faustus, welcome to our court.  
Now, Faustus, as thou late didst promise us,  
We would behold that famous conqueror,  
Great Alexander, and his paramour,  
In their true shapes and state majestic.

FAUSTUS: Your majesty shall see them presently.

BENVOLIO: Aye, aye, and thou bring Alexander and  
his paramour before the emperor, I'll be Actæon  
and turn myself to a stag.

FAUSTUS: And I'll be Diana and send you the horns  
presently.

*[Enter a pageant of DARIUS, ALEXANDER,  
etc., being phantoms. Exeunt.]*

FAUSTUS: See, see, my gracious lord!

EMPEROR: Oh, wondrous sight!  
Two spreading horns, most strangely fastened  
Upon the head of young Benvolio!

BENVOLIO: Zounds, doctor, this is your villainy.

FAUSTUS: Oh, say not so, sir; the doctor has no skill  
To bring before the royal emperor  
The mighty monarch, warlike Alexander.  
If Faustus do it, you are straight resolved  
In bold Actæon's shape to turn a stag.  
And therefore, my lord, so please your majesty,  
I'll raise a kennel of hounds shall hunt him so—  
Ho, Belimoth, Argison, Asteroth!

BENVOLIO: Hold, hold! Good my lord, entreat for  
me! 'Sblood, I am never able to endure these torments.

EMPEROR: Let me entreat you to remove his horns;  
He hath done penance now sufficiently.

FAUSTUS: Being that to delight your majesty with  
mirth is all that I desire, I am content to remove  
his horns (*Mephistophilis removes them*), and  
hereafter, sir, look you speak well of scholars.

SCENE III.—*A wood.* BENVOLIO, MARTINO *and* FREDERICK.

MARTINO: Nay, sweet Benvolio, let us sway thy  
thoughts  
From this attempt against the conjurer.

BENVOLIO: Away! You love me not, to urge me thus.  
Shall I let slip so great an injury,  
When every servile groom jests at my wrongs,  
And in their rustic gambols proudly say,  
"Benvolio's head was graced with horns to-day?"  
If you will aid me in this enterprise,  
Then draw your weapons and be resolute.  
If not, depart; here will Benvolio die,  
But Faustus' death shall quit my infamy.

FREDERICK: Nay, we will stay with thee, betide what  
may,  
And kill that doctor, if he comes this way.

Close, close! The conjurer is at hand,  
And all alone comes walking in his gown.  
Be ready, then, and strike the peasant down.

BENVOLIO: Mine be that honour, then. Now, sword,  
strike home!  
For horns he gave, I'll have his head anon!

[*Enter* FAUSTUS.

No words; this blow ends all.  
Hell take his soul! His body thus must fall.

[BENVOLIO *stabs* FAUSTUS, *who falls*;  
BENVOLIO *cuts off his head*.

FREDERICK: Was this that stern aspect, that awful  
frown  
Made the grim monarchs of infernal spirits  
Tremble and quake at his commanding charms?

MARTINO: Was this that damnéd head, whose art  
conspired  
Benvolio's shame before the emperor?

BENVOLIO: Aye, that's the head, and there the body  
lies.  
Justly rewarded for his villainies. [*Faustus rises*.  
Zounds, the devil's alive again!

FREDERICK: Give him his head, for God's sake!

FAUSTUS: Nay, keep it; Faustus will have heads and  
hands,  
Aye, all your hearts, to recompense this deed.  
Then, wherefore do I dally my revenge?  
Asteroth! Belimoth! Mephistophilis!

[*Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS, *and other* DEVILS.

Go, horse these traitors on your fiery backs,  
And mount aloft with them as high as Heaven;  
Thence pitch them headlong to the lowest hell.  
Yet stay, the world shall see their misery,

And hell shall after plague their treachery.  
Go, Belimoth, and take this caitiff hence,  
And hurl him in some lake of mud and dirt;  
Take thou this other, drag him through the woods,  
Amongst the pricking thorns and sharpest briars;  
Whilst with my gentle Mephistophilis  
This traitor flies unto some steepy rock  
That rolling down may break the villain's bones.  
Fly hence! Dispatch my charge immediately!

FREDERICK: He must needs go, that the devil drives.

*[Exeunt DEVILS with their victims.]*

### ACT III

SCENE I.—FAUSTUS' study. *Enter* WAGNER.

WAGNER: I think my master means to die shortly.  
He has made his will, and given me his wealth, his  
house, his goods, and store of golden plate, besides two  
thousand ducats ready coined. I wonder what he means?  
If death were nigh, he would not frolic thus. He's now  
at supper with the scholars, where there's such cheer as  
Wagner in his life ne'er saw the like. Here he comes;  
belike the feast is ended.

*[Exit. Enter* FAUSTUS; MEPHISTOPHILIS  
*follows.]*

FAUSTUS: Accursed Faustus! Wretch, what hast thou  
done?

I do repent, and yet I do despair.  
Hell strives with grace for conquest in my breast;  
What shall I do to shun the snares of death?

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Thou traitor, Faustus, I arrest thy  
soul

For disobedience to my sovereign lord!  
Revolt, or I'll in piecemeal tear thy flesh!

FAUSTUS: I do repent I e'er offended him!  
Sweet Mephistophilis, entreat thy lord  
To pardon my unjust presumption;  
And with my blood again I will confirm  
The former vow I made to Lucifer.

MEPHISTOPHILIS: Do it, then, Faustus, with unfeignéd  
heart,  
Lest greater dangers do attend thy drift.

FAUSTUS: One thing, good servant, let me crave of  
thee:  
Bring that fair Helen, whose admiréd worth  
Made Greece with ten years' war afflict poor Troy;  
Whose sweet embraces may extinguish clean  
Those thoughts that do dissuade me from my vow,  
And keep my oath I made to Lucifer.

MEPHISTOPHILIS: This, or what else my Faustus may  
desire,  
Shall be performed in twinkling of an eye.

*[Enter HELEN, passing over the stage between  
two cupids.]*

FAUSTUS: Was this the face that launched a thousand  
ships  
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?  
Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss!

*[Kisses her.]*

Her lips suck forth my soul; see where it flies!  
Come, Helen, come, give me my soul again!  
Oh, thou art fairer than the evening air  
Clad in the beauty of a thousand stars:  
Brighter art thou than naming Jupiter,  
When he appeared to hapless Semele:  
More lovely than the monarch of the sky,

In wanton Arethusa's azured arms!  
Here will I dwell, for heaven is in these lips,  
And all is dross that is not Helena.

SCENE II.—*The same.* FAUSTUS. *Enter* SCHOLARS.

FIRST SCHOLAR: Worthy Faustus, methinks your looks are changed!

FAUSTUS: Oh, gentlemen!

SECOND SCHOLAR: What ails Faustus?

FAUSTUS: Ah, my sweet chamber-fellow, had I lived with thee, then I had lived still; but now must die eternally! Look, sirs; comes he not? Comes he not?

FIRST SCHOLAR: O my dear Faustus, what imports this fear?

THIRD SCHOLAR: 'Tis but a surfeit, sir; fear nothing.

FAUSTUS: A surfeit of deadly sin, that hath damned both body and soul.

SECOND SCHOLAR: Yet, Faustus, look up to Heaven, and remember mercy is infinite.

FAUSTUS: But Faustus' offence can ne'er be pardoned; the serpent that tempted Eve may be saved, but not Faustus. He must remain in hell for ever; hell, Oh, hell for ever. Sweet friends, what shall become of Faustus, being in hell for ever?

SECOND SCHOLAR: Yet, Faustus, call on God.

FAUSTUS: On God, whom Faustus hath abjured! On God, whom Faustus hath blasphemed! O my God, I would weep! But the Devil draws in my tears. Gush forth blood, instead of tears! Yea, life, and soul! Oh, he stays my tongue! I would lift up my hands; but see, they hold 'em, they hold 'em!

SCHOLARS: Who, Faustus?

FAUSTUS: Why, Lucifer and Mephistophilis. O gentlemen, I gave them my soul for my cunning!

SECOND SCHOLAR: Oh, what may we do to save Faustus?

FAUSTUS: Talk not of me, but save yourselves and depart.

THIRD SCHOLAR: God will strengthen me; I will stay with Faustus.

FIRST SCHOLAR: Tempt not God, sweet friend; but let us into the next room and pray for him.

FAUSTUS: Aye, pray for me, pray for me; and what noise soever you hear, come not unto me, for nothing can rescue me.

SECOND SCHOLAR: Pray thou, and we will pray that God may have mercy on thee.

FAUSTUS: Gentlemen, farewell. If I live till morning, I'll visit you; if not, Faustus is gone to hell.

SCHOLARS: Faustus, farewell!

*[Exeunt SCHOLARS. The clock strikes eleven.]*

FAUSTUS: Oh, Faustus,  
Now hast thou but one bare hour to live,  
And then thou must be damned perpetually.  
Stand still, you ever moving spheres of heaven,  
That time may cease, and midnight never come;  
Fair nature's eyes, rise, rise again, and make  
Perpetual day; or let this hour be but  
A year, a month, a week, a natural day,  
That Faustus may repent and save his soul!  
*O lente, lente, currite, noctis equi!*  
The stars move still, time runs, the clock will strike,  
The Devil will come, and Faustus must be damn'd.  
Oh, I'll leap up to heaven: who pulls me down?

See, where Christ's blood streams in the firmament!  
One drop of blood will save me: O my Christ!  
Rend not my heart for naming of my Christ;  
Yet will I call on Him. Oh, spare me, Lucifer!  
Where is it now? 'Tis gone.

And see, a threatening arm, an angry brow!  
Mountains and hills, come, come and fall on me,  
And hide me from the heavy wrath of Heaven!  
No?

Then will I headlong run into the earth;  
Gape, earth! Oh, no, it will not harbour me.  
Yon stars that reigned at my nativity,  
Whose influence hath allotted death and hell.  
Now draw up Faustus like a foggy mist,  
Into the entrails of yon labouring cloud,  
That when you vomit forth into the air,  
My limbs may issue from your smoky mouths,  
But let my soul mount and ascend to heaven.

*[The clock strikes the half hour.*

Oh, half the hour is past; 'twill all be past anon.  
Oh, if my soul must suffer for my sin,  
Impose some end to my incessant pains;  
Let Faustus live in hell a thousand years,  
A hundred thousand, and at last be saved!  
No end is limited to damnéd souls.  
Why wert thou not a creature wanting soul,  
Or why is this immortal that thou hast?  
Oh, Pythagoras' metempsychosis, were that true,  
This soul should fly from me, and I be changed  
Into some brutish beast! All beasts are happy,  
For when they die  
Their souls are soon dissolved in elements;  
But mine must live still, and be plagued in hell.  
Curs'd be the parents that engender'd me!  
No, Faustus, curse thyself, curse Lucifer  
That hath deprived thee of the joys of heaven.

*[The clock strikes twelve.*

It strikes! It strikes! Now, body, turn to air,  
Or Lucifer will bear thee quick to hell!  
O soul, be changed into small water-drops,  
And fall into the ocean, ne'er be found!

*[Thunder. Enter DEVILS.*

Oh, mercy, Heaven! Look not so fierce on me!  
Adders and serpents, let me breathe awhile!  
Ugly hell, gape not! Come not, Lucifer!  
I'll burn my books. O Mephistophilis!

*[Exeunt DEVILS with FAUSTUS. Enter CHORUS.*

CHORUS: Cut is the branch that might have grown full  
straight,  
And burned Apollo's laurel-bough,  
That sometime grew within this learned man.  
Faustus is gone. Regard his hellish fall,  
Whose fiendful fortune may exhort the wise,  
Only to wonder at unlawful things,  
Whose deepness doth entice such forward wits  
To practice more than heavenly power permits.

## FOOTNOTES:

[X] Christopher Marlowe was born at Canterbury in February, 1564, the year of Shakespeare's birth. From the King's School he went to Cambridge, at Corpus, and took his degree in 1583. For the next ten years, he lived in London; a tavern brawl ended his career on June 1, 1593. During those ten years, when Greene and Nashe and Peele were beginning to shape the nascent drama, and Shakespeare was serving his apprenticeship, most of the young authors were living wild enough lives, and none, according to tradition, wilder than Kit Marlowe; who, nevertheless, was doing mightier work, work more pregnant with promise than any of them, and infinitely greater in achievement; for Shakespeare's tragedies were still to come. That "Tamburlaine the Great," the first play of a lad of twenty-three, should have been crude and bombastic is not surprising; that "The Tragical History of Dr. Faustus" should have been produced by an author aged probably less than twenty-five is amazing. The story is traditional; two hundred years after Marlowe, Goethe gave it its most familiar setting (see Vol. XVI, p. 362). But although some part of Marlowe's play is

grotesque, there is no epithet which can fitly characterise its greatest scenes except "tremendous." What may not that tavern brawl have cost the world!

---

**MARTIAL**<sup>[Y]</sup>

---

# Epigrams, Epitaphs and Poems

## *I.—Satiric Pieces and Epigrams*

He unto whom thou art so partial,  
O reader! is the well-known Martial,  
The Epigrammatist: while living  
Give him the fame thou wouldst be giving;  
So shall he hear, and feel, and know it—  
Post-obits rarely reach a poet.—*Byron.*

### MARTIAL ON HIS WORK

Some things are good, some fair, but more  
you'll say  
Are bad herein—all books are made that way!

### ON FREEDOM OF LANGUAGE

Strict censure may this harmless sport endure:  
My page is wanton, but my life is pure.

### THE AIM OF THE EPIGRAMS

My satire knoweth how to keep due bounds:  
Sparing the sinner, 'tis the sin it rounds.

### ON A SPENDTHRIFT

Castor on buying doth a fortune spend:

Castor will take to selling in the end!

### **TO A RECITER WHO BAWLED**

Why wrap your throat with wool before you  
read?  
*Our* ears stand rather of the wool in need!

### **TO AN APOLOGETIC RECITER**

Before you start your recitation,  
You say your throat is sore:  
Dear sir, we hear your explanation,  
We don't want any more!

### **ANSWER TO A POETASTER**

Pompilianus asks why I omit  
To send him all the poetry that is mine;  
The reason is that in return for it,  
Pompilianus, thou might'st send me *thine*.

### **ON A PLAGIARIST**

Paul buys up poems, and to your surprise,  
Paul then recites them as his own:  
And Paul is right; for what a person buys  
Is his, as can by law be shown!

### **A LOVER OF OLD-FASHIONED POETRY**

Vacerra likes no bards but those of old—  
Only the poets dead are poets true!

Really, Vacerra—may I make so bold?—  
It's not worth dying to be liked by *you*.

### A GOOD RIDDANCE

Linus, you mock my distant farm,  
And ask what good it is to me?  
Well, it has got at least one charm—  
When there, from Linus I am free!

### HOW A WET SEASON HELPS THE ADULTERATION OF WINE

Not everywhere the vintage yield has failed,  
Dear Ovid; copious rain has much availed.  
Coranus has a hundred gallons good  
For sale—*well watered*, be it understood.

### THE SYSTEMATIC DINER-OUT

Philo declares he never dines at home,  
And that is no exaggeration:  
He has no place to dine in Rome,  
If he can't hook an invitation.

### THE LEGACY-HUNTER CONSIDERS A MARRIAGE *de* *Convenance*

Paula would like to marry me;  
But I have no desire to get her.  
Paula is old; if only she  
Were nearer dead, I'd like it better!

## WIDOWER AND WIDOW

Fabius buries all his wives:  
Chrestilla ends her husbands' lives.  
The torch which from the marriage-bed  
They brandish soon attends the dead.  
O Venus, link this conquering pair!  
Their match will meet with issue fair,  
Whereby for such a dangerous *two*  
A single funeral will do!

## THE IMPORTUNATE BEGGAR

'Tis best to grant me, Cinna, what I crave;  
And next best, Cinna, is refusal straight.  
Givers I like: refusal I can brave;  
But you don't give—you only hesitate!

## TO A FRIEND OVER-CAUTIOUS IN LENDING

A loan without security  
You say you have not got for me;  
But if I pledge my bit of land,  
You have the money close at hand.  
Thus, though you cannot trust your friend,  
To cabbages and trees you lend.  
Now *you* have to be tried in court—  
Get from my bit of land support!  
Exiled, you'd like a comrade true—  
Well, take my land abroad with you!

## AN OLD DANDY

You wish, Lætinus, to be thought a youth,

And so you dye your hair.  
You're suddenly a crow, forsooth:  
Of late a swan you were!  
You can't cheat all: there is a Lady dread  
Who knows your hair is grey:  
Proserpina will pounce upon your head,  
And tear the mask away.

### **PATIENT AND DOCTOR**

When I was ill you came to me,  
Doctor, and with great urgency  
A hundred students brought with you  
A most instructive case to view.  
The hundred fingered me with hands  
Chilled by the blasts from northern lands;  
Fever at outset had I none;  
I have it, sir, now you have done!

### **APING ONE'S BETTERS**

Torquatus owns a mansion sumptuous  
Exactly four miles out of Rome:  
Four miles out also Otacilius  
Purchased a little country home.  
Torquatus built with marble finely veined  
His Turkish baths—a princely suite:  
Then Otacilius at once obtained  
Some kind of kettle to give heat!  
Torquatus next laid out upon his ground  
A noble laurel-tree plantation:  
The other sowed a hundred chestnuts round—  
To please a future generation.  
And when Torquatus held the Consulate,  
The other was a village mayor,

By local honours made as much elate  
As if all Rome were in his care!  
The fable saith that once upon a day  
The frog that aped the ox did burst:  
I fancy ere this rival gets his way,  
He will explode with envy first!

---

## *II.—Epitaphs*

### **ON A DEAD SLAVE-BOY**

Dear Alcimus, Death robbed thy lord of thee  
When young, and lightly now Labian soil  
Veils thee in turf: take for thy tomb to be  
No tottering mass of Parian stone which  
toil  
Vainly erects to moulder o'er the dead.  
Rather let pliant box thy grave entwine;  
Let the vine-tendril grateful shadow shed  
O'er the green grass bedewed with tears of  
mine.  
Sweet youth, accept the tokens of my grief:  
Here doth my tribute last as long as time.  
When Lachesis my final thread shall weave,  
I crave such plants above my bones may  
climb.

### **ON A LITTLE GIRL, EROTION**

Mother Flaccilla, Fronto sire that's gone,  
This darling pet of mine, Erotion,  
I pray ye greet, that nor the Land of Shade

Nor Hell-hound's maw shall fright my little  
maid.  
Full six chill winters would the child have  
seen  
Had her life only six days longer been.  
Sweet child, with our lost friends to guard  
thee, play,  
And lisp my name in thine own prattling way.  
Soft be the turf that shrouds her! Tenderly  
Rest on her, earth, for she trod light on thee.

---

### *III.—Poems on Friendship and Life*

#### **A WORTHY FRIEND**

If there be one to rank with those few friends  
Whom antique faith and age-long fame  
attends;  
If, steeped in Latin or Athenian lore,  
There be a good man truthful at the core;  
If one who guards the right and loves the fair,  
Who could not utter an unworthy prayer;  
If one whose prop is magnanimity,  
I swear, my Decianus, thou art he.

#### **A RETROSPECT**

Good comrades, Julius, have we been,  
And four-and-thirty harvests seen:  
We have had sweetness mixed with sour;  
Yet oftener came the happy hour.  
If for each day a pebble stood,  
And either black or white were hued,

Then, ranged in masses separate,  
The brighter ones would dominate.  
If thou wouldst shun some heartaches sore,  
And ward off gloom that gnaws thy core,  
Grapple none closely to thy heart:  
If less thy joy, then less thy smart.

### **GIFTS TO FRIENDS ARE NOT LOST**

A cunning thief may rob your money-chest,  
And cruel fire lay low an ancient home;  
Debtors may keep both loan and interest;  
Good seed may fruitless rot in barren loam.  
A guileful mistress may your agent cheat,  
And waves engulf your laden argosies;  
But boons to friends can fortune's slings  
defeat:  
The wealth you give away will never  
cease.

### **ON MAKING THE BEST OF LIFE**

Julius, in friendship's scroll surpassed by  
none,  
If life-long faith and ancient ties may  
count,  
Nigh sixty consulates by thee have gone:  
The days thou hast to live make small  
amount.

Defer not joys them mayst not win from fate  
Judge only what is past to be thine own.  
Cares with a linkéd chain of sorrows wait.  
Mirth tarries not; but soon on wing is  
flown.

With both hands hold it—clasped in full  
embrace,  
Still from thy breast it oft will glide away!  
To say, "I mean to live," is folly's place:  
To-morrow's life comes late; live, then, to-  
day.

## **A DAY IN ROME**

(First Century A.D.)

The first two hours Rome spends on morning  
calls,  
And with the third the busy lawyer bawls.  
Into the fifth the town plies varied tasks;  
The sixth, siesta; next hour closing asks.  
The eighth sees bath and oil and exercise;  
The ninth brings guest on dining-couch who  
lies.  
The tenth is claimed for Martial's poetry,  
When you, my friend, contrive high luxury  
To please great Cæsar, and fine nectar warms  
The mighty hand that knows a wine-cup's  
charms.  
Eve is the time for jest: with step so bold  
My muse dare not at morn great Jove behold.

## **BOREDOM, VERSUS ENJOYMENT**

If you and I, dear Martial, might  
Enjoy our days in Care's despite,  
And could control each leisure hour,  
Both free to cull life's real flower,  
Then should we never know the halls  
Of patrons or law's wearying calls,  
Or troublous court or family pride;

But we should chat or read or ride,  
Play games or stroll in porch or shade,  
Visit the hot baths or "The Maid."

Such haunts should know us constantly,  
Such should engage our energy.  
Now neither lives his life, but he  
Marks precious days that pass and flee.  
These days are lost, but their amount  
Is surely set to our account.  
Knowledge the clue to life can give;  
Then wherefore hesitate to live?

### **THE HAPPY LIFE**

The things that make a life of ease,  
Dear Martial, are such things as these:  
Wealth furnished not by work but birth,  
A grateful farm, a blazing hearth,  
No lawsuit, seldom formal dress;  
But leisure, stalwart healthiness,  
A tactful candour, equal friends,  
Glad guests at board which naught pretends,  
No drunken nights, but sorrow free,  
A bed of joy yet chastity;  
Sleep that makes darkness fly apace,  
So well content with destined place,  
Unenvious so as not to fear  
Your final day, nor wish it near.

### **AT THE SEASIDE**

Sweet strand of genial Formiæ,  
Apollinaris loves to flee  
From troublous thought in serious Rome,

And finds thee better than a home.  
Here Thetis' face is ruffled by  
A gentle wind; the waters lie  
Not in dead calm, but o'er the main  
A peaceful liveliness doth reign,  
Bearing gay yachts before a breeze  
Cool as the air that floats with ease  
From purple fan of damozel  
Who would the summer heat dispel.  
The angler need not far away  
Seek in deep water for his prey—  
Your line from bed or sofa throw,  
And watch the captured fish below!  
How seldom, Rome, dost thou permit  
Us by such joys to benefit?  
How many days can one long year  
Credit with wealth of Formian cheer?  
We, round whom city worries swarm,  
Envy our lacqueys on a farm.  
Luck to you, happy slaves, affords  
The joys designed to please your lords!

### **THE POET'S FINAL RETREAT IN SPAIN**

Mayhap, my Juvenal, your feet  
Stray down some noisy Roman street,  
While after many years of Rome  
I have regained my Spanish home.  
Bilbilis, rich in steel and gold,  
Makes me a rustic as of old.  
With easy-going toil at will  
Estates of uncouth name I till.  
Outrageous lengths of sleep I take,  
And oft refuse at nine to wake.  
I pay myself nor more nor less  
For thirty years of wakefulness!

No fine clothes here—but battered dress,  
The first that comes, snatched from a press!  
I rise to find a hearth ablaze  
With oak the nearest wood purveys.  
This is a life of jollity:  
So shall I die contentedly.

## FOOTNOTES:

[Y] Martial (Marcus Valerius Martialis) was born at Bilbilis, in Spain, about 40 A.D. He went to Rome when twenty-four, and by attaching himself to the influential family of his fellow Spaniards, Seneca and Lucan, won his first introduction to Roman society. The earliest of his books which we possess celebrates the games associated with the dedication of the Flavian amphitheatre, the Colosseum, by Titus, in 80 A.D. Most of his other books belong to the reign of Domitian, to whom he cringed with fulsome adulation. After a residence in Rome during thirty-four years, he returned to Spain. He died probably soon after 102 A.D. Martial's importance to literature rests chiefly on two facts. He made a permanent impress upon the epigram by his gift of concise and vigorous utterance, culminating in a characteristically sharp sting; and he left in his verses, even where they are coarsest, an extraordinarily graphic index to the pleasure-loving and often corrupt society of his day. Martial had no deep seriousness of outlook upon life; yet he had better things in him than flippancy. He wearied of his long career of attendance upon patrons who requited him but shabbily; and with considerable taste for rural scenery, he longed for a more open-air existence than was attainable in Rome. Where he best exhibited genuine feeling was in his laments for the dead and his affection for friends. With the exception of the introductory piece from Byron, the verse translations here are by Professor Wight Duff.

---

**PHILIP MASSINGER**<sup>[Z]</sup>

---

# A New Way to Pay Old Debts

## *Persons in the Play*

LOVELL, *an English lord*

SIR GILES OVERREACH, *a cruel extortioner*

WELLBORN, *a prodigal, nephew to Sir Giles*

ALLWORTH, *a young gentleman, page to Lord Lovell,  
stepson to Lady Allworth*

MARRALL, *a creature of Sir Giles Overreach*

WILLDO, *a parson*

LADY ALLWORTH, *a rich widow*

MARGARET, *Sir Giles's daughter*

*The scene is laid in an English county*

## ACT I

SCENE I.—*A room in OVERREACH'S house. Enter OVERREACH  
and MARRALL.*

OVERREACH: This varlet, Wellborn, lives too long to  
upbraid me  
With my close cheat put on him. Will not cold  
Nor hunger kill him?

MARRALL: I've used all means; and the last night I  
caused  
His host, the tapster, to turn him out of doors;  
And since I've charged all of your friends and tenants  
To refuse him even a crust of mouldy bread.

OVERREACH: Persuade him that 'tis better steal than  
beg:

Then, if I prove he have but robbed a hen roost,  
Not all the world shall save him from the gallows.

MARRALL: I'll do my best, sir.

OVERREACH: I'm now on my main work, with the  
Lord Lovell;  
The gallant-minded, popular Lord Lovell.  
He's come into the country; and my aims  
Are to invite him to my house.

MARRALL: I see.  
This points at my young mistress.

OVERREACH: She must part with  
That humble title, and write honourable—  
Yes, Marrall, my right honourable daughter,  
If all I have, or e'er shall get, will do it.

*[Exit OVERREACH. Enter WELLBORN.]*

MARRALL: Before, like you, I had outlived my  
fortunes,  
A withe had served my turn to hang myself.  
Is there no purse to be cut? House to be broken?  
Or market-woman with eggs that you may murder,  
And so dispatch the business?

WELLBORN: Here's variety,  
I must confess; but I'll accept of none  
Of all your gentle offers, I assure you.  
Despite the rhetoric that the fiend has taught you,  
I am as far as thou art from despair.  
Nay, I have confidence, which is more than hope,  
To live, and suddenly, better than ever.  
Come, dine with me, and with a gallant lady.

MARRALL: With the lady of the lake or queen of  
fairies?  
For I know it must be an enchanted dinner.

WELLBORN: With the Lady Allworth, knave.

MARRALL: Nay, now there's hope  
Thy brain is cracked.

WELLBORN: Mark thee with what respect  
I am entertained.

MARRALL: With choice, no doubt, of dog-whips!

WELLBORN: 'Tis not far off; go with me; trust thine  
eyes.

MARRALL: I will endure thy company.

WELLBORN: Come along, then.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*The country.* MARRALL assures OVERREACH that the plot on WELLBORN succeeds. The rich LADY ALLWORTH has feasted him and is fallen in love with him; he lives to be a greater prey than ever to OVERREACH. Angered at the information, OVERREACH, who has himself attempted in vain to see her, knocks his creature down, mollifying him afterwards with gold.

## ACT II

SCENE I.—*A chamber in LADY ALLWORTH'S house.* LOVELL and ALLWORTH discovered. Having heard of the mutual attachment of MARGARET and ALLWORTH, LORD LOVELL has assured the latter that he will help bring it to a successful issue, and that neither the beauty nor the wealth of SIR GILES'S daughter shall tempt him to betray ALLWORTH'S confidence. Enter MARRALL, and with him SIR GILES, who from what he has seen of their behaviour at a dinner given by him in LORD LOVELL'S honour believes that LOVELL wishes to marry MARGARET and that LADY ALLWORTH is enamoured of

WELLBORN. *To further this latter match and to prosecute new designs against WELLBORN he has lent him a thousand pounds.*

OVERREACH: A good day to my lord.

LOVELL: You are an early riser, Sir Giles.

OVERREACH: And reason, to attend your lordship.  
Go to my nephew, Marrall.  
See all his debts discharged, and help his worship  
To fit on his rich suit.

*[Exit MARRALL*

LOVELL: I have writ this morning  
A few lines to my mistress, your fair daughter.

OVERREACH: 'Twill fire her, for she's wholly yours  
already.

Sweet Master Allworth, take my ring; 'twill carry  
To her presence, I dare warrant you; and there plead  
For my good lord, if you shall find occasion.  
That done, pray ride to Nottingham; get a licence  
Still by this token. I'll have it dispatched,  
And suddenly, my lord, that I may say  
My honourable, nay, right honourable daughter.

LOVELL: Haste your return.

ALLWORTH: I will not fail, my lord.

*[Exit.*

OVERREACH: I came not to make offer with my  
daughter

A certain portion; that were poor and trivial:  
In one word, I pronounce all that is mine,  
In lands, or leases, ready coin, or goods,  
With her, my lord, comes to you; nor shall you have  
One motive to induce you to believe  
I live too long, since every year I'll add  
Something unto the heap, which shall be yours too.

LOVELL: You are a right kind father.

OVERREACH: You'll have reason  
To think me such. How do you like this seat?  
Would it not serve to entertain your friends?

LOVELL: A well-built pile; and she that's mistress of  
it,  
Worthy the large revenue.

OVERREACH: She, the mistress?  
It may be so for a time; but let my lord  
Say only he but like it, and would have it,  
I say ere long 'tis his.

LOVELL: Impossible.

OVERREACH: You do conclude too fast. 'Tis not alone  
The Lady Allworth's lands; for these, once Wellborn's  
(As, by her dotage on him, I know they will be),  
Shall soon be mine. But point out any man's  
In all the shire, and say they lie convenient  
And useful for your lordship, and once more  
I say aloud, they are yours.

LOVELL: I dare not own  
What's by unjust and cruel means extorted:  
My fame and credit are too dear to me.

OVERREACH: Your reputation shall stand as fair  
In all good men's opinions as now.  
All my ambition is to have my daughter  
Right honourable; which my lord can make her:  
And might I live to dance upon my knee  
A young Lord Lovell, borne by her unto you,  
I write *nil ultra* to my proudest hopes.  
I'll ruin the country to supply your waste:  
The scourge of prodigals, want, shall never find you.

LOVELL: Are you not moved with the imprecations  
And curses of whole families, made wretched  
By these practices?

OVERREACH: Yes, as rocks are,  
When foamy billows split themselves against  
Their flinty ribs; or as the moon is moved  
When wolves, with hunger pined, howl at her brightness.  
I only think what 'tis to have my daughter  
Right honourable; and 'tis a powerful charm,  
Makes me insensible of remorse, or pity,  
Or the least sting of conscience.

LOVELL: I admire  
The toughness of your nature.

OVERREACH: 'Tis for you,  
My lord, and for my daughter I am marble.  
My haste commands me hence: in one word, therefore,  
Is it a match, my lord?

LOVELL: I hope that is past doubt now.

OVERREACH: Then rest secure; not the hate of all  
mankind,  
Not fear of what can fall on me hereafter,  
Shall make me study aught but your advancement  
One storey higher: an earl! if gold can do it.

[*Exit.*]

LOVELL: He's gone; I wonder how the earth can bear  
Such a portent! I, that have lived a soldier,  
And stood the enemy's violent charge undaunted,  
Am bathed in a cold sweat.

SCENE II.—*A chamber in SIR GILES'S house. Enter WELLBORN  
and MARRALL.*

WELLBORN: Now, Master Marrall, what's the weighty  
secret  
You promised to impart?

MARRALL: This only, in a word: I know Sir Giles  
Will come upon you for security

For his thousand pounds; which you must not consent to.  
As he grows in heat (as I'm sure he will),  
Be you but rough, and say, he's in your debt  
Ten times the sum upon sale of your land.  
The deed in which you passed it over to him  
Bid him produce: he'll have it to deliver  
To the Lord Lovell, with many other writings,  
And present moneys. I'll instruct you farther  
As I wait on your worship.

WELLBORN: I trust thee.

*[Exeunt. Enter MARGARET as if in anger,  
followed by ALLWORTH.]*

MARGARET: I'll pay my lord all debts due to his title;  
And when with terms not taking from his honour  
He does solicit me, I shall gladly hear him:  
But in this peremptory, nay, commanding way,  
To appoint a meeting, and without my knowledge,  
Shows a confidence that deceives his lordship.

ALLWORTH: I hope better, good lady.

MARGARET: Hope, sir, what you please; I have  
A father, and, without his full consent,  
I can grant nothing.

*[Enter OVERREACH, having overheard.]*

OVERREACH (*aside*): I like this obedience.  
But whatever my lord writes must and shall be  
Accepted and embraced. (*Addressing Allworth.*) Sweet  
Master Allworth,  
You show yourself a true and faithful servant.  
How! frowning, Meg? Are these looks to receive  
A messenger from my lord? In name of madness,  
What could his honour write more to content you?

MARGARET: Why, sir, I would be married like your  
daughter,  
Not hurried away in the night, I know not whither,

Without all ceremony; no friends invited,  
To honour the solemmnity.

ALLWORTH: My lord desires this privacy, in respect  
His honourable kinsmen are far off;  
And he desires there should be no delay.

MARGARET: Give me but in the church, and I'm  
content.

OVERREACH: So my lord have you, what care I who  
gives you?  
Lord Lovell would be private, I'll not cross him.  
Use my ring to my chaplain; he is beneficed  
At my manor of Gotham, and called Parson Willdo.

MARGARET: What warrant is your ring? He may  
suppose  
I got that twenty ways without your knowledge.  
Your presence would do better.

OVERREACH: Still perverse!  
Paper and ink there.

ALLWORTH: I can furnish you.

OVERREACH: I thank you; I can write then.

*[Writes on his book.]*

ALLWORTH: You may, if you please, leave out the  
name of my lord,  
In respect he comes disguised, and only write,  
"Marry her to this gentleman."

OVERREACH: Well advised.

*[MARGARET kneels.]*

'Tis done; away—my blessing, girl? Thou hast it.

*[Exeunt ALLWORTH and MARGARET.]*

OVERREACH: Farewell! Now all's cock sure.  
Methink I hear already knights and ladies  
Say, "Sir Giles Overreach, how is it with

Your honourable daughter? Has her honour  
Slept well to-night?" Now for Wellborn  
And the lands; were he once married to the widow—I  
have him here. [*Exit.*]

### ACT III

SCENE I.—*A chamber in LADY ALLWORTH'S house. Enter LOVELL and LADY ALLWORTH contracted to one another. He has told her that only a desire to promote the union of her promising young stepson, ALLWORTH, with MARGARET OVERREACH tempted him into a seeming courtship of SIR GILES'S daughter. She has told him that her somewhat exaggerated courtesies and attentions to WELLBORN were an obligation paid to one who in his prosperous days had ventured all for her dead husband. To them enter WELLBORN in a rich habit.*

LADY ALLWORTH: You're welcome, sir. Now you look like yourself.

WELLBORN: Your creature, madam. I will never hold My life my own, when you please to command it.

LADY ALLWORTH: I'm glad my endeavours prospered.  
Saw you lately  
Sir Giles, your uncle?

WELLBORN: I heard of him, madam,  
By his minister, Marrall. He's grown into strange  
passions  
About his daughter. This last night he looked for  
Your lordship at his house; but missing you,  
And she not yet appearing, his wise head  
Is much perplexed and troubled.

OVERREACH (*outside*): Ha! find her, booby; thou huge  
lump of nothing.  
I'll bore thine eyes out else.

WELLBORN: May't please your lordship,  
For some ends of my own, but to withdraw  
A little out of sight, though not of hearing.

LOVELL: You shall direct me.

*[Steps aside. Enter OVERREACH, with  
distracted looks, driving in MARRALL before  
him.]*

OVERREACH: Lady, by your leave, did you see my  
daughter, lady,  
And the lord, her husband? Are they in your house?  
If they are, discover, that I may bid them joy;  
And, as an entrance to her place of honour,  
See your ladyship on her left hand, and make curt'sies  
When she nods on you; which you must receive  
As a special favour.

LADY ALLWORTH: When I know, Sir Giles,  
Her state require such ceremony I shall pay it;  
Meantime, I neither know nor care where she is.

OVERREACH: Nephew!

WELLBORN: Well.

OVERREACH: No more!

WELLBORN: 'Tis all I owe you.

OVERREACH: I am familiar with the cause that makes  
you  
Bear up thus bravely; there's a certain buz  
Of a stolen marriage—do you hear? Of a stolen marriage;  
In which, 'tis said, there's somebody hath been cozened.  
I name no parties.

*[LADY ALLWORTH turns away.]*

WELLBORN: Well, sir, and what follows?

OVERREACH: Marry, this, since you are peremptory.  
Remember  
Upon mere hope of your great match I lent you

A thousand pounds. Put me in good security,  
And suddenly, by mortgage or by statute,  
Of some of your new possessions, or I'll have you  
Dragged in your lavender robes to the jail.  
Shall I have security?

WELLBORN: No, indeed, you shall not:  
Nor bond, nor bill, nor bare acknowledgment;  
Your great looks fright not me. And whereas, sir,  
You charge me with a debt of a thousand pounds,  
Either restore my land, or I'll recover  
A debt, that is truly due to me from you,  
In value ten times more than what you challenge.

OVERREACH: Oh, monstrous impudence! Did I not  
purchase  
The land left by thy father? [*Enter servant with a box.*  
Is not here  
The deed that does confirm it mine?

MARRALL: Now, now.

WELLBORN: I do acknowledge none; I ne'er passed  
o'er  
Any such land; I grant, for a year or two,  
You had it in trust; which if you do discharge,  
Surrendering the possession, you shall ease  
Yourself and me of chargeable suits in law.

LADY ALLWORTH: In my opinion, he advises well.

OVERREACH: Good, good; conspire with your new  
husband, lady.  
(*To WELLBORN*) Yet, to shut up thy mouth, and make thee  
give  
Thyself the lie, the loud lie! I draw out  
The precious evidence. (*Opens the box.*) Ha!

LADY ALLWORTH: A fair skin of parchment.

WELLBORN: Indented, I confess, and labels too;  
But neither wax nor words. How? Thunderstruck!

Is this your precious evidence, my wise uncle?

OVERREACH: What prodigy is this? What subtle devil  
Hath razed out the inscription—the wax  
Turned into dust? Do you deal with witches, rascal?  
This juggling shall not save you.

WELLBORN: TO save thee would beggar the stock of  
mercy.

OVERREACH: Marrall!

MARRALL: Sir.

OVERREACH (*flattering him*): Though the witnesses  
are dead,  
Help with an oath or two; and for thy master  
I know thou wilt swear anything to dash  
This cunning sleight; the deed being drawn, too,  
By thee, my careful Marrall, and delivered  
When thou wert present, will make good my title.  
Wilt thou not swear this?

MARRALL: I have a conscience not seared up like  
yours;  
I know no deeds.

OVERREACH: Wilt thou betray me?

MARRALL: Yes, and uncase you, too. The lump of  
flesh,  
The idiot, the patch, the slave, the booby,  
The property fit only to be beaten,  
Can now anatomise you, and lay open  
All your black plots.

OVERREACH: But that I will live, rogue, to torture  
thee,  
And make thee wish and kneel in vain to die,  
These swords, that keep thee from me, should fix here.  
I play the fool and make my anger but ridiculous.  
There will be a time, and place, there will be, cowards!

When you shall feel what I dare do.  
After these storms, at length a calm appears.

[*Enter* PARSON WILLDO.

Welcome, most welcome; is the deed done?

WILLDO: Yes, I assure you.

OVERREACH: Vanish all sad thoughts!  
My doubts and fears are in the titles drowned  
Of my right honourable, right honourable daughter.  
A lane there for my lord!

[*Loud music. Enter* ALLWORTH, MARGARET,  
*and* LOVELL.

MARGARET: Sir, first your pardon, then your blessing,  
with  
Your full allowance of the choice I have made.  
(*Kneeling*) This is my husband.

OVERREACH: How?

ALLWORTH: So I assure you.

OVERREACH: Devil! Are they married?

WILLDO: They are married, sir; but why this rage to  
me?  
Is not this your letter, sir? And these the words,  
"Marry her to this gentleman"?

OVERREACH: I never will believe it, 'death! I will not;  
That I should be gulled, baffled, fooled, defeated  
By children, all my hopes and labours crossed.

WELLBORN: You are so, my grave uncle, it appears.

OVERREACH: Village nurses revenge their wrongs  
with curses,  
I'll waste no words, but thus I take the life  
Which, wretch, I gave to thee.

[*Offers to kill* MARGARET.

LOVELL: Hold, for your own sake!

OVERREACH: Lord! thus I spit at thee,  
And at thy counsel; and again desire thee  
As thou'rt a soldier, let us quit the house  
And change six words in private.

LOVELL: I am ready.

LADY ALLWORTH: Stay, sir; would you contest with  
one distracted?

OVERREACH: Are you pale?  
Borrow his help; though Hercules call it odds,  
I'll stand against both, as I am, hemmed in thus.  
Alone, I can do nothing, but I have servants  
And friends to succour me; and if I make not  
This house a heap of ashes, or leave one throat uncut,  
Hell add to my afflictions!

*[Exit.*

MARRALL: Is't not brave sport?

ALLWORTH (*to* MARGARET): Nay, weep not, dearest,  
though't express your pity.

MARRALL: Was it not a rare trick,  
An't please your worship, to make the deed nothing?  
I can do twenty neater, if you please  
To purchase and grow rich. They are mysteries  
Not to be spoke in public; certain minerals  
Incorporated in the ink and wax.

WELLBORN: You are a rascal. He that dares be false  
To a master, though unjust, will ne'er be true  
To any other. Look not for reward  
Or favour from me. Instantly begone.

MARRALL: At this haven false servants still arrive.

*[Exit. Re-enter* OVERREACH. *[Exit. Re-enter*  
OVERREACH.

WILLDO: Some little time I have spent, under  
your favours,

In physical studies, and, if my judgment err  
not,  
He's mad beyond recovery.

OVERREACH: Were they a squadron of pikes, when I  
am mounted  
Upon my injuries, shall I fear to charge them?

*[Flourishing his sword sheathed.]*

I'll fall to execution—ha! I am feeble:  
Some undone widow sits upon mine arm,  
And takes away the use of 't! And my sword,  
Glued to my scabbard with wronged orphans' tears,  
Will not be drawn. Are these the hangmen?  
But I'll be forced to hell like to myself;  
Though you were legions of accursed spirits,  
Thus would I fly among you.

*[Rushes forward.]*

WELLBORN: There's no help;  
Disarm him first, then bind him.

MARGARET: Oh, my dear father!

*[They force OVERREACH off.]*

ALLWORTH: You must be patient, mistress.

LOVELL: Pray take comfort.  
I will endeavour you shall be his guardians  
In his distraction: and for your land, Master Wellborn,  
Be it good or ill in law, I'll be an umpire  
Between you and this the undoubted heir  
Of Sir Giles Overreach; for me, here's the anchor  
That I must fix on.

*[Takes LADY ALLWORTH'S hand.]*

## FOOTNOTES:

[Z] Of all Shakespeare's immediate successors one of the most powerful, as well as the most prolific, was Philip Massinger. The son of a retainer in the household

of the Earl of Pembroke, he was born during the second half of 1583, and entered St. Alban's Hall, Oxford, in 1602, but left without a degree four years later. Coming to London, he appears to have mixed freely with writers for the stage, and soon made a reputation as playwright. The full extent of his literary activities is not known, inasmuch as a great deal of his work has been lost. He also collaborated with other authors, particularly with Fletcher (see Vol. XVI, p. 133) in whose grave he was buried on March 18, 1639. It is certain, however, that he wrote single-handed fifteen plays, of which the best known is the masterly and satirical comedy, "A New Way to Pay Old Debts." Printed in 1633, but probably written between 1625 and 1626, the piece retained its popularity longer than any other of Massinger's plays. The construction is ingenious, the dialogue witty, but the *dramatis personæ*, with the exception of Sir Giles Overreach, are feeble and without vitality.

---

# JOHN MILTON<sup>[AA]</sup>

---

# Paradise Lost

## *I.—The Army of the Rebel Angels*

The poem opens with an invocation to the Heavenly Muse for enlightenment and inspiration.

Of Man's first disobedience, and the fruit  
Of that forbidden tree whose mortal taste  
Brought death into the World, and all our  
    woe,  
With loss of Eden, till one greater Man  
Restore us, and regain the blissful seat,  
Sing, Heavenly Muse, that, on the secret top  
Of Horeb, or of Sinai, didst inspire  
That Shepherd who first taught the chosen  
    seed  
In the beginning how the heavens and earth  
Rose out of Chaos; or, if Sion's hill  
Delight thee more, and Siloa's brook that  
    flowed  
Fast by the oracle of God, I thence  
Invoke thy aid to my adventurous song,  
That with no middle flight intends to soar  
Above the Aonian mount, while it pursues  
Things unattempted yet in prose or rhyme.

And chiefly Thou, O Spirit, that dost prefer  
Before all temples the upright heart and pure,  
Instruct me, for Thou know'st; Thou from the  
    first  
Wast present, and, with mighty wings  
    outspread,  
Dove-like sat'st brooding on the vast Abyss,  
And mad'st it pregnant: what in me is dark

Illumine, what is low raise and support;  
That, to the highth of this great argument,  
I may assert Eternal Providence,  
And justify the ways of God to men.

Say first—for Heaven hides nothing from thy  
view,  
Nor the deep tract of Hell—say first what  
cause

Moved our grand Parents, in that happy state,  
Favoured of Heaven so highly, to fall off  
From their Creator, and trangress his will.

The infernal serpent; he it was whose guile,  
Stirred up with envy and revenge, deceived  
The mother of mankind, what time his pride  
Had cast him out from Heaven, with all his  
host

Of rebel angels. Him the Almighty Power  
Hurled headlong flaming from the ethereal  
sky,

With hideous ruin and combustion, down  
To bottomless perdition, there to dwell  
In adamantine chains and penal fire,  
Who durst defy the Omnipotent to arms.

For nine days and nights the apostate Angel lay silent, "rolling in the fiery gulf," and then, looking round, he discerned by his side Beelzebub, "one next himself in power and next in crime." With him he took counsel, and rearing themselves from off the pool of fire they found footing on a dreary plain. Walking with uneasy steps the burning marle, the lost Archangel made his way to the shore of "that inflamed sea," and called aloud to his associates, to "Awake, arise, or be for ever fallen!" They heard, and gathered about him, all who were "known to men by various names and various idols through the heathen world," but with looks "downcast and damp." He

---

Then straight commands that, at the warlike  
sound  
Of trumpets loud and clarions, be upreared

His mighty standard. That proud honour  
claimed  
Azazel as his right, a cherub tall,  
Who forthwith from the glittering staff  
unfurled  
The imperial ensign....  
At which the universal host up-sent  
A shout that tore Hell's conclave, and beyond  
Frighted the reign of Chaos and old Night.

The mighty host now circled in orderly array about "their dread Commander."

He, above the rest  
In shape and gesture proudly eminent,  
Stood like a tower. His form had not yet lost  
All its original brightness, nor appeared  
Less than an Archangel ruined, and the excess  
Of glory obscured: as when the sun new-risen  
Looks through the horizontal misty air  
Shorn of his beams, or, from behind the  
moon,  
In dim eclipse, disastrous twilight sheds  
On half the nations, and with fear of change  
Perplexes monarchs. Darkened so, yet shone  
Above them all the Archangel. But his face  
Deep scars of thunder had intrenched, and  
care  
Sat on his faded cheek, but under brows  
Of dauntless courage, and considerate pride,  
Waiting revenge....  
He now prepared  
To speak; whereat their doubled ranks they  
bend  
From wing to wing, and half enclose him  
round  
With all his peers. Attention held them mute.  
Thrice he assayed and thrice, in spite of  
scorn,

Tears, such as Angels weep, burst forth; at  
last  
Words interwove with sighs found out their  
way:  
"O myriads of immortal Spirits! O Powers,  
Matchless, but with the Almighty!—and that  
strife  
Was not inglorious, though the event was  
dire,  
As this place testifies, and this dire change,  
Hateful to utter. But what power of mind,  
Foreseeing or presaging, from the depth  
Of knowledge past or present, could have  
feared  
How such united force of gods, how such  
As stood like these, could ever know repulse?  
He who reigns  
Monarch in Heaven till then as one secure  
Sat on his throne, upheld by old repute,  
Consent, or custom, and his regal state  
Put forth at full, but still his strength  
concealed—  
Which tempted our attempt, and wrought our  
fall.  
Henceforth his might we know, and know our  
own,  
So as not either to provoke, or dread  
New war provoked. Our better part remains  
To work in close design, by fraud or guile,  
What force effected not; that he no less  
At length from us may find, Who overcomes  
By force hath overcome but half his foe.  
Space may produce more Worlds, whereof so  
rife  
There went a fame in Heaven that He ere long  
Intended to create, and therein plant  
A generation whom his choice regard

Should favour equal to the Sons of Heaven.  
Thither, if but to pry, shall be perhaps  
Our first eruption—thither, or elsewhere;  
For this infernal pit shall never hold  
Celestial Spirits in bondage, nor the Abyss  
Long under darkness cover. But these  
thoughts  
Full counsel must mature. Peace is despaired;  
For who can think submission? War, then,  
war  
Open or understood, must be resolved."  
He spake; and to confirm his words, out-flew  
Millions of flaming swords, drawn from the  
thighs  
Of mighty Cherubim. The sudden blaze  
Far round illumined Hell. Highly they raged.  
Against the Highest, and fierce with grasped  
arms  
Clashed on their sounding shields the din of  
war,  
Hurling defiance toward the vault of Heaven.

The exiled host now led by Mammon, "the least erected Spirit that fell from Heaven," proceeded to build Pandemonium, their architect being him whom "men called Mulciber," and here

The great Seraphic Lords and Cherubim  
In close recess and secret conclave sat  
A thousand demi-gods on golden seats.

## *II.—The Fiends' Conclave*

High on a throne of royal state, which far  
Outshone the wealth of Ormus or of Ind,  
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand  
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,

Satan exalted sat, by merit raised  
To that bad eminence.

Here his compeers gathered round to advise. First Moloch, the "strongest and the fiercest Spirit that fought in Heaven," counselled war. Then uprose Belial—"a fairer person lost not Heaven"—and reasoned that force was futile.

"The towers of Heaven are filled  
With armed watch, that render all access  
Impregnable."

Besides, failure might lead to their annihilation, and who wished for that?

"Who would lose,  
Though full of pain, this intellectual being,  
These thoughts that wander through eternity?"

They were better now than when they were hurled from Heaven, or when they lay chained on the burning lake. Their Supreme Foe might in time remit his anger, and slacken those raging fires. Mammon also advised them to keep the peace, and make the best they could of Hell, a policy received with applause; but then Beelzebub, "than whom, Satan except, none higher sat," rose, and with a look which "drew audience and attention still as night," developed the suggestion previously made by Satan, that they should attack Heaven's High Arbitrator through His new-created Man, waste his creation, and "drive as we are driven."

"This would surpass  
Common revenge, and interrupt His joy  
In our confusion, and our joy upraise  
In His disturbance."

This proposal was gleefully received. But then the difficulty arose who should be sent in search of this new world? All sat mute, till Satan declared that he would "abroad through all the coasts of dark destruction," a decision hailed with reverent applause. The Council dissolved, the Infernal Peers disperse to their several employments: some to sports, some to warlike feats, some to argument, "in wandering mazes lost," some to adventurous discovery; while Satan wings his way to the nine-fold gate of Hell, guarded by Sin, and her abortive offspring, Death; and Sin, opening the gate for him to go out, cannot shut it again. The Fiend stands on the brink, "pondering his voyage," while before him appear

The secrets of the hoary Deep—on dark  
Illimitable ocean, without bound,

Without dimension; where length, breadth,  
and highth,  
And time, and place, are lost; where eldest  
Night  
And Chaos, ancestors of Nature, hold  
Eternal anarchy.

At last he spreads his "sail-broad vans for flight," and, directed by Chaos and sable-vested Night, comes to where he can see far off

The empyreal Heaven, once his native  
seat,  
And, fast by, hanging in a golden chain,  
This pendent World.

### *III.—Satan Speeds to Earth*

An invocation to Light, and a lament for the poet's blindness now precludes a picture of Heaven, and the Almighty Father conferring with the only Son.

Hail, holy Light, offspring of Heaven first-  
born!  
Bright effluence of bright essence uncreate!  
Whose fountain who shall tell? Before the  
Sun,  
Before the Heavens, thou wert, and at the  
voice  
Of God, as with a mantle, didst invest  
The rising World of waters dark and deep,  
Won from the void and formless Infinite!  
..... But thou  
Revisit'st not these eyes, that roll in vain  
To find thy piercing ray, and find no dawn.  
..... With the year  
Seasons return; but not to me returns  
Day, or the sweet approach of even or morn,  
Or sight of vernal bloom, or summer's rose,

Or flocks, or herds, or human face divine;  
But clouds instead, and ever-during dark  
Surrounds me, from the cheerful ways of men  
Cut off.

God, observing the approach of Satan to the world, foretells the fall of Man to the Son, who listens while

In his face  
Divine compassion visibly appeared,  
Love without end, and without measure  
grace.

The Father asks where such love can be found as will redeem man by satisfying eternal Justice.

He asked, but all the Heavenly Quire stood  
mute,  
And silence was in Heaven.

Admiration seized all Heaven, and "to the ground they cast their crowns in solemn adoration," when the Son replied

"Account me Man. I for his sake will leave  
Thy bosom, and this glory next to Thee  
Freely put off, and for him lastly die  
Well pleased; on me let Death wreak all his  
rage.  
Under his gloomy power I shall not long  
Lie vanquished."

While the immortal quires chanted their praise, Satan drew near, and sighted the World—the sun, earth, moon, and companion planets—

As when a scout,  
Through dark and desert ways with peril gone  
All night, at last by break of cheerful dawn  
Obtains the brow of some high-climbing hill,  
Which to his eye discovers unaware  
The goodly prospect of some foreign land

First seen, or some renowned metropolis  
With glistening spires and pinnacles adorned,  
Which now the rising Sun gilds with his  
beams,  
Such wonder seized, though after Heaven  
seen,  
The Spirit malign, but much more envy  
seized,  
At sight of all this world beheld so fair.

Flying to the Sun, and taking the form of "a stripling Cherub," Satan recognises there the Archangel Uriel and accosts him.

"Brightest Seraph, tell  
In which of all these shining orbs hath Man  
His fixed seat."

And Uriel, although held to be "the sharpest-sighted Spirit of all in Heaven," was deceived, for angels cannot discern hypocrisy. So Uriel, pointing, answers:

"That place is Earth, the seat of Man....  
That spot to which I point is Paradise,  
Adam's abode; those lofty shades his bower.  
Thy way thou canst not miss; me mine  
requires."  
Thus said, he turned; and Satan, bowing low,  
As to superior Spirits is wont in Heaven,  
Where honour due and reverence none  
neglects,  
Took leave, and toward the coast of Earth  
beneath,  
Down from the ecliptic, sped with hoped  
success,  
Throws his steep flight in many an aery  
wheel,  
Nor stayed till on Niphantes' top he lights.

#### *IV.—Of Adam and Eve in Paradise*

Coming within sight of Paradise Satan's conscience is aroused, and he grieves over the suffering his dire work will entail, exclaiming

"Me miserable; which way shall I fly  
Infinite wrath and infinite despair?  
Which way I fly is Hell; myself am Hell."

But he cannot brook submission, and hardens his heart afresh.

"So farewell hope, and, with hope, farewell  
fear,  
Farewell remorse! All good to me is lost;  
Evil, be thou my Good."

As he approaches Paradise more closely, the deliciousness of the place affects even his senses.

As when to them who sail  
Beyond the Cape of Hope, and now are past  
Mozambic, off at sea north-east winds blow  
Sabeian odours from the spicy shore  
Of Araby the Blest, with such delay  
Well pleased they slack their course, and  
many a league  
Cheered with the grateful smell old Ocean  
smiles,  
So entertained those odorous sweets the  
Fiend.

At last, after sighting "all kind of living creatures new to sight and strange," he descries Man.

Two of far nobler shape, erect and tall,  
God-like erect, with native honour clad  
In naked majesty, seemed lords of all,  
And worthy seemed; for in their looks divine  
The image of their glorious Maker shone.  
For contemplation he and valour formed,

For softness she and sweet attractive grace;  
He for God only, she for God in Him.  
So hand in hand they passed, the loveliest  
pair  
That ever since in love's embraces met—  
Adam the goodliest man of men since born  
His sons; the fairest of her daughters Eve.

At the sight of the gentle pair, Satan again almost relents. Taking the shape of various animals, he approaches to hear them talk and finds from Adam that the only prohibition laid on them is partaking of the Tree of Knowledge. Eve, replying, tells how she found herself alive, saw her form reflected in the water, and thought herself fairer even than Adam until

"Thy gentle hand  
Seized mine; I yielded, and from that time see  
How beauty is excelled by manly grace  
And wisdom, which alone is truly fair."

While Satan roams through Paradise, with "sly circumspection," Uriel descends on an evening sunbeam to warn Gabriel, chief of the angelic guards, that a suspected Spirit, with looks "alien from Heaven," had passed to earth, and Gabriel promises to find him before dawn.

Now came still Evening on, and Twilight gray  
Had in her sober livery all things clad;  
Silence accompanied; for beast and bird,  
They to their grassy couch, these to their  
nests  
Were slunk, all but the wakeful nightingale.  
She all night long her amorous descant sung.  
Silence was pleased. Now glowed the  
firmament  
With living sapphires; Hesperus, that led  
The starry host, rode brightest, till the Moon,  
Rising in clouded majesty, at length  
Apparent queen, unveiled her peerless light,  
And o'er the dark her silver mantle threw.

Adam and Eve talk ere they retire to rest—she questioning him

"Sweet is the breath of Morn, her rising  
sweet,  
With charm of earliest birds; pleasant the  
Sun,  
When first on this delightful land he spreads  
His orient beams, on herb, tree, fruit, and  
flower,  
Glistening with dew; fragrant the fertile Earth  
After soft showers; and sweet the coming on  
Of grateful Evening mild; then silent Night  
With this her solemn bird, and this fair Moon,  
And these the gems of Heaven, her starry  
train;  
But neither breath of Morn, when she ascends  
With charm of earliest birds; nor rising Sun  
On this delightful land; nor herb, fruit, flower,  
Glistening with dew; nor fragrance after  
showers,  
Nor grateful Evening mild; nor silent Night,  
With this her solemn bird; nor walk by moon,  
Or glittering star-light, without thee is sweet.  
But wherefore all night long shine these? For  
whom  
This glorious sight, when sleep hath shut all  
eyes?"

Adam replies:

"These have their course to finish round the  
Earth,  
And they, though unbeheld in deep of night,  
Shine not in vain. Nor think, though men  
were none,  
That Heaven would want spectators, God  
want praise.  
Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth  
Unseen, both when we wake, and when we  
sleep;

All these with ceaseless praise His works  
    behold  
Both day and night."....  
Thus talking, hand in hand, alone they passed  
On to their blissful bower.

Gabriel then sends the Cherubim, "armed to their night watches," and commands Ithuriel and Zephon to search the Garden, where they find Satan, "squat like a toad close to the ear of Eve," seeking to taint her dreams.

Him thus intent Ithuriel with his spear  
Touched lightly; for no falsehood can endure  
Touch of celestial temper, but returns  
Of force to its own likeness.

Satan therefore starts up in his own person, and is conducted to Gabriel, who sees him coming with them, "a third, of regal port, but faded splendour wan." Gabriel and he engage in a heated altercation, and a fight seems imminent between the Fiend and the angelic squadrons that "begin to hem him round," when, by a sign in the sky, Satan is reminded of his powerlessness in open fight, and flees, murmuring; "and with him fled the shades of Night."

### *V.—The Morning Hymn of Praise*

Adam, waking in the morning, finds Eve flushed and distraught, and she tells him of her troublous dreams. He cheers her, and they pass out to the open field, and, adoring, raise their morning hymn of praise.

"These are Thy glorious works, Parent of  
    good,  
Almighty! Thine this universal frame,  
Thus wondrous fair—Thyself how wondrous  
    then!  
Unspeakable! Who sittest above these  
    heavens  
To us invisible, or dimly seen  
In these Thy lowest works; yet these declare  
Thy goodness beyond thought, and power  
    divine.  
Speak, ye who best can tell, ye Sons of Light,

Angels—for ye behold Him, and with songs  
And choral symphonies, day without night,  
Circle His throne rejoicing—ye in Heaven;  
On Earth join, all ye creatures, to extol  
Him first, Him last, Him midst, and without  
end.

Fairest of Stars, last in the train of Night,  
If better than belong not to the Dawn,  
Sure pledge of Day, that crown'st the smiling  
morn

With thy bright circlet, praise Him in thy  
sphere

While day arises, that sweet hour of prime.  
Thou Sun, of this great World both eye and  
soul,

Acknowledge Him thy greater; sound His  
praise

In thy eternal course, both when thou climb'st  
And when high noon hast gained, and when  
thou fall'st.

Moon, that now meet'st the orient Sun, now  
fliest,

With the fixed Stars, fixed in their orb, that  
flies;

And ye five other wandering Fires, that move  
In mystic dance, not without song, resound  
His praise Who out of Darkness called up  
Light.

Ye Mists and Exhalations, that now rise  
From hill or steaming lake, dusky or gray,  
Till the Sun paint your fleecy skirts with gold,  
In honour to the World's great Author rise;  
Whether to deck with clouds the uncoloured  
sky,

Or wet the thirsty earth with falling showers,  
Rising or falling, still advance His praise.

His praise, ye Winds, that from four quarters  
blow,  
Breathe soft or loud; and wave your tops, ye  
Pines,  
With every plant in sign of worship wave.  
Fountains, and ye that warble as ye flow,  
Melodious murmurs, warbling, tune His  
praise.  
Join voices, all ye living souls. Ye Birds,  
That, singing, up to Heaven's gate ascend,  
Bear on your wings and in your notes His  
praise.  
Hail universal Lord! Be bounteous still  
To give us only good; and, if the night  
Have gathered aught of evil, or concealed,  
Disperse it, as now light dispels the dark."  
So prayed they innocent, and to their thoughts  
Firm peace recovered soon, and wonted calm.

The Almighty now sends Raphael, "the sociable Spirit," from Heaven to warn Adam of his danger, and alighting on the eastern cliff of Paradise, the Seraph shakes his plumes and diffuses heavenly fragrance around; then moving through the forest is seen by Adam, who, with Eve, entertains him, and seizes the occasion to ask him of "their Being Who dwell in Heaven," and further, what is meant by the angelic caution—"If ye be found obedient." Raphael thereupon tells of the disobedience, in Heaven, of Satan, and his fall, "from that high state of bliss into what woe." He tells how the Divine decree of obedience to the Only Son was received by Satan with envy, because he felt "himself impaired"; and how, consulting with Beelzebub, he drew away all the Spirits under their command to the "spacious North," and, taunting them with being eclipsed, proposed that they should rebel. Only Abdiel remained faithful, and urged them to cease their "impious rage," and seek pardon in time, or they might find that He Who had created them could uncreate them.

So spake the Seraph Abdiel, faithful found;  
Among the faithless faithful only he;  
Among innumerable false unmoved,  
Unshaken, unseduced, unterrified,  
His loyalty he kept, his love, his zeal;  
Nor number nor example with him wrought  
To swerve from truth, or change his constant  
mind

Though single.

## *VI.—The Story of Satan's Revolt*

Raphael, continuing, tells Adam how Abdiel flew back to Heaven with the story of the revolt, but found it was known. The Sovran Voice having welcomed the faithful messenger with "Servant of God, well done!" orders the Archangels Michael and Gabriel to lead forth the celestial armies, while the banded powers of Satan are hastening on to set the Proud Aspirer on the very Mount of God. "Long time in even scale the battle hung," but with the dawning of the third day, the Father directed the Messiah to ascend his chariot, and end the strife. "Far off his coming shone," and at His presence "Heaven his wonted face renewed, and with fresh flowerets hill and valley smiled." But, nearing the foe, His countenance changed into a terror "too severe to be beheld."

Full soon among them He arrived, in His  
right hand  
Grasping ten thousand thunders....  
They, astonished, all resistance lost,  
All courage; down their idle weapons dropt....  
.... Headlong themselves they threw  
Down from the verge of Heaven; eternal  
wrath  
Burnt after them to the bottomless pit.

A like fate, Raphael warns Adam, may befall mankind if they are guilty of disobedience.

## *VII.—The New Creation*

The "affable Archangel," at Adam's request, continues his talk by telling how the world began. Lest Lucifer should take a pride in having "dispeopled Heaven," God announces to the Son that he will create another world, and a race to dwell in it who may

Open to themselves at length the way  
Up hither, under long obedience tried,  
And Earth be changed to Heaven, and  
Heaven to Earth,

This creation is to be the work of the Son, who, girt with omnipotence, prepares to go forth.

Heaven opened wide  
Her ever-daring gates, harmonious sound  
On golden hinges moving, to let forth  
The King of Glory, in his powerful Word  
And Spirit coming to create new worlds.  
On Heavenly ground they stood, and from the  
    shore  
They viewed the vast immeasurable Abyss  
Outrageous as a sea, dark, wasteful, wild,  
Up from the bottom turned by furious winds  
And surging waves, as mountains to assault  
Heaven's highth, and with the centre mix the  
    pole.  
"Silence, ye troubled waves, and thou Deep,  
    peace!"  
Said then the omnific Word. "Your discord  
    end!"  
Nor stayed; but on the wings of cherubim,  
Uplifted in paternal glory rode  
Far into Chaos and the World unborn;  
For Chaos heard his voice....  
And Earth, self-balanced on her centre hung.

The six days' creative work is then described in the order of Genesis.

### *VIII.—The Creation of Adam*

Asked by Adam to tell him about the motions of the heavenly bodies, Raphael adjures him to refrain from thought on "matters hid; to serve God and fear; and to be lowly wise." He then asks Adam to tell him of his creation, he having at the time been absent on "excursion toward the gates of Hell." Adam complies, and relates how he appealed to God for a companion, and was answered in the fairest of God's gifts. Raphael warns Adam to beware lest passion for Eve sway his judgment, for on him depends the weal or woe, not only of himself, but of all his sons.

## *IX.—The Temptation and the Fall*

While Raphael was in Paradise, for seven nights, Satan hid himself by circling round in the shadow of the Earth, then, rising as a mist, he crept into Eden undetected, and entered the serpent as the "fittest imp of fraud," but not until once more lamenting that the enjoyment of the earth was not for him. In the morning, when the human pair came forth to their pleasant labours, Eve suggested that they should work apart, for when near each other "looks intervene and smiles," and casual discourse. Adam replied, defending "this sweet intercourse of looks and smiles," and saying they had been made not for irksome toil, but for delight.

"But if much converse perhaps  
Thee satiate, to short absence I could yield;  
For solitude sometimes is best society,  
And short retirement urges sweet return.  
But other doubt possessed me, lest harm  
Befall thee....  
The wife, where danger or dishonour lurks,  
Safest and seemliest by her husband stays  
Who guards her, or the worst with her  
endures."

Eve replies:

"That such an enemy we have, who seeks  
Our ruin, both by thee informed I learn,  
And from the parting Angel overheard,  
As in a shady nook I stood behind,  
Just then returned at shut of evening flowers."

She, however, repels the suggestion that she can be deceived. Adam replies that he does not wish her to be tempted, and that united they would be stronger and more watchful. Eve responds that if Eden is so exposed that they are not secure apart, how can they be happy? Adams gives way, with the explanation that it is not mistrust but tender love that enjoins him to watch over her, and, as she leaves him,

Her long with ardent look his eye pursued  
Delighted, but desiring more her stay.  
Oft he to her his charge of quick return  
Repeated; she to him as oft engaged  
To be returned by noon amid the bower,

And all things in best order to invite  
Noontide repast, or afternoon's repose.  
O much deceived, much failing, hapless Eve,  
Of thy presumed return! Event perverse!  
Thou never from that hour in Paradise  
Found'st either sweet repast or sound repose.

The Fiend, questing through the garden, finds her

Veiled in a cloud of fragrance where she  
stood  
Half-spied, so thick the roses bushing round  
About her glowed.... Them she upstays  
Gently with myrtle band, mindless the while  
Herself, though fairest unsupported flower,  
From her best prop so far, and storm so nigh.

Seeing her, Satan "much the place admired, the person more."

As one who, long in populous city pent,  
Forth issuing on a summer's morn to breathe  
Among the pleasant villages and farms  
Adjoined, from each thing met conceives  
delight—  
The smell of grain, of tedded grass, of kine,  
Of dairy, each rural sight, each rural sound—  
If chance with nymph-like step fair virgin  
pass,  
What pleasing seemed, for her now pleases  
more,  
She most, and in her look seems all delight.  
Such pleasure took the Serpent to behold  
This flowery plat, the sweet recess of Eve  
Thus early, thus alone.

The original serpent did not creep on the ground, but was a handsome creature.

With burnished neck of verdant gold, erect  
Amidst his circling spires, that on the grass

Floated redundant. Pleasing was his shape  
And lovely.

Appearing before Eve with an air of worshipful admiration, and speaking in human language, the arch-deceiver gains her ear with flattery. "Empress of this fair world, resplendent Eve." She asks how it is that man's language is pronounced by "tongue of brute." The reply is that the power came through eating the fruit of a certain tree, which gave him reason, and also constrained him to worship her as "sovrán of creatures." Asked to show her the tree, he leads her swiftly to the Tree of Prohibition, and replying to her scruples and fears, declares—

"Queen of the Universe! Do not believe  
Those rigid threats of death. Ye shall not die.  
How should ye? By the fruit? It gives you life  
To knowledge. By the Threatener? Look on  
me—  
Me who have touched and tasted, yet both  
live  
And life more perfect have attained than Fate  
Meant me, by venturing higher than my lot.  
Shall that be shut to Man which to the Beast  
Is open? Or will God incense his ire  
For such a petty trespass?...  
God therefore cannot hurt ye and be just.  
Goddess humane, reach, then, and freely  
taste!"  
He ended; and his words replete with guile  
Into her heart too easy entrance won.

Eve herself then took up the argument and repeated admiringly the Serpent's persuasions.

"In the day we eat  
Of this fair fruit our doom is we shall die!  
How dies the Serpent? He hath eaten and  
lives,  
And knows, and speaks, and reasons, and  
discerns,  
Irrational till then. For us alone  
Was death invented? Or to us denied

This intellectual food, for beasts reserved?  
Here grows the care of all, this fruit divine,  
Fair to the eye, inviting to the taste,  
Of virtue to make wise. What hinders then  
To reach and feed at once both body and  
mind?"

So saying, her rash hand in evil hour  
Forth-reaching to the fruit, she plucked, she  
ate.

Earth felt the wound, and Nature from her  
seat,  
Sighing through all her works, gave signs of  
woe  
That all was lost. Back to the thicket slunk  
The guilty serpent.

At first elated by the fruit, Eve presently began to reflect, excuse herself, and wonder what the effect would be on Adam.

"And I perhaps am secret. Heaven is high—  
High, and remote to see from thence distinct  
Each thing on Earth; and other care perhaps  
May have diverted from continual watch  
Our great Forbidder, safe with all his spies  
About him. But to Adam in what sort  
Shall I appear? Shall I to him make known  
As yet my change?"

But what if God have seen  
And death ensue? Then I shall be no more;  
And Adam, wedded to another Eve,  
Shall live with her enjoying, I extinct!  
A death to think! Confirmed then, I resolve  
Adam shall share with me in bliss or woe,  
So dear I love him that with him all deaths  
I could endure, without him live no life."

Adam the while  
Waiting desirous her return, had wove  
Of choicest flowers a garland, to adorn  
Her tresses.... Soon as he heard  
The fatal trespass done by Eve amazed,  
From his slack hand the garland wreathed for  
her  
Down dropt, and all the faded roses shed.  
Speechless he stood and pale, till thus at  
length,  
First to himself he inward silence broke:

"O fairest of creation, last and best  
Of all God's works, creature in whom  
excelled  
Whatever came to sight or thought be formed,  
Holy, divine, good, amiable, or sweet,  
How art thou lost! how on a sudden lost!

Some cursed fraud  
Of enemy hath beguiled thee, yet unknown,  
And me with thee hath ruined; for with thee  
Certain my resolution is to die.  
How can I live without thee? How forego  
Thy sweet converse, and love so dearly  
joined,  
To live again in these wild words forlorn?."

Then, turning to Eve, he tries to comfort her.

"Perhaps thou shalt not die ...  
Nor can I think that God, Creator wise,  
Though threatening, will in earnest so destroy  
Us, His prime creatures, dignified so high,  
Set over all his works....  
However, I with thee have fixed my lot,  
Certain to undergo like doom. If death  
Consort with thee, death is to me as life.

Our state cannot be severed; we are one."  
So Adam; and thus Eve to him replied:  
"O glorious trial of exceeding love,  
Illustrious evidence, example high!"  
So saying she embraced him, and for joy  
Tenderly wept, much won that he his love  
Had so ennobled as of choice to incur  
Divine displeasure for her sake, or death.  
In recompense ...  
She gave him of that fair enticing fruit  
With liberal hand. He scrupled not to eat  
Against his better knowledge, not deceived,  
But fondly overcome with female charm.

The effect of the fruit on them is first to excite lust with guilty shame following, and realising this after "the exhilarating vapour bland" had spent its force, Adam found utterance for his remorse.

"O Eve, in evil hour thou didst give ear  
To that false Worm....  
... How shall I behold the face

Henceforth of God or Angel, erst with joy  
And rapture so oft beheld? Those Heavenly  
shapes  
Will dazzle now this earthly with their blaze  
Insufferably bright. Oh, might I here  
In solitude live savage, in some glade  
Obscured, where highest winds, impenetrable  
To star or sunlight, spread their umbrage  
broad,  
And brown as evening! Cover me, ye pines!  
Ye cedars, with innumerable boughs  
Hide me, where I may never see them more!"

Then they cower in the woods, and clothe themselves with leaves.

Covered, but not at rest or ease of mind  
They sat them down to weep.

But passion also took possession of them, and they began to taunt each other with recriminations. Adam, with estranged look, exclaimed:

"Would thou hadst hearkened to my words,  
and stayed  
With me, as I besought thee, when that  
strange  
Desire of wandering, this unhappy morn,  
I know not whence possessed thee! We had  
then  
Remained still happy!"

Eve retorts:

"Hadst thou been firm and fixed in thy  
dissent,  
Neither had I transgressed, nor thou with  
me."

Then Adam:

"What could I more?  
I warned thee, I admonished thee, foretold  
The danger, and the lurking enemy  
That lay in wait; beyond this had been force."

Thus they in mutual accusation spent  
The fruitless hours, but neither self-  
condemning;  
And of their vain contest appeared no end.

## ***X.—Sin and Death Triumph***

The Angels left on guard now slowly return from Paradise to Heaven to report their failure, but are reminded by God that it was ordained; and the Son is sent down to judge the guilty pair, after hearing their excuses, and to punish them with the curses of toil and death. Meantime Sin and Death "snuff the smell of mortal change" on Earth, and leaving Hell-gate "belching outrageous flame," erect a broad road from Hell to Earth through Chaos, and as they come in sight of the World meet Satan

steering his way back as an angel, "between the Centaur and the Scorpion." He makes Sin and Death his plenipotentiaries on Earth, adjuring them first to make man their thrall, and lastly kill; and as they pass to the evil work "the blasted stars look wan." The return to Hell is received with loud acclaim, which comes in the form of a hiss, and Satan and all his hosts are turned into grovelling snakes. Adam, now in his repentance, is sternly resentful against Eve, who becomes submissive, and both pass from remorse to "sorrow unfeigned and humiliation meek.'

## *XI.—Repentance and the Doom*

The repentance of the pair is accepted by God, who sends down the Archangel Michael, with a cohort of cherubim, to announce that death will not come until time has been given for repentance, but Paradise can no longer be their home. Whereupon Eve laments.

"O unexpected stroke, worse than of Death!  
Must I thus leave thee, Paradise? Thus leave  
Thee, native soil? These happy walks and  
shades,  
Fit haunt of gods, where I had hoped to spend  
Quiet, though sad, the respite of that day  
That must be mortal to us both? O flowers,  
That never will in any other climate grow,  
My early visitation and my last  
At even, which I tied up with tender hand  
From the first opening bud and gave ye  
names,  
Who now shall rear ye to the Sun, or rank  
Your tribes, and water from the ambrosial  
fount?  
... How shall we breathe in other air  
Less pure, accustomed to immortal fruits?"

The Angel reminds her:

"Thy going is not lonely; with thee goes  
Thy husband; him to follow thou art bound.  
Where he abides think there thy native soil."

Michael then ascending a hill with Adam shows him a vision of the world's history, while Eve sleeps.

## *XII.—Paradise Behind, the World Before*

The history is continued, with its promise of redemption, until Adam exclaims:

"Full of doubt I stand,  
Whether I should repent me now of sin  
By me done and occasioned, or rejoice  
Much more that much more good thereof  
shall spring—  
To God more glory, more good-will to men."

Eve awakens from propitious dreams, it having been shown to her that—

"Though all by me is lost,  
Such favour I unworthy am vouchsafed.  
By me the Promised Seed shall all restore."

The time, however, has come when they must leave. A flaming sword, "fierce as a comet," advances towards them before the bright array of cherubim.

Whereat  
In either hand the hastening angel caught  
Our lingering parents, and to the eastern gate  
Led them direct, and down the cliff so fast  
To the subjected plain—then disappeared.  
They, looking back, all the eastern side  
beheld  
Of Paradise, so late their happy seat,  
Waved over by that flaming brand, the gate  
With dreadful forces thronged and fiery arms.  
Some natural tears they dropped, but wiped  
them soon;  
The world was all before them, where to  
choose  
Their place of rest, and Providence their  
guide.  
They, hand in hand, with wandering steps and  
slow,  
Through Eden took their solitary way.



## FOOTNOTES:

[AA] John Milton, the peer of Dante as one of the world's master-poets, was born in Bread Street, London, on December 9, 1608, the son of a well-to-do scrivener. Educated at St. Paul's School and at Cambridge, he devoted himself from the first to poetry. The "Ode on the Nativity" was written when the poet was twenty-one. His productions till his thirtieth year were nearly all of a classical caste—"L'Allegro," "Il Penseroso," "Comus," "Lycidas." Returning from Continental travels in 1639, Milton became enmeshed in politics, and so continued for twenty years, during which time he wrote much polemical prose, including his "Areopagitica" (see Vol. XX, p. 257) and his "Tractate on Education." After a spell of teaching and pamphleteering, he served as Latin secretary to Oliver Cromwell, and was stricken with blindness at the age of forty-four. Though poor by loss of office after the Restoration, he was never in poverty. He died on November 8, 1674. "Paradise Lost," planned in his youth, was actually begun in 1658, finished in 1665, and published in 1667. The price arranged was £5 down and £5 more on each of three editions, of which Milton received £10, and his widow £8, the rest being unpaid. In English literature "Paradise Lost" stands alone as an effort of sheer imagination, and its literary genius is as haunting as its conception is stupendous.

---

# Paradise Regained<sup>[AB]</sup>

## *I.—The Forty Days*

I, who erewhile the happy Garden sung  
By one man's disobedience lost, now sing  
Recovered Paradise to all mankind,  
By one man's firm obedience fully tried  
Through all temptation, and the Tempter  
foiled  
In all his wiles, defeated and repulsed,  
And Eden raised in the waste Wilderness.

Having thus introduced his subject, the poet describes, on Scriptural lines, the baptism of John, seen by Satan, "when roving still about the world." The Fiend then "flies to his place" and "summons all his mighty peers"—a gloomy consistory—warning them that the time seems approaching when they "must bide the stroke of that long-threatened wound," when "the woman's Seed shall bruise the serpent's head." They agree that Satan shall return to earth and act as Tempter. In Heaven, meantime, God tells the assembly of angels, addressing Gabriel, that He will expose His Son to Satan, in order that the Son may "show him worthy of His birth divine and high prediction." And the angelic choir sings "Victory and triumph to the Son of God."

So they in Heaven their odes and vigils tuned.  
Meanwhile the Son of God ...

Musing and much revolving in his breast  
How best the mighty work he might begin  
Of Saviour to mankind, and which way first  
Publish his God-like office now mature,  
One day forth walked alone, the Spirit  
leading,  
And his deep thoughts, the better to converse  
With solitude, till, far from track of men,  
Thought following thought, and step by step  
led on,

He entered now the bordering desert wild.

Christ then, in meditation, tells reminiscently the story of His life.

Full forty days He passed ...  
Nor tasted human food, nor hunger felt,  
Till those days ended; hungered then at last  
Among wild beasts. They at His sight grew  
mild,  
Nor sleeping Him nor waking harmed; His  
walk  
The fiery serpent fled and noxious worm;  
The lion and fierce tiger glared aloof.  
But now an aged man in rural weeds,  
Following, as seemed, the quest of some stray  
ewe,  
Or withered sticks to gather, which might  
serve  
Against a winter's day, when winds blow  
keen,  
To warm him wet returned from field at eve,  
He saw approach.

This is Satan, and, entering into conversation adjures the Son—

"If thou be the Son of God, command  
That out of these hard stones be made Thee  
bread,  
So shalt Thou save Thyself, and us relieve  
With food, whereof we wretched seldom  
taste."

Christ at once discerns who His tempter is and rebuffs him; and the Fiend, "now undisguised," goes on to narrate his own history, arguing that he is not a foe to mankind.

"They to me  
Never did wrong or violence. By them  
I lost not what I lost; rather by them

I gained what I have gained, and with them  
dwell  
Co-partner in these regions of the world."

Christ, replying, attributes to Satan the evils of Idolatry and the crafty oracles of heathendom, which have taken the place of the "inward oracle in pious hearts," whereupon Satan, "bowing low his gray dissimulation, disappeared."

## *II.—The Temptation of the Body*

Meanwhile the disciples were gathered "close in a cottage low," wondering where Christ could be, and Mary with troubled thoughts, rehearsed the story of His early life. Satan, returning to the council of his fellow fiends, in "the middle region of thick air," reports his failure, and that he has found in the Tempted "amplitude of mind to greatest deeds." Belial advises that the temptation should be continued by women "expert in amorous arts," but Satan rejects the plan, and reminds Belial—

"Among the sons of men  
How many have with a smile made small  
account  
Of beauty and her lures. For beauty stands  
In the admiration only of weak minds  
Led captive: cease to admire and all her  
plumes  
Fall flat.... We must try  
His constancy with such as have more show  
Of worth, of honour, glory, and popular  
praise."

With this aim Satan again betakes himself to the desert, where Christ, now hungry, sleeps and dreams of food.

And now the herald lark  
Left his ground-nest, high towering to descry  
The morn's approach, and greet her with his  
song,  
As lightly from his grassy couch uprose  
Our Saviour, and found all was but a dream;  
Fasting he went to sleep and fasting waked.

Up to a hill anon his steps he reared,  
And in a bottom saw a pleasant grove,  
With chant of tuneful birds resounding loud.  
Thither He bent His way ...  
When suddenly a man before Him stood,  
Not rustic as before, but seemlier clad,  
As one in city or court or palace bred.

Here Satan again tempts Him with a spread of savoury food, which Jesus dismisses with the words:

"Thy pompous delicacies I contemn,  
And count thy specious gifts no gifts, but  
guiles!"

The book closes with the offer of riches, which are rejected as "the toil of fools."

### *III.—The Temptation of Glory*

Finding his weak "arguing and fallacious drift" ineffectual, Satan next appeals to ambition and suggests conquest; but is reminded that conquerors

"Rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
Made captive, yet deserving freedom more  
Than those their conquerors, who leave  
behind  
Nothing but ruin wheresoe'r they rove,  
And all the flourishing works of peace  
destroy;  
Then swell with pride and must be titled  
gods.  
But if there be in glory aught of good,  
It may by means far different be attained;  
Without ambition, war, or violence,  
By deeds of peace, by wisdom eminent,  
By patience, temperance."

But Satan, sardonically, argues that God expects glory, nay, exacts it from all, good and bad alike. To which Christ replies:

"Not glory as prime end,  
But to show forth his goodness, and impart  
His good communicable to every soul  
Freely; of whom what could He less expect  
Than glory and benediction—that is thanks—  
The slightest, easiest, readiest recompense  
From them who could return him nothing  
else."

But, argues Satan, it is the throne of David to which the Messiah is ordained; why not begin that reign? Hitherto Christ has scarcely seen the Galilean towns, but He shall "quit these rudiments" and survey "the monarchies of the earth, their pomp and state." And thereupon he carries Him to a mountain whence He can see "Assyria and her empire's ancient bounds," and there suggests the deliverance of the Ten Tribes.

"Thou on the Throne of David in full glory,  
From Egypt to Euphrates and beyond  
Shalt reign, and Rome or Cæsar not need  
fear."

The answer is that these things must be left to God's "due time and providence."

#### *IV.—The Last Temptation*

The Tempter now brings the Saviour round to the western side of the mountain, and there Rome

An imperial city stood;  
With towers and temples proudly elevate  
On seven hills, with palaces adorned,  
Porches and theatres, baths, aqueducts,  
Statues and trophies, and triumphal arcs,  
Gardens and groves. Queen of the Earth,  
So far renowned, and with the spoils enriched  
Of nations.

But this "grandeur and majestic show of luxury" has no effect on Christ, who says:

"Know, when my season comes to sit  
On David's throne, it shall be like a tree  
Spreading and overshadowing all the earth;  
Or as a stone that shall to pieces dash  
All monarchies besides throughout the world,  
And of my Kingdom there shall be no end."

The offer of the kingdoms of the world incurs the stern rebuke:

"Get thee behind me! Plain thou now  
appear'st  
That Evil One, Satan, for ever damned."

Still the Fiend is not utterly abashed, but, arguing that "the childhood shows the man as morning shows the day," and that Christ's empire is one of mind, he, as a last temptation from the "specular mount," shows Athens.

"There thou shalt hear and learn the secret  
power  
Of harmony, in tones and numbers hit  
By voice or hand, and various-measured  
verse.  
To sage philosophy next lend thine ear,  
From Heaven descended to the low-roofed  
house  
Of Socrates."

Christ replies that whoever seeks true wisdom in the philosophies, moralities and conjectures of men finds her not, and that the poetry of Greece will not compare with "Hebrew songs and harps." It is the prophets who teach most plainly

"What makes a nation happy, and keeps it so;  
What ruins kingdoms, and lays cities flat?"

Finding all these temptations futile, Satan explodes:

"Since neither wealth nor honour, arms nor  
arts,  
Kingdom nor empire pleases thee, nor aught  
By me proposed in life contemplative

Or active, tended on by glory or fame;  
What dost thou in this world? The wilderness  
For thee is fittest place. I found thee there  
And thither will return thee."

So he transports the passive Saviour back to his homeless solitude.

Our Saviour, meek, and with untroubled  
mind,  
Hungry and cold betook himself to rest.  
The Tempter watched, and soon with ugly  
dreams  
Disturbed his sleep. And either tropic now  
'Gan thunder, and both ends of Heaven; the  
clouds  
From many a rift abortive poured  
Fierce rain with lightning mixed; water with  
fire  
In ruin reconciled. Ill wast Thou shrouded  
then,  
O patient Son of God! Yet only stood'st  
Unshaken! Nor yet staid the terror there.

Infernal ghosts of hellish furies round  
Environed thee; some howled, some yelled,  
some shrieked,  
Some bent at thee their fiery darts, while thou  
Sat'st unappalled in calm and sinless peace.  
Thus passed the night so foul, till morning  
fair  
Came forth with pilgrim steps, in amice grey,  
Who with her radiant finger stilled the roar  
Of thunder, chased the clouds, and laid the  
winds,  
And grisly spectres, which the Fiend had  
raised  
To tempt the Son of God with terrors dire.  
And now the sun with more effectual beams

Had cheered the face of earth, and dried the  
wet  
From drooping plant, or drooping tree; the  
birds,  
Who all things now beheld more fresh and  
green,  
After a night of storm so ruinous,  
Cleared up their choicest notes in bush and  
spray,  
To 'gratulate the sweet return of morn.

Satan, in anger, begins the last temptation.

Feigning to doubt whether the Saviour is the Son of God, he snatches him up and carries him to where, in

Fair Jerusalem, the Holy City lifted high her  
towers  
And higher yet the glorious Temple reared  
Her pile; far off appearing like a mount  
Of alabaster, topp'd with golden spires:  
There on the highest pinnacle he set  
The Son of God, and added thus in scorn:  
"There stand if thou wilt stand; to stand  
upright will task thy skill."  
"Tempt not the Lord thy God," He said, and  
stood.  
But Satan, smitten with amazement, fell,  
And to his crew, that sat consulting, brought  
Ruin, and desperation, and dismay.  
So Satan fell; and straight a fiery globe,  
Of angels, on full sail of wing flew nigh,  
Who on their plummy vans received Him soft,  
From His uneasy station, and upbore  
As on a floating couch through the blithe air;  
Then in a flowery valley set Him down  
On a green bank, and set before Him, spread,  
A table of celestial food....  
....And as He fed, angelic quires

Sang Heavenly anthems of His victory  
Over temptation and the Tempter proud.

"Now Thou hast avenged  
Supplanted Adam, and, by vanquishing  
Temptation, hast regained lost Paradise."

Thus they, the Son of God, our Saviour meek,  
Sung victor, and from Heavenly feast  
refreshed,  
Brought on His way with joy. He,  
unobserved,  
Home to His mother's house private returned.

#### FOOTNOTES:

[[AB](#)] The origin of "Paradise Regained" has been told authentically. It was suggested in 1665 by Ellwood the Quaker, who sometimes acted as Milton's amanuensis, and it was finished and shown to Ellwood in 1666, though not published till 1671. Neither in majesty of conception or in charm of style can it compare with "Paradise Lost," to which it is, as has been said, a codicil and not a sequel. The Temptation, the reader feels, was but an incident in the life of Christ and in the drama of the "ways of God to man," which "Paradise Lost" introduced with such stupendous imaginative power. Much of the poem is but a somewhat ambling paraphrase and expansion of Scriptural narratives; but there are passages where Milton resumes his perfect mastery of poetic form, under the inspiration that places him among the selectest band of immortal singers.

---

# Samson Agonistes<sup>[AC]</sup>

## *Persons in the Drama*

SAMSON

MANOA, *the father of Samson*

DALILA, *his wife*

HURAPHA, *of Gath*

PUBLIC OFFICER

MESSENGER

*Chorus of Danites*

*The scene is placed before the prison in Gaza.*

SAMSON: A little onward send thy guiding hand  
To these dark steps, a little further on;  
For yonder bank hath choice of sun or shade.  
There I am wont to sit, when any chance  
Relieves me from my task of servile toil.  
Daily in the common prison else enjoined me,  
Where I, a prisoner chained, scarce freely draw  
The air, imprisoned also, close and damp,  
Unwholesome draught. But here I feel amends  
The breath of Heaven fresh blowing, pure and sweet,  
With day-spring born; here leave me to respire.  
This day a solemn feast the people hold  
To Dagon, their sea-idol, and forbid  
Laborious works. Hence, with leave  
Retiring from the popular noise, I seek  
This unfrequented place to find some ease—  
Oh, wherefore was my birth from Heaven foretold  
Twice by an angel, if I must die

Betrayed, captive, and both my eyes put out,  
Made of my enemies the scorn and gaze?

O worse than chains,  
Dungeon, or beggary, or decrepit age!  
Light, the prime work of God, to me is extinct,  
And all her various objects of delight  
Annulled, which might in part my grief have eased.  
O dark, dark, dark, amid the blaze of noon,  
Irrevocably dark, total eclipse  
Without all hope of day!  
O first created beam, and thou great Word,  
"Let there be light, and light was over all,"  
Why am I thus bereaved thy prime decree?  
The Sun to me is dark  
And silent as the Moon,  
When she deserts the night,  
Hid in her vacant inter-lunar cave.

CHORUS: This, this is he; softly a while;  
Let us not break in upon him.  
O change beyond report, thought, or belief!  
See how he lies at random, carelessly diffused,  
With languished head unpropt,  
As one past hope, abandoned.  
Which shall I fast bewail—  
Thy bondage or lost sight,  
Prison within prison  
Inseparably dark?  
Thou art become (O worst imprisonment!)  
The dungeon of thyself;  
To lowest pitch of abject fortune thou are fallen.

SAMSON: I hear the sound of words; their sense the air  
Dissolves unjointed ere it reach my ear.

CHORUS: He speaks; let us draw nigh. Matchless in  
might,  
The glory late of Israel, now the grief!

We come, thy friends and neighbours not unknown,  
From Eshtaol and Zora's fruitful vale,  
To visit or bewail thee.

SAMSON: Your coming, friends, revives me.

Tell me, friends,  
Am I not sung and proverb'd for a fool  
In every street?

CHORUS: Wisest men  
Have erred, and by bad women been deceived;  
And shall again, pretend they ne'er so wise.  
In seeking just occasion to provoke  
The Philistine, thy country's enemy,  
Thou never wast remiss, I bear thee witness.  
But see! here comes thy reverend sire,  
With careful step, locks white as down,  
OLD MANOA: advise  
Forthwith how thou ought'st to receive him.

MANOA: Brethren and men of Dan, if old respect,  
As I suppose, towards your once gloried friend,  
My son, now captive, hither hath informed  
Your younger feet, while mine, cast back with age,  
Came lagging after, say if he be here.

CHORUS: As signal now in low dejected state  
As erst in highest, behold him where he lies.

MANOA: O miserable change! Is this the man,  
That invincible Samson, far renowned,  
The dread of Israel's foes?

SAMSON: Nothing of all these evils hath befallen me  
But justly.

MANOA: True; but thou bear'st  
Enough, and more, the burden of that fault;  
Bitterly hast thou paid, and still art paying,  
That rigid score. A worse thing yet remains;

This day the Philistines a popular feast  
Here celebrate in Gaza, and proclaim  
Great pomp, and sacrifice, and praises loud,  
To Dagon, as their god who hath delivered  
Thee, Samson, bound and blind, into their hands.

SAMSON: Father, I do acknowledge and confess  
That I this honour, I this pomp, have brought  
To Dagon, and advanced his praises high  
Among the heathen round. The contest is now  
'Twixt God and Dagon. Dagon hath presumed,  
Me overthrown, to enter lists with God.  
Dagon must stoop, and shall ere long receive  
Such a discomfit as shall quite despoil him  
Of all these boasted trophies won on me,  
And with confusion blank his worshippers.

MANOA: But for thee what shall be done?  
Thou must not in the meanwhile, here forgot,  
Lie in this miserable, loathsome plight,  
Neglected. I already have made way  
To some Philistine lords, with whom to treat  
About thy ransom.

SAMSON: Spare that proposal, father; let me here  
As I deserve, pay on my punishment,  
And expiate, if possible, my crime.

MANOA: Be penitent, and for thy fault contrite;  
But act not in thy own affliction, son.  
Repent the sin; but if the punishment  
Thou canst avoid, self-preservation bids.

SAMSON: Nature within me seems  
In all her functions weary of herself;  
My race of glory run, and race of shame,  
And I shall shortly be with them that rest

MANOA: I, however,  
Must not omit a father's timely care

To prosecute the means of thy deliverance  
By ransom, or how else.

CHORUS: But who is this? what thing of sea or land—  
Female of sex it seems—  
That, so bedecked, ornate, and gay,  
Comes this way sailing?  
Some rich Philistian matron she may seem;  
And now at nearer view no other certain  
Than Dalila, thy wife.

SAMSON: My wife! My traitress! Let her not come  
near me.

DALILA: With doubtful feet and wavering resolution  
I came, still dreading thy displeasure, Samson.

SAMSON: Out, out, hyena! These are thy wonted arts,  
And arts of every woman false like thee—  
To break all faith, all vows, deceive, betray;  
Then, as repentant, to submit, beseech  
A reconciliation, move with feigned remorse.

DALILA: Let me obtain forgiveness of thee, Samson,  
I to the lords will intercede, not doubting  
Their favourable ear, that I may fetch thee  
From forth this loathsome prison-house, to abide  
With me, where my redoubled love and care,  
With nursing diligence, to me glad office,  
May ever tend about thee to old age.

SAMSON: No, no; of my condition take no care;  
It fits not; thou and I long since are twain;  
Nor think me so unwary or accursed  
To bring my feet again into the snare  
Where once I have been caught.

DALILA: Let me approach at least, and touch thy  
hand.

SAMSON: Not for thy life, lest fierce remembrance  
wake

My sudden rage to tear thee joint by joint.  
At distance I forgive thee; go with that;  
Bewail thy falsehood, and the pious works  
It hath brought forth to make thee memorable  
Among illustrious women, faithful wives.

DALILA: I see thou art implacable, more deaf  
To prayers than winds and seas. Yet winds to seas  
Are reconciled at length, and sea to shore.  
My name, perhaps, among the circumcised  
In Dan, in Judah, and the bordering tribes  
To all posterity may stand defamed.  
But in my country, where I most desire,  
I shall be named among the famousest  
Of women, sung at solemn festivals,  
Living and dead recorded, who to save  
Her country from a fierce destroyer, chose  
Above the faith of wedlock bands; my tomb  
With odours visited and annual flowers.

CHORUS: She's gone—a manifest serpent by her sting  
—  
Discovered in the end, till now concealed.  
This idol's day hath been to thee no day of rest,  
Labouring thy mind  
More than the working day thy hands.  
And yet, perhaps, more trouble is behind;  
For I descry this way  
Some other tending; in his hand  
A sceptre or quaint staff he bears,  
A public officer, and now at hand.  
His message will be short and voluble.

OFFICER: Hebrews, the prisoner Samson here I seek.

CHORUS: His manacles remark him; there he sits.

OFFICER: Samson, to thee our lords thus bid me say.  
This day to Dagon is a solemn feast,  
With sacrifices, triumph, pomp, and games;

Thy strength they know surpassing human rate,  
And now some public proof thereof require  
To honour this great feast and great assembly.  
Rise, therefore, with all speed, and come along,  
Where I will see thee heartened and fresh clad,  
To appear as fit before the illustrious lords.

SAMSON: Thou know'st I am an Hebrew; therefore tell  
them  
Our law forbids at their religious rites  
My presence; for that cause I cannot come.

OFFICER: This answer, be assured will not content  
them.

SAMSON: Return the way thou camest;  
I will not come.

OFFICER: Regard thyself; this will offend them highly.

SAMSON: Can they think me so broken, so debased  
With corporal servitude, that my mind ever  
Will condescend to such absurd commands?  
Joined with extreme contempt! I will not come.

OFFICER: I am sorry what this stoutness will produce.

CHORUS: He's gone, and who knows how he may  
report  
Thy words by adding fuel to the flames.  
Expect another message more imperious.

SAMSON: Shall I abuse this consecrated gift  
Of strength, again returning with my hair,  
After my great transgression!—so requite  
Favour renewed, and add a greater sin  
By prostituting holy things to idols.

CHORUS: Where the heart joins not, outward acts  
defile not.

SAMSON: Be of good courage; I begin to feel  
Some rousing motions in me, which dispose

To something extraordinary my thoughts.  
I with this messenger will go along—  
If there be aught of presage in the mind,  
This day will be remarkable in my life  
By some great act, or of my days the last.

CHORUS: In time thou hast resolved: the man returns.

OFFICER: Samson, this second message from our  
lords  
To thee I am bid say: Art thou our slave,  
And dar'st thou, at our sending and command,  
Dispute thy coming? Come without delay;  
Or we shall find such engines to assail  
And hamper thee, as thou shalt come of force,  
Though thou wert firmlier fastened than a rock.

SAMSON: Because they shall not trail me through their  
streets  
Like a wild beast, I am content to go.

OFFICER: I praise thy resolution. Doff these links:  
By this compliance thou wilt win the lords  
To favour, and perhaps to set thee free.

SAMSON: Brethren, farewell. Your company along  
I will not wish, lest it perhaps offend them  
To see me girt with friends.  
Happen what may, of me expect to hear  
Nothing dishonourable, impure, unworthy  
Our God, our Law, my nation, or myself.

CHORUS: Go, and the Holy One  
Of Israel be thy guide.

MANOA: Peace with you, brethren! My inducement  
hither  
Was not at present here to find my son.  
By order of the lords new parted hence  
To come and play before them at their feast.  
I heard all as I came; I had no will,

Lest I should see him forced to things unseemly.  
But that which moved my coming now was chiefly  
To give ye part with me what hope I have  
With good success to work his liberty.

CHORUS: That hope would much rejoice us to partake  
With thee.

MANOA: What noise or shout was that? It tore the sky.

CHORUS: Doubtless the people shouting to behold  
Their once great dread, captive and blind before them,  
Or at some proof of strength, before them shown.

MANOA: His ransom, if my whole inheritance  
May compass it, shall willingly be paid  
And numbered down. Much rather I shall choose  
To live the poorest in my tribe, than richest,  
And he in that calamitous prison left.  
No, I am fixed not to part hence without him.  
For his redemption all my patrimony,  
If need be, I am ready to forego  
And quit. Not wanting him, I shall want nothing.  
It shall be my delight to tend his eyes,  
And view him sitting in his house, ennobled  
With all those high exploits by him achieved.

CHORUS: Thy hopes are not ill founded, nor seem  
vain,  
Of his delivery.

MANOA: I know your friendly minds, and—O what  
noise!  
Mercy of Heaven! What hideous noise was that  
Horribly loud, unlike the former shout.

CHORUS: Noise call you it, or universal groan,  
As if the whole inhabitation perished?  
Blood, death, and deathful deeds, are in that noise,  
Ruin, destruction at the utmost point.

MANOA: Of ruin indeed methought I heard the noise.  
Oh! it continues; the have slain my son.

CHORUS: Thy son is rather slaying them; that outcry  
From slaughter of one foe could not ascend.

MANOA: Some dismal accident it needs must be.  
What shall we do—stay here, or run and see?

CHORUS: Best keep together here, lest, running  
thither,  
We unawares run into danger's mouth.  
This evil on the Philistines is fallen:  
From whom could else a general cry be heard?

MANOA: A little stay will bring some notice hither.

CHORUS: I see one hither speeding—  
An Hebrew, as I guess, and of our tribe.

MESSENGER: O, whither shall I run, or which way fly?  
The sight of this so horrid spectacle,  
Which erst my eyes beheld, and yet behold?

MANOA: The accident was loud, and here before thee  
With rueful cry; yet what it was we know not.  
Tell us the sum, the circumstance defer.

MESSENGER: Gaza yet stands; but all her sons are  
fallen,  
All in a moment overwhelmed and fallen.

MANOA: Sad! but thou know'st to Israelites not  
saddest  
The desolation of a hostile city.

MESSENGER: Feed on that first; there may in grief be  
surfeit.

MANOA: Relate by whom.

MESSENGER: By Samson.

MANOA: That still lessens  
The sorrow and converts it nigh to joy.

MESSENGER: Ah! Manoa, I refrain too suddenly  
To utter what will come at last too soon,  
Lest evil tidings, with too rude eruption  
Hitting thy aged ear, should pierce too deep.

MANOA: Suspense in news is torture; speak them out.

MESSENGER: Then take the worst in brief—Samson is  
dead.

MANOA: The worst indeed! O, all my hope's defeated  
To free him hence! but Death, who sets all free,  
Hath paid his ransom now and full discharge.  
How died he?—death to life is crown or shame.  
All by him fell, thou say'st; by whom fell he?  
What glorious hand gave Samson his death's wound?

MESSENGER: Unwounded of his enemies he fell.

MANOA: Wearied with slaughter, then, or how?  
Explain.

MESSENGER: By his own hands.

MANOA: Self-violence! What cause  
Brought him so soon at variance with himself  
Among his foes?

MESSENGER: Inevitable cause—  
At once both to destroy and be destroyed.  
The edifice, where all were met to see him,  
Upon their heads and on his own he pulled.  
The building was a spacious theatre,  
Half round on two main pillars vaulted high,  
With seats where all the lords, and each degree  
Of sort, might sit in order to behold.

Immediately  
Was Samson as a public servant brought,

In their state livery clad.  
At sight of him the people with a shout  
Rifted the air, clamoring their god with praise,  
Who had made their dreadful enemy their thrall.  
He patient, but undaunted, where they led him,  
Came to the place; and what was set before him,  
Which without help of eye might be assayed,  
To heave, pull, draw, or break, he still performed  
All with incredible, stupendous force,  
None daring to appear antagonist  
At length, for intermission sake, they led him  
Between the pillars; he his guide requested,  
As over-tired, to let him lean awhile  
With both his arms on those two massy pillars,  
That to the arched roof gave main support.  
He unsuspecting led him; which when Samson  
Felt in his arms, with head awhile inclined,  
And eyes fast fixed, he stood, as one who prayed,  
Or some great matter in his mind revolved.  
At last, with head erect, thus cried aloud,  
"Hitherto, lords, what your commands imposed  
I have performed, as reason was, obeying,  
Not without wonder or delight beheld;  
Now, of my own accord, such other trial  
I mean to show you of my strength yet greater  
As with amaze shall strike all who behold."  
This uttered, straightening all his nerves, he bowed.  
As with the force of winds and waters pent  
When mountains tremble, those two massy pillars  
With horrible convulsions to and fro  
He tugged, he shook, till down they came, and drew  
The whole roof after them with burst of thunder  
Upon the heads of all who sat beneath,  
Lords, ladies, captains, counsellors, or priests,  
Their choice nobility and flower, not only  
Of this, but each Philistian city round,  
Met from all parts to solemnise this feast.

Samson, with these immixed, inevitably  
Pulled down the same destruction on himself;  
The vulgar only scaped, who stood without.

MANOA: Samson hath quit himself  
Like Samson, and heroically hath finished  
A life heroic.  
Nothing is here for tears, nothing to wail  
Or knock the breast; no weakness, no contempt,  
Dispraise or blame; nothing but well and fair,  
And what may quiet us in a death so noble.  
Let us go find the body where it lies.

I, with what speed the while  
Will send for all my kindred, all my friends,  
To fetch him hence, and solemnly attend,  
With silent obsequy and funeral train,  
Home to his father's house. There will I build him  
A monument, and plant it round with shade  
Of laurel evergreen and branching palm,  
With all his trophies hung, and acts enrolled  
In copious legend, or sweet lyric song.  
Thither shall all the valiant youth resort,  
And from his memory inflame their breasts  
To matchless valour and adventures high.

## FOOTNOTES:

[AC] "Samson Agonistes" (that is, "Samson the Athlete, or Wrestler"), Milton's tragedy, cast in a classical mould, was composed after "Paradise Regained" was written, and after "Paradise Lost" was published. It was issued in 1671. No reader with knowledge can avoid associating the poem in a personal way with Milton, who, like Samson, was blind, living in the midst of enemies, and to some extent deserted; and, like him too, did not lose heart on behalf of the life's cause which, unlike Samson, he had never betrayed. As becomes a drama, it has more vigorously sustained movement than any of Milton's works. The familiar story is skilfully developed and relieved, and the formality of the style does not detract from the pity and beauty, while it adds to the dignity of the work.



**MOLIÈRE**<sup>[AD]</sup>

---

# The Doctor in Spite of Himself

## *Persons in the Play*

SGANARELLE

MARTINE, *Sganarelle's wife*

LUCAS

JACQUELINE, *Lucas's wife, and nurse at M. Géronte's*

GÉRONTE

LUCINDE, *Géronte's daughter*

LÉANDRE, *her lover*

VALÈRE, *Géronte's attendant*

## ACT I

Just when the day has been fixed for the marriage of Lucinde, daughter of M. Géronte, she suddenly becomes dumb, and no doctors are found skillful enough to cure her. One day Valère, M. Géronte's attendant, and Lucas, the nurse, are scouring the country in search of someone able to restore their young mistress's speech, when they fell in with Martine, the wife of Sganarelle, a bibulous faggot-binder. Sganarelle, who has served a famous doctor for ten years, has just been beating his wife, and she, in revenge, hearing the kind of person they are looking for, strongly recommends her husband to them as an eccentric doctor who has performed wonderful and almost incredible cures, but who always disclaims his profession, and will never practice it until he has been well cudgelled. Lucas and Valère accordingly go in quest of Sganarelle, and, having found him, express their desire of availing themselves of his services as doctor. At first the faggot-binder vehemently denies that he is a doctor, but at last—thanks to the use of the persuasion recommended by Martine—he confesses to a knowledge of the physician's art, is induced to undertake the cure of Mlle. Lucinde, and, on being introduced at M. Géronte's house, gives proof of his eccentricity as a doctor by cudgelling the master and embracing the nurse.

[*Enter* LUCINDE, VALÈRE, GÉRONTE, LUCAS,  
SGANARELLE, *and* JACQUELINE.

SGANARELLE: Is this the patient?

GÉRONTE: Yes. I have but one daughter; I should feel inexpressible grief were she to die.

SGANARELLE: Don't let her do anything of the kind. She must not die without a doctor's prescription.

GÉRONTE: You have made her laugh, monsieur.

SGANARELLE: It is the best symptom in the world when the doctor makes his patient laugh. What sort of pain do you feel?

LUCINDE (*replies by signs, putting her hand to her mouth, to her head, and under her chin*): Ha, hi, ho, ha!

SGANARELLE (*imitating her*): Ha, hi, ho, ha! I don't understand you.

GÉRONTE: That is what her complaint is, monsieur. She became dumb, without our being able to find out the cause. It is this accident which has made us put off the marriage. The man she is going to marry wishes to wait till she gets better.

SGANARELLE: Who is the fool that does not want his wife to be dumb? Would to heaven that mine had that complaint! I would take good care she did not recover her speech.

GÉRONTE: Well, monsieur, I beg of you to take all possible pains to cure her of this illness.

SGANARELLE (*to the patient*): Let me feel your pulse. This tells me your daughter is dumb.

GÉRONTE: Yes, monsieur, that is just what her illness is; you have found it out the very first time.

SGANARELLE: We great doctors, we know things at once. An ignorant person would have been puzzled, and would have said to you: "It is this, it is that." But I was right the very first time. I tell you your daughter is dumb.

GÉRONTE: But I should be very pleased if you could tell me how this happened.

SGANARELLE: It is because she has lost her speech.

GÉRONTE: But, please, what was the cause of the loss of speech?

SGANARELLE: All our best authorities will tell you that it is an impediment in the action of her tongue.

GÉRONTE: But, nevertheless, let us have your opinion on this impediment in the action of her tongue.

SGANARELLE: I hold that this impediment in the action of her tongue is caused by certain humours, which among us learned men are called peccant humours. For as the vapours formed by the exhalations of the influences which arise in the region of complaints, coming—so to speak—to—Do you know Latin?

GÉRONTE: In no sort of way.

SGANARELLE (*rising in astonishment*): You don't know Latin?

GÉRONTE: No.

SGANARELLE (*assuming various amusing attitudes*): *Singulariter, nominativo hæc musa, "the muse," bonus, bona, bonum, Deus sanctus, estne oratio latenas? Quare? "Why?" Luia substantivo et adjectivum concordat in generi, numerum, et casus.*

GÉRONTE: Oh! Why did I not study?

JACQUELINE: What a clever man he is!

SGANARELLE: Thus these vapours of which I speak passing from the left side, where the liver is, to the right side where the heart is, it happens that the lungs, which we call in Latin *armyan*, having communication with the brain, which in Greek we name *nasmus*, by means of the *vena cava*, which we call in Hebrew *cubile*, in their way

meet the said vapours, which fill the ventricles of the omoplata; and as the said vapours—be sure you understand this argument, I beg you—and as these said vapours have a certain malignancy—listen carefully to this, I pray you.

GÉRONTE: Yes.

SGANARELLE: Are gifted with a certain malignancy which is caused—please pay attention——

GÉRONTE: I am doing so.

SGANARELLE: Which is caused by the acridity of the humour engendered in the concavity of the diaphragm, it happens that these vapours—*Ossabundus, nequezs, nequer, potarinum, quipsa milus*. That is just what makes your daughter dumb.

GÉRONTE: No one, doubtless, could argue better. There is but one thing that puzzles me. It seems to me that you place the heart and liver differently from where they are; the heart is on the left side, and the liver on the right.

SGANARELLE: Yes, that was so formerly; but we have changed all that, and nowadays we practise medicine by an entirely new method.

GÉRONTE: I did not know that. I must ask you to pardon my ignorance.

SGANARELLE: There is no harm done. You are not obliged to be as clever as we are.

GÉRONTE: Certainly not. But what do you think, monsieur, ought to be done for this complaint?

SGANARELLE: My advice is that she should be put to bed, and, for a remedy, you must see that she takes plenty of bread soaked in wine.

GÉRONTE: Why so, monsieur?

SGANARELLE: Because in bread and wine mixed together there is a sympathetic virtue which causes speech. Don't you know that they give nothing else to parrots, and that they learn to speak by being fed on this diet?

GÉRONTE: That is true. What a great man you are! Quick, bring plenty of bread and wine.

SGANARELLE: I shall come back at night to see how she is getting on.

GÉRONTE: Just wait a moment, please.

SGANARELLE: What do you want?

GÉRONTE: To give you your fee, monsieur.

SGANARELLE (*holding out his hand from under his gown, while G ronTE opens his purse*): I shall not take it, monsieur.

G RONTE: I beseech you.

SGANARELLE: You are jesting.

G RONTE: That is settled.

SGANARELLE: I will not.

G RONTE: What!

SGANARELLE: I don't practise for money.

G RONTE: I am sure you don't.

SGANARELLE (*after having taken the money*): Is it good weight?

G RONTE: Yes, monsieur.

SGANARELLE: I am not a mercenary doctor.

G RONTE: I know that.

SGANARELLE: Self-interest is not my motive.

G RONTE: I never for a moment thought it was.

[*Exit.*

## ACT II

Léandre, between whom and Lucinde a mutual attachment subsists, has an interview with Sganarelle, at which he implores the latter's assistance to obtain a meeting with his mistress, and tells him that her dumbness is a mere trick—a sham illness which she has feigned to free herself from a distasteful marriage into which her father wants to hurry her. In consideration of a purse of gold which Léandre gives him, Sganarelle introduces the young lover into M. Géronte's house as his apothecary, and when Léandre asks whether it is not necessary to know five or six long medical words with which to lard his conversation, ridicules the notion, and says that a medical dress is quite sufficient disguise. "I am resolved to stick to physic all my life," says Sganarelle. "I find that it is the best line of all; for whatever we do, right or wrong, we are paid, all the same. Blunders make no odds to us; we cut away the material we have to work with as we choose. A shoemaker, in making a pair of shoes, cannot spoil a scrap of leather without having to pay for it; but in this business we can spoil a man without its costing us a cent. The mistakes are never put down to our account; it is always the fault of the fellow who dies."

[*Enter* JACQUELINE, LUCINDE, GÉRONTE, LÉANDRE *and* SGANARELLE.

JACQUELINE: Here's your daughter, monsieur. She wishes to walk a bit.

SGANARELLE: It will do her good. Go to her, Mr. Apothecary, and feel her pulse, and I will consult with you presently about her malady. (*At this point he draws GÉRONTE to one side of the stage, puts one arm on his shoulders, places his hand under his chin, and makes him turn towards him, whenever GÉRONTE wants to see what is going on between his daughter and the apothecary, while he holds the following discourse with him to keep his attention:)* Monsieur, it is a great and subtle question among doctors whether women are easier to cure than men. I beg you please listen to this. Some say "no," some say "yes." I say both "yes" and "no"; for as the incongruity of the opaque humours which are found in the natural temperament of women causes the animal side always to struggle for mastery over the spiritual, we find that the inequality of their opinions

depends on the oblique motion of the circle of the moon;  
and as the sun——

LUCINDE: NO, I can never change my feelings.

GÉRONTE: Hark! My daughter speaks! O the great  
virtue of physic! How deeply am I indebted to you,  
monsieur, for this marvellous cure!

SGANARELLE (*walking about the stage, wiping his  
forehead*): It is a complaint that has given me much  
trouble.

LUCINDE: Yes, father, I have recovered my speech;  
but I have recovered it only to tell you that I will never  
have any other husband than Léandre.

GÉRONTE: But——

LUCINDE: Nothing will shake the resolution I have  
taken.

GÉRONTE: What——

LUCINDE: All your excellent reasons will be in vain.

GÉRONTE: If——

LUCINDE: All your talk will have no effect.

GÉRONTE: I——

LUCINDE: It is a subject on which I am quite  
determined.

GÉRONTE: But——

LUCINDE: No paternal power can force me to marry  
against my will.

GÉRONTE: I have——

LUCINDE: You can make every effort you like.

GÉRONTE: It——

LUCINDE: My heart cannot submit to such a tyranny.

GÉRONTE: There——

LUCINDE: And I will sooner throw myself into a convent than marry a man I don't love.

GÉRONTE: But——

LUCINDE (*speaking in deafening tone of voice*): It is no use. You waste your time. I will not do anything of the kind. I am resolved.

GÉRONTE: Ah! What a wildness of speech! I beg you, monsieur, to make her dumb again.

SGANARELLE: That is impossible. All that I can do for you is to make you deaf, if you like.

GÉRONTE: You shall marry Horace this very evening.

LUCINDE: I will sooner marry death.

SGANARELLE: Let me take this disease in hand. It is a complaint that has got hold of her, and I know the remedy to apply.

GÉRONTE: Is it possible that you can cure this mental malady also?

SGANARELLE: Yes; let me manage it. I have remedies for everything, and our apothecary is the man for this cure. (*He calls the apothecary, and speaks to him.*) You see that the passion she has for this Léandre is quite against the wishes of her father, and that it is necessary to find a prompt remedy for the evil, which will only become worse by delay. For my part, I see but one remedy, a dose of purgative flight suitably mixed with two drachms of matrimony in pills. Go and take a little turn in the garden with her to prepare the humours, while I talk here with her father; but, above all, lose no time. Apply the remedy at once—apply the specific remedy.

[*Exeunt* LÉANDRE *and* LUCINDE. *Enter* LUCAS *and* MARTINE.]

LUCAS: Your daughter has run away with Léandre. He was the apothecary, and this is the doctor who has performed the operation.

GÉRONTE: Quick, fetch the police, and prevent him from going off! Oh, traitor, I will have you punished by law.

LUCAS: You shall hang for this, doctor! Don't stir a step from here!

[*Re-enter LÉANDRE and LUCINDE.*]

LÉANDRE: Monsieur, I appear before you as Léandre, and to restore Lucinde to your authority. We intended to go off and to get married, but this undertaking has given place to a more honourable proceeding. It is only from your hands that I will receive Lucinde. I have to tell you, monsieur, that I have just received letters from which I learn that my uncle is dead, and that I am the heir to all his property.

GÉRONTE: Monsieur, your virtue merits every consideration, and I give you my daughter with the greatest pleasure in the world.

SGANARELLE: Physic has had a narrow escape.

MARTINE: Since you are not going to be hanged, you may thank me for making you a doctor. It was I who gained you that honour.

SGANARELLE: I forgive you the beating because of the dignity to which you have raised me, but be prepared henceforth to show great respect towards a man of my consequence; and remember that a doctor's anger is more to be feared than folk imagine.

(MOLIÈRE: *Continued in Vol. XVIII*)

*Printed in the United States of America*

## FOOTNOTES:

[AD] Molière, whose real name was Jean Baptiste Poquelin, the name Molière not having been assumed until he had commenced authorship, was born at Paris, January 15, 1622. Almost nothing is known of his early life, except that in his fourteenth year he was sent to the Jesuit Collège de Clermont, in Paris, and that later he studied law. In 1645 he suddenly appeared upon the stage as a member of a company of strolling players, and later, through the recommendation of influential friends, his company gained permission to act before the King. His comedies soon placed him in the front rank of French dramatists, and he is now regarded as perhaps the greatest of all comic dramatists. Of all the learned classes that fell under Molière's merciless lash, none came so completely as the profession of medicine. This is especially the case in "The Doctor in Spite of Himself" ("Le Médecin Malgré Lui"), which appeared in June, 1666, and in which Molière himself played the role of Sganarelle.

The piece was originally acted with the "Misanthrope," but its immediate and pronounced success justified its being put on the bill alone. Both in conception and in motive the "Doctor" is frankly farcical, yet the lines abound in delicious satire, and on occasions melt from sheer buffoonery into graceful comedy. Molière died on February 17, 1673.

\*\*\* END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE WORLD'S  
GREATEST BOOKS — VOLUME 17 — POETRY AND DRAMA \*\*\*

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

# THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at [www.gutenberg.org/license](http://www.gutenberg.org/license).

## **Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works**

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the

United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located

in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website

([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES

EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a)

distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

## **Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg**

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

## **Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41 Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact

links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at [www.gutenberg.org/contact](http://www.gutenberg.org/contact)

## **Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

## **Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works**

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.